This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.

+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.

+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.

+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at `http://books.google.com/`

M
KA

STAGES OF SOCIETY.

A. G. P. Lodge

MITCHELL'S SCHOOL GEOGRAPHY.

A SYSTEM OF MODERN GEOGRAPHY,

COMPRISING A DESCRIPTION OF THE PRESENT STATE OF THE

1845

WORLD,

AND ITS FIVE GREAT DIVISIONS,

AMERICA, EUROPE, ASIA, AFRICA, AND OCEANICA.

WITH THEIR SEVERAL

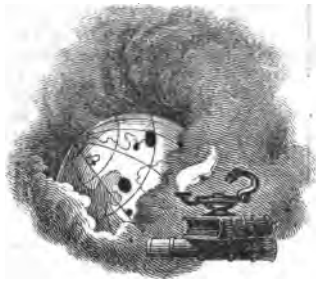
EMPIRES, KINGDOMS, STATES, TERRITORIES, &c.

THE WHOLE

EMBELLISHED BY NUMEROUS ENGRAVINGS

Of various interesting objects of Nature and Art; together with representations of Remarkable and Noted Events.

SIMPLIFIED AND ADAPTED TO THE CAPACITY OF YOUTH.



232967

ILLUSTRATED BY AN

ATLAS OF EIGHTEEN MAPS,

DRAWN AND ENGRAVED TO ACCOMPANY THE WORK.

BY S. AUGUSTUS MITCHELL.

PHILADELPHIA:
THOMAS, COWPERTHWAIT, & CO.
1845.

7

ADVERTISEMENT.

THE publication of the Sixth Census of the United States, (1840,) has enabled the Author to complete the first periodical revision of his *School Geography* and *Atlas*, in conformity with the plan proposed in the preface of the former, and which will be repeated regularly hereafter, every successive period of five years.

In the present revision, all the new facts developed by the late census, that are applicable to the subject, have been embodied in the Geography, together with such notices of recent public works, &c., throughout the Union, as a due attention to the progress of improvement rendered necessary, and the plan of the book permitted. The various political changes, also, that have occurred in foreign countries since the first publication of the book—such as the reunion of Upper and Lower Canada; the secession of the State of Yucatan from the Mexican Republic; the dissolution of the Peru-Bolivian Confederation; the retrocession of Syria to its former masters; the annexation of part of New Zealand to the British Empire, and other similar events, have all been carefully noted. In addition to which, such mistakes as have been detected by a close examination of both sections of the work, and which are more or less unavoidable in compilations of this kind, have been thoroughly corrected. Such emendations have been likewise made in the Statistics of various European and other States, as could be collected from a strict examination of the latest Geographical and Statistical works.

On the engraved plates of the Atlas, the population of the principal Cities and Towns in the United States has been accurately inserted, so far as the last census has furnished the means; also, all such Counties recently established in the various States and Territories of the Union, as were required to make the maps correspond with that important national document; together with all the requisite alterations, corresponding to the political changes noted above, that have taken place in different parts of the world. In the Geographical and Statistical Tables appended to the Atlas, such improvements have been made as will, with the addition of two new pages of American Statistics, render that part of the work much more valuable than before.

The numerous testimonials of approbation bestowed on, and the extensive patronage obtained for, *Mitchell's School Geography and Atlas*, in every section of the United States, are highly gratifying to the Author and Publishers, and prompt them to use such reasonable endeavours to improve each future revision, as to render the work at all times worthy of public favour, and satisfactory to their patrons.

Philadelphia, October 1st, 1842.

Entered, according to Act of Congress, in the year 1839, by *S. Augustus Mitchell*, in the clerk's office of the district court of the eastern district of Pennsylvania.

PRINTED BY J. KAY, JUN. AND BROTHER.

PREFACE.

At no former period, has the science of Geography been considered of more importance, as a branch of elementary education, than at the present time; and its value and utility are so obvious as to require but little illustration. Perhaps no study is better calculated to awaken and cherish that spirit of curiosity and inquiry which is so natural to the youthful mind; and none, under proper regulation and tuition, affords a better prospect of leading to useful and important results.

Within the last twelve or fifteen years, the great attention paid to geography in our principal schools and seminaries, has been the means of producing several meritorious works on this subject. They have each their respective peculiarities and excellencies; and are generally well calculated to aid the scholar in his progress towards acquiring a considerable knowledge of that interesting science. They ought not, however, to be regarded as superseding all further endeavours in this department of usefulness, or as discouraging any well intended efforts of others to do good in a similar way.

Geography is, more than any other science, in its nature constantly progressive; and hence, demands unceasing diligence on the part of those whose attention is directed to the publication of works connected with it. A considerable deficiency, in this respect, is observable in some of the most popular school geographies now in use in this country.

Several fail in representing various parts of the world, according to their actual subdivisions at the present day. Even the divisions of our own country are not accurately laid down; and, in the exhibition of the South American States, there is a general deficiency. Australia, or New Holland, though divided by the British government, a number of years ago, into two great sections, is neither described nor represented in that way in any school geography extant.

Important misstatements have been also observed in some of the works alluded to, which have doubtless escaped the observation of their authors, and, though they do not essentially detract from the merits of their respective works, must still be regarded as material blemishes. In one work, (edition of 1838,) it is asserted, that the western part of the State of Tennessee is inhabited by the Chickasaw Indians—that wild horses and buffaloes abound in Arkansas—that the greatest part of the State of Alabama is inhabited by the Choctaw, Cherokee, and Creek Indians; and that the interior of Newfoundland is inhabited by the Red Indians. All these statements were true, a number of years ago; but are not so at the present day.

The Mississippi Valley, or the country extending from the Rocky to the Alleghany Mountains, is described, in the same work, as being more than 3,000 miles wide. Yet the whole continent, from ocean to ocean, measured across the centre of the valley in question, is only 2,600 miles in extent.

The Boa Constrictor is enumerated as one of the animals found in Africa. It is stated, that the largest are about 80 feet long; and besides deer, dogs, and bullocks, even horses with their riders are said to be destroyed by this enormous serpent; both expiring together in the same fatal fold of the monster! This is a mere popular fallacy, unsupported by any authentic testimony; and certainly ought not to be inserted in A WORK ON ELEMENTARY EDUCATION.

In another work, the population of the Ionian Islands is stated to be 800,000 while, in fact, it is less than one-fourth of that amount. Another school geography describes the island of Teneriffe as one of the Cape Verd islands; while, in fact, it is one of the Canaries. Nor are the atlases less erroneous

than the descriptive geography has been shown to be. The maps of South America, in two of them, represent the river Amazon as flowing from Lake Titicaca: this is a positive error; it being well known that the head waters of the Amazon river are entirely separated from the lake above-mentioned, by ranges of the highest mountains in South America.

The population of the cities and towns, in several maps, is assumed, in some cases, as double, and in others, only one-half the amount stated by the most authentic writers: some places, of which we know nothing certain, and others whose very existence is problematical, are exhibited as containing a definite number of inhabitants.

A very great disproportion is likewise observed in the lengths of the courses given to many of the rivers;—some stated as 500 or 600 miles long, are represented as absolutely shorter than others of 300 or 400 miles in their immediate proximity.

The above-mentioned errors and misstatements, although among the most prominent that have been detected, form but a tithe of what really exist in the very popular works in which they have been found.

In this exposition, the author trusts he is not actuated by an invidious or malignant spirit; for, while he exhibits freely the incorrectness of some works, he willingly bears testimony to the general accuracy and excellence of others. He believes that he has gone far to establish his position, that a want of attention is observable in the compilation of some of the most popular school geographies extant, and that improvements may still be made in works of this kind. He does not by any means expect to escape errors himself; but hopes, by a close attention to the revision of his work, as it comes from the press, to avoid any so far removed from the truth as those above stated.

Essential errors or misstatements, in works on elementary education, can hardly be compensated by any excellencies they may possess; and, when it is considered that the ideas impressed on the mind of youth, in the study and perusal of these works, will undoubtedly, in numerous instances, be retained in after-life, *the importance of accurate statements* becomes apparent.

The introduction of a great variety of books into schools, in the same department of knowledge, by rendering the information uncertain, the expense greater, and the progress less rapid, is an evil of which many have complained. To obviate this, the author has resolved to give his work a periodical revision, commencing with the next census of the United States; which will be repeated, and continued regularly once in five years thereafter, for the purpose of embodying all the facts that the most recent discoveries or political changes may develope, and all well-settled improvements in teaching.

The present form of the work will be preserved as nearly as possible; so that its improvement shall afford no impediment to the progress of the pupil.

The author has endeavoured, as far as the limits prescribed for his work would permit, to describe the various political divisions of the earth, according to the views exhibited in the latest and most authentic works on the subject.

The maps, comprising the atlas, are all from original drawings, and are especially adapted to the work. They are carefully engraved, in a neat and distinct manner. Those illustrating Palestine and Liberia are not usually found in atlases of this kind; and, from the interesting associations connected with the countries they represent, will, no doubt, be found useful. The map of Oceanica is compiled with direct reference to the important religious and moral changes which have taken place in the principal islands of that interesting region within the last twenty years. This map has not been introduced into any school atlas extant in accordance with those remarkable circumstances.

The pictorial illustrations are chiefly from original drawings, and are engraved by the best artists in the country. Many embrace a num-

of leading objects in nature and art, and others elucidate important facts stated in the body of the work. A few, it will be perceived, are of a national character: these illustrate some of the most important incidents in the history of our country, and will associate, in the mind of the pupil, in a striking and impressive manner, with the characteristic features of the states to which they are attached.

Teachers will observe that the work throughout is divided into short sections, such as are considered sufficient for one lesson, which are marked for the purpose of saving the teacher the trouble of designating them. They are gradually enlarged during the progress of the work, so as to correspond with the increased capacity of the pupil.

Those who may conceive a single section insufficient for a lesson, may give two or more at once. The plan has been adopted at the suggestion of several experienced teachers, and will no doubt be found useful.

Nearly all the maps belonging to the atlas have scales of miles attached to them, by the aid of which, with a pair of compasses, or the edge of a slip of paper, the learner may measure the length and breadth of countries, islands, seas, gulfs, &c. This will give variety to the exercises, and impress on the mind of the pupil in a more decided manner than by any other method, many valuable particulars that, if inserted in the geography, would increase its dimensions much beyond its prescribed limits.

Considerable care has been bestowed on the construction and execution of the Atlas. The geographical features of the maps have been obtained from the latest authorities, and those who are critically acquainted with modern maps, will perceive many new items of information elucidating important facts not to be found in any other school geography extant.

The engraving has been executed by the best artists in that line in the country, who have used every endeavour to render the lettering clear, distinct, and easily understood, a matter of some moment to the pupil, who is frequently much perplexed in ascertaining the names of places, when inserted among the dark and obscure shading so common in the maps of many school geographies.

The characters designating the location of some of the most important events connected with the history of our country, are new in works of this kind; and with the annexed dates, will render the maps useful to those pupils studying the history of the United States.

The distances from the countries on one continent to those on others, in the same parallels of latitude, are interesting as pointing out the width of the oceans, seas, &c., that separate the chief divisions of the earth.

The population of cities and towns, the length of rivers, the heights and extent of mountains, &c., are all derived from the most authentic sources; and the plan adopted to illustrate these various particulars, is probably as simple and easily understood as can well be devised.

The author has omitted to mention the number of the counties into which the several states, &c., are divided, or asking the learner that question; as the number, particularly in the Southern and Western States, is continually increasing. In a very popular school geography, (edition of 1838.) the counties in Mississippi are stated as amounting to 26, Alabama 36, Georgia 76, and Arkansas 30; while in the Map of the Southern States accompanying this work, the numbers are respectively 56, 48, 90, and 35,—thus making an increase of 61 counties in four states only.

[illegible] one of two

INTRODUCTION.

GEOGRAPHY is a description of the world, with its inhabitants and productions. It is not only an entertaining and curious, but highly useful study. It opens and enlarges the mind; gives a true knowledge of the various situations of countries, with their rivers, mountains, &c.; and is of such importance in history, that without it, nothing can be understood with either satisfaction or correctness.

It must have attracted the attention of mankind at a very early period. The desire to become acquainted with the country they lived in, and to determine and establish its boundaries, would naturally direct their attention to it.

The study of Geography will enable young persons, when they hear of distant countries, to tell where they are situated—what are their productions—how they are governed, and what kind of people live there. To know these things is very important, and will give all who are acquainted with them an advantage over those who possess not such knowledge: it will be a satisfaction to themselves and to their parents; and will be a proof that they have attended well to their studies.

TO THE PUPIL.

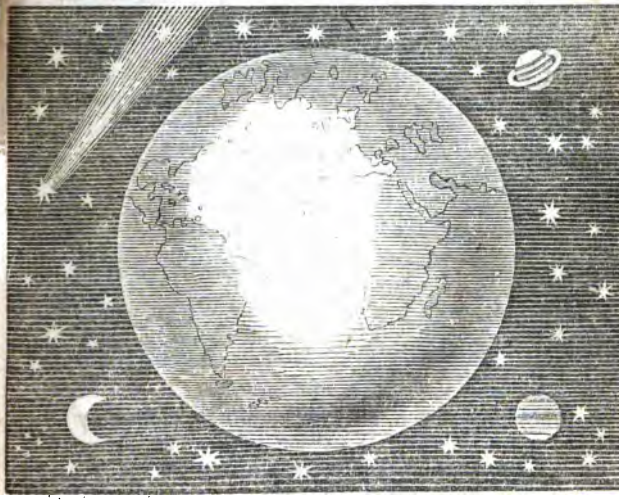
The engraving on the opposite page is a picture of one side of our earth, as it would appear if seen from a great distance. It rolls like an immense ball through the heavens, surrounded on every side by the planets and the countless myriads of stars, all performing their stated motions under the guidance of the great Creator who first called them into existence.

Men live on, and are constantly walking about, this great ball, the earth. Cities and towns are built on it; trees and plants grow on it; and ships sail on the sea: yet the earth is all the time turning round and round, as if you rolled a ball or an apple on the floor, or threw it from you into the air. All this is true; but it is hard to understand. It is done by the power of God, who made us, and all things on the earth, with the sun, the moon, and the vast multitude of stars we see in the sky. "In the beginning, God created the heaven and the earth; the heavens, and all the host of them." Gen. I. II.

MITCHELL'S SCHOOL GEOGRAPHY.

PART FIRST.

GEOGRAPHICAL DEFINITIONS.



1. What is Geography?

Ans. It is a description of the surface of the Earth.

2. What is the surface of the Earth?

A. It is the part on which we live.

3. How is the surface of the Earth divided?

A. Into land and water.

4. How much of the earth's surface is Land?

A. About one-fourth part: the remainder is water.

On the map of the World, No. 1., in the Atlas, you will see that there is a great deal more water than land on the earth. The coloured part shows the land; the rest is water.

5. How much more water than land is there on the Earth?

A. There is at least three times more water than land.

6. What is the name given to the chief part of the water on the surface of the earth?

A. It is called the Sea, or Ocean.

7. Is the water of the Ocean salt or fresh?

A. It is salt.

8. How does the Ocean appear?

A. It appears blue and boundless, like the sky.

9. How wide is it?

A. In some places, 10,000 miles wide; in others, 3000 and 4000, so that ships may sail for weeks, and even months, without coming to land.

10. In what way does the Ocean benefit mankind?

A. It furnishes an abode for innumerable fishes, which are the means of supplying millions of mankind with food and employment: besides this, the ocean renders intercourse between distant countries easy and rapid.

11. For what purpose do ships sail on the Ocean?

A. They carry the productions of our own country to other parts of the world, and bring back in return things that are useful to us.

12. What do our ships take to other countries?

A. They take cotton, flour, tobacco, rice, and many other articles.

13. What do they bring back in return?

A. From some countries, they bring woollen, cotton, and silk goods, which are useful to us for clothing; from some, coffee and sugar; and from others, gold and silver.

---

14. What is the trade carried on in ships called?

A. It is called Commerce, and is highly useful to mankind.

15. How is it useful?

A. It gives employment to vast numbers of men; and by it we become acquainted with other parts of the Earth.

16. In what other way does the Ocean benefit mankind?

A. The vapour or fog which rises from the ocean, forms rain, which waters the earth, and fills our springs and rivers.

17. What else may be observed of the Ocean?

A. Its saltness prevents it from becoming corrupt, and the constant agitation of its waters, by the winds, preserves it from the extremes of heat and cold.

This shows how wisely God has created all things.

NATURAL DIVISIONS OF WATER.

The Ocean.

18. How is the Ocean divided?

A. Into five great parts, likewise called Oceans.

19. Which are the five Oceans?

A. They are the Northern, Southern, Atlantic, Pacific, and Indian Oceans.

20. What other names have some of the Oceans?

A. The Northern is often called the Arctic, and the Southern, the Antarctic Ocean; and the Pacific Ocean is sometimes called the South Sea.

21. Into what other parts is the water divided?

A. Into Seas, Archipelagoes,* Bays, Gulfs, Sounds, Straits, Channels, Lakes, and Rivers.

22. What is a Sea?

A. It is a collection of water, smaller than an ocean, and

---

* Archipelagoes, pronounced Ar-ke-pel-a-goes.

surrounded by land, as the Mediterranean Sea, the Black Sea, &c.

23. What is an Archipelago?

A. It is a sea filled with islands, as the Grecian Archipelago, east of Greece, or the West Indies, which is sometimes called the Columbian Archipelago.

24. What is a Gulf or Bay?

A. It is a part of the Sea, extending into the land, as the Gulf of Mexico, Hudson's Bay.

25. What is a Strait?

A. It is a narrow passage, connecting different bodies of water, as the Strait of Gibraltar, &c.

26. What is a Sound?

A. It is a small sea, so shallow that its depth may be measured by a line dropped from the surface to the bottom, as Long Island Sound, Pamlico Sound.

A Harbour.

27. What is a Channel?

A. It is a passage of water, wider than a Strait, as the English Channel.

28. What is a Harbour or Haven?

A. It is a small bay, where vessels may remain at anchor in safety.

A Lake.

29. What is a Lake?

A. It is a collection of water, surrounded by land,

as Lake Superior, Lake Winnipeg, or the Lake of Geneva, in Switzerland.

30. Where are the largest Lakes to be found?

A. In North America: they are so wide and deep, that the largest ships may sail on them.

31. Is the water of lakes salt or fresh?

A. Lakes are both salt and fresh: of the latter, the largest is Lake Superior.

32. Which is the largest salt lake?

A. The Caspian Lake, or sea, in Asia. Salt lakes, when large, are commonly called seas, as the Sea of Aral, the Dead Sea, &c.

33. How do lakes discharge their waters?

A. Fresh-water lakes generally discharge their waters through a river into the ocean; but salt lakes have seldom any outlet.

34. What is a river?

A. A stream of fresh water, running from springs or from lakes, into the ocean, as the Mississippi, the Amazon, &c.

35. How are rivers formed?

A. By numerous small branches, flowing from mountains or hills.

36. What are the small branches of rivers called?

A. Brooks and creeks.

37. What is the place where a river empties into the sea called?

A. Its mouth; and where it rises, its source or head.

38. What is the place through which a river flows called?

A. Its bed, or channel.

Fall, or Cataract.

When rivers flow down steep or perpendicular banks, they form falls or cataracts, as the falls of Niagara, the falls of the Passaic, and others.

39. What is a Canal?

A. It is a wide ditch or channel, filled with water, through which boats convey travellers and goods from one town to another.

Canal and Lock.

40. Where are Canals most numerous?

A. In the United States, Great Britain, and Holland.

41. Which is the largest Canal in the world?

A. The Imperial Canal, in China.

42. Which are the largest Canals in the United States?

A. The Erie Canal, in New York; and the Pennsylvania Canal, in the State of Pennsylvania.

4

NATURAL DIVISIONS OF LAND.

43. How is the land surface of the earth divided?

A. Into two great divisions,—the Eastern and Western continents.

44. What does the Eastern continent comprise?

A. Europe, Asia, and Africa.

45. What does the Western continent comprise?

A. North America and South America.

46. What other division is there on the earth?

A. Oceanica, which comprises the islands of the Pacific Ocean.

47. What are the Eastern and Western continents sometimes called?

A. The Eastern and Western Hemispheres. The word hemisphere signifies half a globe.

The map of the world, No. 1., in the Atlas, shows the Eastern and Western Hemispheres.

48. Into what division is the earth divided by the Equator?

A. Into the Northern and Southern Hemispheres.

49. What does the Northern Hemisphere comprise?

A. All that part of the earth between the Equator and th North Pole.

50. What does the Southern Hemisphere comprise?

A. All that part of the earth between the Equator and the South Pole.

The map of the world, No. 2., in the Atlas, shows the Northern and Southern Hemispheres.

51. What are the natural divisions of the land surface of the earth?

A. Continents, Peninsulas, Isthmuses, Islands, Capes, Promontories, &c.

52. Why are these called natural divisions?

A. To distinguish them from political divisions, such as Empires, Kingdoms, Republics, &c.

53. What is a Continent?

A. It is a great extent of land, containing many countries. America is a continent.

54. What is a Peninsula?

A. It is a portion of land, nearly surrounded by water. Africa and South America are peninsulas.

55. What is an Isthmus?

A. It is a narrow neck of land, which joins two parts of a continent, or a peninsula to a continent; as the Isthmus of Darien, and the Isthmus of Suez.

56. What are Islands?

A. They are portions of land, entirely surrounded by water, as the British Islands, or Newfoundland.

57. What is a Cape?

A. It is a point of land extending into the sea, as the Cape of Good Hope, Cape Horn, &c.

58. What is a Promontory?

A. It is a high point of land, extending into the sea, the extreme end of which is sometimes called a cape, sometimes a point, and sometimes a headland.

5

Some Capes and Promontories have light-houses built on them: these are so called because they have a bright light burning on the top of them after dark, that ships may not sail too near the land.

A Promontory and Light-House.

59. What is a Mountain?

A. It is a portion of land, raised up to a great height.

60. How high are the highest mountains in the world?

A. They are about five and a half miles high; others are two, three, and four miles high.

61. What is a chain or range of Mountains?

A. A number of mountains joined together, and extending many hundreds, and even thousands of miles in length.

Plains. Range of Mountains. Mountains. Valley. Hills Volcano. City on Fire.

62. What is a Volcano?

A. It is a burning mountain, with an opening at the top, called a crater.

63. What rises from the crater of a Volcano?

A. Fire and smoke constantly rise from many Volcanoes.

64. What is sometimes thrown out by Volcanoes?

A. Melted lava, large stones, ashes, and often floods of water.

65. How many Volcanoes are there in the world?

A. More than 200: of which upwards of one-half are in America.

Cities and towns are sometimes set on fire by the burning lava which flows down the sides of volcanoes: others have been destroyed by floods of water; and some by vast showers of hot ashes.

Ascent of Mont Blanc.

Some mountains are so steep and rugged, that it is difficult to ascend to the top of them. The picture represents a party of men going up Mont Blanc, the highest mountain in Europe. They were more than two days in getting to the top, and were almost frozen with cold. The summits of the highest mountains, even those in the hottest parts of the earth, are always covered with ice and snow.

66. What is a hill?

A. It is a portion of land raised up, but not so high as a mountain.

67. What is a Valley?

A. It is a low portion of country between mountains or hills.

68. What is a Plain?

A. It is a portion of country nearly flat or level.

69. Are all plains alike in appearance?

A. No; some are covered with grass, some with trees, and some only with sand.

70. What are plains covered with sand called?

A. They are denominated deserts; some are also covered with stones and gravel. Deserts are generally destitute of water.

71. Which are the largest deserts in the world?

A. The great African desert, and the desert of Cobi, in Asia.

72. With what is the African desert interspersed?

A. Various fertile spots that are scattered here and there over the surface, like islands in the ocean.

73. What are these called?

A. They are called Oases: they are all inhabited, and serve as resting places for travellers.

The Great Desert.

The Great Desert is frequently crossed by parties of travellers, with camels; these are called caravans; both men and beasts often suffer greatly from want of water, and sometimes perish from thirst. The picture represents a small caravan crossing the desert, one of the people of which appears to have just expired.

74. What are Caves or Caverns?

A. They are openings in the earth, often wonderful on ccount of their great size and extent.

Fingal's Cave.

One of the most remarkable is Fingal's Cave, in Staffa, an island on the west coast of Scotland. Its sides are formed with the regularity of walls of hewn stone. It is 227 feet in length, and 42 feet wide, and presents a most striking example of the sublime and beautiful creations with which God has adorned the world.

75. What are public roads?

A. Pathways used for travelling from place to place.

76. Are roads useful to mankind?

A. They are highly useful, for without them the people in different parts of the same country would not know each other.

77. What is a rail-road?

A. An improved kind of road, now much used in the United States, and also in some parts of Europe.

Rail Road.

The cars or carriages used on them, are drawn by steam locomotive engines, at the rate of 12 or 15 miles an hour, and sometimes even more. Vast numbers of people, and great quantities of merchandise, are conveyed by them from place to place, in a manner much more convenient than by the old method of travelling.

— 7 —

PRODUCTIONS OF THE EARTH.

78. What are the productions of the earth?

A. They are either vegetable, animal, or mineral.

79. What are vegetable productions?

A. They are all things that grow out of the ground, as rees, plants, grain, fruits and flowers.

80. What are the vegetable productions most useful to mankind?

A. Wheat, corn, rye, rice, potatoes, bread-fruit, &c.

81. What are the chief classes of the animal kingdom?

A. They are beasts, birds, fishes, reptiles, and insects.

82. What are minerals?

A. They consist of substances of various kinds, that are dug out of the earth.

83. What are the principal classes of minerals?

A. Four: the metallic, the inflammable, precious stones, and building stones.

84. What are the most important metallic minerals?

A. They are gold, silver, iron, copper, and lead.

85. What are the principal inflammable minerals?

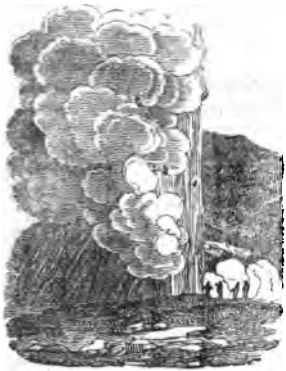
A. They are pitcoal, peat, sulphur, bitumen, and asphaltum.

86. What are the most valuable precious stones?

A. Diamonds, sapphires, rubies, and emeralds.

Diamond River.

Diamonds are highly valuable, and are often found amongst the earth, at the bottoms of rivers. The engraving represents a river in



Great Geyser.

South America, from which the water has been nearly all pumped out by the machine on the right hand of the picture, and negro slaves are examining the earth for diamonds.

87. What are some of the principal building-stones?

A. They are granite, limestone, marble, chalk, slate, and sandstone.

Mineral springs, both hot and cold, occur in many parts of the earth. The most remarkable are the Geysers, or Spouting springs of Iceland, which throw up volumes of hot water, with a noise like cannon to the height of 90 or 100 feet.

— 8 —

ON THE FORM AND MOTIONS OF THE EARTH.

88. What is the earth?

A. It is one of the planets.

89. What are the planets?

A. Immense bodies like the earth, which revolve round the sun.

90. What is the shape or form of the earth?

A. It is round, like a ball or orange.

91. By what other names is the earth known?

A. It is also called the World, the Globe, and the Sphere.

92. How many motions has the earth, and what are they?

A. Two; the daily, and the yearly.

93. What is the daily motion of the earth?

A. That in which it turns round every twenty-four hours.

94. What is the yearly motion of the earth?

A. That in which it goes round the sun once every year.

95. What takes place during the earth's yearly motion?

A. A change of seasons.

96. What is a change of seasons?

A. The change from winter to spring, from spring to summer, from summer to autumn, and from autumn to winter again.

97. What is the effect of the earth's daily motion?

A. It produces the change from day to night.

98. If the earth did not turn round on its axis, what effect would be produced?

A. On one side there would be constant day, and the people would be parched up by the heat of the sun.

99. What then would be the condition of the people living on the other side?

A. They would have constant night, and would be frozen with cold.

100. What do these things teach us?

A. That the works of the Almighty are directed by infinite wisdom and goodness.

—— 9 ——

101. What is the axis of the earth?

A. It is an imaginary line passing through its centre from North to South.

102. What are the poles of the earth?

A. The ends of the axis.

103. How many poles are there?

A. Two; the North, and the South Pole.

104. Where are the poles situated?

A. The North Pole is the north point of the earth's axis, and the South Pole is the south point.

Point out on Map of the World, No. 1. of the Atlas, the North Pole and the South Pole. You will perceive that this map consists of the Eastern and Western Hemispheres, that is, a map of both sides of the earth presented to view at once; and although the words North Pole and South Pole are written twice, yet there is but one North Pole and one South Pole.

105. How far distant are the poles situated from each other?

A. One hundred and eighty degrees.

106. How many miles is that?

A. About 12,500 miles, which is half round the world.

107. What is the size or bulk of the earth?

A. It is nearly 25,000 miles in circumference, and 8,000 in diameter.

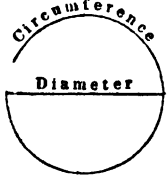
108. What is meant by the circumference of the earth?

Circumference is the distance round the middle of its surface or outside.

109. What is meant by diameter?

It is the distance across or through the middle part of it.

110. If you were to run a thread round the outside of an apple, th length of it would be the extent of the circumference; and if you were to cut the apple through the middle and measure it across the cut part, that would be the diameter.



111. So great is the circumference of the earth, that if a man could travel without interruption from water, it would take him one thousand days, or three years, to come round to the place he started from, reckoning that he travelled twenty-five miles every day.

112. What are the circles of the earth?

They are the equator, the tropics, the polar circles, and the parallels and meridians.

113. Are these circles alike in extent?

The equator and meridians only are of the same extent, and are called the great circles.

114. What are the other circles?

The Tropical and Polar circles, and the Parallels. These being smaller in extent than the former, are called small circles.

115. What is the Equator?

It is an imaginary great circle extending from east to west round the globe, and at an equal distance from each pole.

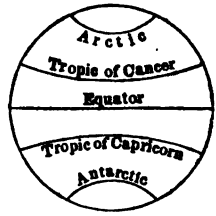
On map of the World, No. 1., the Equator is the line that passes through the middle of both hemispheres. You will find the word equator near it.

116. What is the distance of the Equator from the Poles?

It is 90 degrees, or about 6250 miles from the North Pole, and the same from the South Pole.

117. What are the Tropics?

They are two smaller circles running like the Equator from East to West.



Circles.

118. Where are they placed?

At the distance of 23½ degrees, or 637 miles, north and south from the quator.

119. What are the names of the Tropics?

The northern tropic is called the Tropic of Cancer, and the southern is called the Tropic of Capricorn.

Point out on map of the World, No. 1., the Tropics of Cancer and Capricorn. You will find them between the figures 20 and 30 that are printed on the edge of the map.

——11——

120. What are the Polar Circles?

They are two small circles running from east to west.

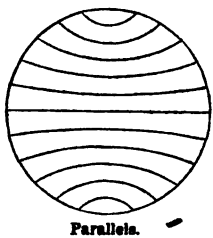
121. Where are they placed?

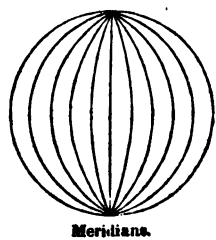
At the distance of 23½ degrees from each Pole.

122. What are their names?

The Arctic Circle is the northern polar circle, and the Antarctic Circle is the southern polar circle.

Point out on map of the World, No. 1., the Arctic and Antarctic circles. They are between the figures 60 and 70 which are written on the edge of the map.


Parallels.


Meridians.

123. What are the Parallels?

They are circles running from east to west.

124. How are they represented on the Maps?

By lines crossing from side to side.

125. What are the Meridians?

They are circles running from Pole to Pole through the Equator.

126. How are they represented on the Maps?

By lines extending from the top to the bottom.

Point out on map No. 1., the Parallels and Meridians.

127. How are geographical circles divided?

A. Every circle is supposed to be divided into 360 degrees, and every degree into 60 geographical miles or minutes.

128. What is the length of a degree of a great circle?

A. It is 69¼ common miles.

129. How will you find the number of miles in any given number of degrees?

A. By multiplying the degrees by 69¼.

— 12 —

LATITUDE.

130. What is latitude?

A. It is distance from the Equator either north or south.

131. How is latitude divided?

A. Into north and south latitude. All countries situated north of the equator, are in north latitude; and those south of it, are in south latitude.

132. How is latitude represented on maps?

A. By lines drawn across the map from side to side. These are called parallels.

133. How is latitude numbered?

A. The numbers are marked on the sides of the map, at the ends of the lines of latitude.

134. How is latitude counted?

A. In degrees from the Equator towards the poles, from 1 to 90.

135. How can you distinguish between north and south latitude?

A. If the numbers increase from the bottom towards the

top of the Map, it is North Latitude; but if they increase from the top towards the bottom, it is South Latitude.

136. On Map of the World, No. 1, Eastern Hemisphere. In what latitude is Europe? Ans. N. Le.

137. In what latitude is Australia? Ans. S. Le.

138. In what latitude is Africa? Ans. Partly in N. and partly in S. Le.

139. In what latitude is Asia? Ans. N. Le.

140. On the Western Hemisphere. In what latitude is North America? Ans. N. Le.

141. In what latitude is South America. Ans. N. Le. and S. Le.

142. What latitude have places on the Equator?

A. They have no latitude, for it is on the Equator where latitude begins.

143. What is the latitude at the Poles?

A. It is 90 degrees, which is the full extent to which latitude is carried.

144. What is the meaning of the word latitude?

A. It means breadth; it was applied long ago to distances north and south, because the world was supposed to be much less in extent in that direction than from east to west.

145. Do the degrees of latitude vary in length?

A. No; they are all alike, being 69½ miles each; and of the same length as the degrees of longitude on the Equator.

13

LONGITUDE.

146. What is longitude?

A. It is distance east or west from an established meridian.

147. How is longitude represented?

A. By lines running from the top to the bottom of the map.

148. How is it reckoned?

A. In degrees east and west on our maps; it is reckoned from the meridians of Greenwich and Washington.

149. How is it counted?

A. From the place of beginning, 180 degrees each way;

therefore the longitude of a place cannot be more than 180 degrees east or west.

150. How is it marked?

A. Generally in numbers on the top and bottom of the map, at the end of the meridians.

On map of the world, No. 1, the longitude is marked on the Equator, in consequence of a want of room at the ends of the lines; but on maps Nos. 3, 4, 5, 6, &c. it is marked at the top and bottom of the maps.

151. How can you distinguish between east and west longitude?

A. If the numbers increase towards the right hand, it is east longitude; but if they increase towards the left hand, it is west longitude.

152. Are the degrees of longitude of the same length as those of latitude?

A. They are of the same length as those of latitude on the Equator only.

153. How do they differ from those of latitude?

A. They constantly decrease as we go either north or south from the equator towards the poles, where the meridians all meet, and the longitude ceases.

——— 14 ———

154. What is the meaning of the word longitude?

A. It signifies length. It was used for this purpose because formerly the earth was supposed to be much longer from East to West than from North to South.

155. On some of the maps the longitude is marked on the top from Greenwich, and on the bottom from Washington, the difference being 77 degrees. The same lines serve to express the longitude of both places, and are numbered accordingly.

156. How do nations generally reckon longitude?

A. From the capital of their own country.

157. We reckon ours from the city of Washington; the English from Greenwich; the French from Paris; and the Spaniards from Madrid.

158. On the Equator a degree of longitude is 69½ miles in length; at 42 degrees of latitude it is only three-fourths of that extent; at 60 degrees it is one half; at 75 degrees one quarter; and at the poles it is nothing.

159. Places on the Equator have no latitude, and those on the first meridian no longitude; therefore, at the point where the first meridian crosses the Equator, there is neither latitude nor longitude.

160. What is the difference of longitude between Washington and Greenwich?

161. What is the length of a degree of longitude on the Equator.

162. What is it on the 42d degree of latitude? on the 60th degree? on the 75th degree? and at the Poles?

163. Where is there no latitude?

164. Where is there no longitude?

On maps Nos. 1 and 14, you will find that the meridian marked 0, crosses the Equator in the Gulf of Guinea. In that spot, there is neither latitude nor longitude.

15

MAPS.

165. What is a map?

A. It is a picture of a part or the whole of the earth's surface.

166. What is a number of maps made into a book, called?

A. An Atlas.

167. In what way are maps usually drawn?

A. The top of the map is north, the bottom south, the right hand is east, and the left hand west.

168. What is meant by North, South, East, and West?

A. They are the four cardinal or principal points of the compass.

169. What is a compass?

A. An instrument used by navigators at sea, to point out their course.

170. How does it point out their course?

A. The needle, or bar of the compass, always points to the north.

171. In what direction are North and South?

A. The north is towards the North Pole, and the south is towards the South Pole.

172. In what direction does East and West lie?

A. East is towards that point where the sun rises, and West where he sets.

173. If you stand with your face towards where the sun rises, the

North will be on your left hand, the South on your right hand, and the West will be behind you.

A Map.

16

174. On maps, rivers are shown by black lines winding according to their course.

175. Mountains are shown by lines which form a shade in the direction in which they extend.

176. Cities and towns are shown by a black dot, and the capitals of countries by a large dot and eight smaller ones around it.

177. The boundaries of countries are made by dotted lines.

178. Sandy deserts and sand banks in the ocean, are shown by a great number of dots resembling sand. The ocean, or sea, is shaded by lines to separate it from the land.

179. The latitude is shown by lines extending on the maps from side to side, and the longitude by lines running from the top to the bottom, except on map No. 2, of the world, where the latitude is shown by circular lines, extending in succession farther and farther from the centre, and longitude by straight lines extending from the centre to the circumference.

180. Point out on map No. 3, of the Atlas, the Mississippi, the Missouri, the Rio del Norte, and the Columbia rivers.

181. Point out the cities of Boston, New York, Philadelphia, Baltimore, New Orleans, Havanna, La Puebla, and Guanaxuato.

182. Point out the capitals Quebec, Washington, Houston, Mexico, and St. Salvador

183. Point out the boundary between the United States and Mexico, between the United States and British America, and between British America and Russian America.

184. Point out the great American Desert, the great Sandy Desert in Mexico, and the Grand Bank of Newfoundland.

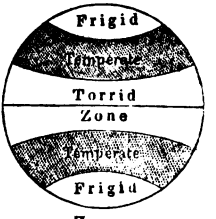
185. Point out the Rocky Mountains, the Alleghany Mountains, the Snowy Mountains, and the Mexican Cordilleras.

— 17 —

ZONES.

186. What are Zones?

A. Sections or divisions of the earth's surface, formed by the tropics and the polar circles.



Zones.

187. What does the word Zone mean?

A. A belt or girdle, because it passes round the earth.

188. How many Zones are there?

A. Five: one torrid, two temperate, and two frigid zones.

TORRID ZONE.

189. What part of the earth's surface is occupied by the Torrid Zone?

A. The part which lies on both sides of the Equator and between the Tropic of Cancer and the Tropic of Capricorn.

190. What is the meaning of the word Torrid?

A. It means very hot, parched, or dried up.

191. What is the breadth of the Torrid Zone?

A. It is 3243 miles in breadth from North to South.

192. Why is the Torrid Zone the hottest part of the earth?

A. Because it is more exposed to the heat of the sun than any other part of the earth.

193. What are the seasons of the Torrid Zone?

A. Two; the wet and the dry.

194. To which of our seasons do they correspond?

A. The wet season corresponds to our winter, and the dry to our summer.

195. What is the climate of the Torrid Zone?

A. During some parts of the year it is delightful; but at other times the heat is very oppressive, and the earth is parched and dried up.

——— 18 ———

196. To what is the Torrid Zone subject?

A. To the most violent storms of wind, which destroy almost every thing within their reach.

197. To what else is the Torrid Zone subject?

A. It is more subject to earthquakes than the other parts of the earth, and is also the seat of dangerous and deadly diseases.

198. For what is the Torrid Zone remarkable?

A. For the finest fruits, many of the most useful vegetable productions, and the largest and most ferocious animals.

199. What are some of the principal fruits of the Torrid Zone?

A. Oranges, lemons, pine-apples, cocoa-nuts, the bread-fruit, &c.

200. What are some of the most useful vegetable productions?

A. Coffee, tea, sugar, indigo, cinnamon, cloves, nutmegs pepper, &c.

201. Which are the most remarkable animals?

A. The elephant, rhinoceros, hippopotamus, camelopard, lion, tiger, &c.

202. What are some of the other remarkable animals?

A. The ostrich and condor, with numerous birds of splendid

plumage, and the largest and most venomous serpents and insects.

203. What are the complexion and habits of the people of the Torrid Zone?

A. They are generally of a dark or black colour, and indolent and effeminate in their habits.

204. What is their character?

A. They are but seldom distinguished for industry, enterprise, or learning.

——— 19 ———

TEMPERATE ZONES.

205. Where are the Temperate Zones situated?

A. Between the tropics and the polar circles.

206. How are they distinguished from each other?

A. The one north of the equator is called the north temperate, and the one south of the equator the south temperate Zone.

207. What does the word temperate mean when applied to climate

A. Mild, moderate; neither too hot nor too cold.

208. Where is the north temperate Zone situated?

A. Between the tropic of Cancer and the arctic circle.

209. Where is the south temperate Zone situated?

A. Between the tropic of Capricorn and the antarctic circle.

210. What is the breadth of the temperate Zones?

A. They occupy a breadth of about 2970 miles each.

211. What are the seasons of the temperate Zones?

A. They are four; Spring, Summer, Autumn or Fall, and Winter.

212. What climate does the temperate Zones enjoy?

A. They enjoy a more equal and healthy climate than any other parts of the earth.

213. Do the temperate Zones equal the torrid Zone in the number of their vegetable productions?

A. The vegetable productions of the temperate Zones are neither so numerous nor luxuriant as those of the torrid Zone.

214. What are the principal vegetable productions of the temperate Zones?

A. Corn, wheat, and rice, with apples, peaches, pears, olives, figs, &c.

215. Are the animals of the temperate Zones like those of the torrid Zone?

A. No: they are generally of smaller size, and are less numerous and ferocious.

216. Of what kinds are the animals of the temperate Zones?

A. Of the domestic and useful kinds mostly.

217. What are some of the domestic animals?

A. The horse, camel, ox, ass, mule, sheep, hog, and dog

218. What are some of the wild animals?

A. They are the bear, wolf, buffalo, elk, deer, fox, &c.

219. What are the colour and character of the inhabitants of the temperate Zones?

A. Those of the north temperate Zone in particular have white or fair complexions, and generally more strength of body and mind than the inhabitants of the other Zones.

220. For what are they distinguished?

A. For industry, enterprise, and learning.

221. What do they comprise?

A. The most civilized and improved portion of mankind.

222. What Zone lies south of this country?

223. What Zone separates the north temperate and south temperate Zones from each other?

224. In what Zone do we live?

FRIGID ZONES.

225. Where are the frigid Zones situated?

A. Between the polar circles and the poles.

226. How are they distinguished?

A. The one north of the equator is called the north frigid Zone, and that south of the equator the south frigid Zone.

227. Where is the north frigid Zone situated?

A. Between the arctic circle and the North Pole.

228. Where is the south frigid Zone situated?

A. Between the antarctic circle and the South Pole.

229. Why are the Zones about the poles called frigid?

A. Because the climate is excessively cold.

230. Why is the climate of these Zones colder than that of othe parts of the earth?

A. Because the rays of the sun are less direct, and impa t a smaller degree of heat than in countries nearer the Equator

231. What are the Frigid Zones covered with?

A. Chiefly with ice and snow.

232. What are the seasons of the Frigid Zones?

A. The seasons are two; a long cold winter and a short summer, without spring or autumn.

233. What fruits are found in the Frigid Zones?

A. Only a few small berries which grow in those parts nearest to the temperate Zones.

234. What kind of animals live there?

A. None but the most hardy, as the White Bear, Musk Ox, Reindeer, &c.

235. What are the number, stature, and colour of the inhabitants?

A. They are but few in number, of short stature, and have dark complexions.

236. In what are they deficient?

A. In intelligence, being ignorant of reading, writing, and learning.

— 21 —

QUESTIONS ON THE DIFFERENT ZONES,

(The first Map of the Atlas before the learner.)

237. On map of the world, No. 1., Western Hemisphere, point out the countries that are in the Torrid Zone.

A. They are part of Mo., the whole of Ga., Ca., Ga. Pu., Bl.

238. Point out the Islands in the Torrid Zone, beginning at the left hand side of the map.

A. They are Sh., Me., Ns., Fy., Fe., N.-Ca., Sy., Gn., Ms., Gs., W.-Is., C. Ve.

239. Point out the countries in the Torrid Zone, on the Map of the Eastern Hemisphere.

A. They are part of the Gt.-Dt., the whole of Sa., Ga., L.-Ga., Sn., Ea., Zr., part of Aa., part of Hn., Sm., part of Ca.

240. Point out the Islands in the Torrid Zone, in the Eastern Hemisphere, beginning at the left hand.

A. They are S.-Ha., part of Mr., Ma., Cn., Sa., Ja., part of Fa., Hn., Pe., Le., Ce., Bo., Cs., Se., Tr. N.-Ga., N.-Id., N.-Bn., Le., part of Aa.

241. Point out the countries in the North Temperate Zone, of the Western Hemisphere.

A. They are a part of Aa., part of N.-Bn., Lr., part of Gd., Ca., U.-Ss. part of Mo.

* The letters Mo., Ga., Ca., &c., are the first and last letters of the names of those countries that the learner is required to point out on the map.

242. Point out the islands.

A. They are the An., Vs., Nd., As.

243. Point out the countries in the North Temperate Zone of the Eastern Hemisphere.

A. They are a part of Sa., Fe., Sn., By., part of the Gt.-Dt., Et., Aa., Iy., Ty., Pa., part of Aa., Ty., part of Hn., Tt., part of Ca.

244. Point out the islands.

A. They are Id., Bh.-Is., Sn., Jo., Nn., Ku., Lo., part of Fa.

245. Point out the countries in the South Temperate Zone of the Western Hemisphere.

A. They are Ci., Bs.-As., Pa.

246. Point out the Islands.

A. They are N.-Zd., Ce., Fd., Ta.-Fo., S.-Sd., S.-Oy., S.-Ld., part of Gs.-Ld.

247. Point out the countries in the South Temperate Zone of the Eastern Hemisphere.

A. They are Ce.-Cy., Ca.

248. Point out the islands.

A. They are Tn.-Aa., Mn., and Cs., Ks., part of Mr., part of Aa., Vn.-Ds.-Ld.

249. The countries in the North Frigid Zone of the Western Hemisphere, are part of Aa., part of Nw.-Bn., part of Gd.

250. The countries in the North Frigid Zone of the Eastern Hemisphere, are Ld., part of Aa., with the islands Sn., Na., Za., N.-Sa.

251. The only land in the South Frigid Zone of the Western Hemisphere, is a part of Gs.-Ld.; and in the South Frigid Zone of the Eastern Hemisphere there is Es.-Ld.

In what Zone does the United States lie? N. Te.

What Zone contains the largest animals? Td.

Which Zones contain the most useful animals? Te.

Which Zones produce the most hardy animals? Fd.

Which Zone is most subject to violent storms of wind? Td.

In which Zone are the people the most industrious? N. Te.

Which Zone is the most subject to earthquakes? Td.

In which Zones is the climate most healthy? Te.

Which of the Temperate Zones contains the most powerful and civilized nations? N.-Te.

— 22 —

POLITICAL DIVISIONS.

252. The inhabited parts of the earth have been from very early times divided into Empires, Kingdoms, Republics, and States, of various kinds.

253. What is an Empire?

A. It is a state composed of several countries governed by an Emperor.

254. How are Empires sometimes composed?

A. Of countries immediately joining each other, which form a compact body; as the Empire of Austria.

255. What do other Empires comprise?

A. Territories separated by vast oceans, and situated in distant parts of the earth, as the British Empire.

256. What is a kingdom?

A. It is a country governed by a king, as France, Spain, &c.

Palace at Versailles.

257. What are Palaces?

A. Buildings inhabited by Emperors or Kings. They are generally of great extent, and cost vast sums of money.

258. What is a Republic?

A. A country whose laws are administered by rulers chosen by the people; as the United States, Texas, &c.

259. How are Empires, Kingdoms, Republics, &c. subdivided?

A. Into governments, as in Russia; departments, as in France; cantons, as in Switzerland; provinces, as in Spain and Portugal; and states, as in the United States, Mexico, &c.

260. What are the subdivisions of the various states which form our Republic?

A. Into counties, except in South Carolina, where they are

called districts, and in Louisiana, where they are called parishes.

261. How are counties subdivided?

A. Into towns in New England, and into townships in the Middle and some of the Western States.

City of St. Petersburg.

262. What is a City?

A. It is a large collection of houses of various kinds, comprising churches, banks, libraries, manufactories, stores, and dwelling-houses.

263. In what way is a city particularly distinguished from a town?

A. By being incorporated with peculiar privileges, and in being governed by a Mayor, Aldermen, &c.

264. What is a town, and a village?

A. A town is a collection of houses smaller than a city. A village is smaller than a town.

265. What is a township?

A. It is a tract of country generally divided into farms, and often containing towns, villages, and even cities, within its limits.

266. What is a county?

A. It is a division belonging to a State, comprising in many cases a large extent of country.

267. What does a county contain?

A. Nearly every county in the United States contains a county town, and Court-house.

268. What is done there?

A. Courts of justice are held there, and those who break the laws are tried and punished.

269. What is the capital of a State?

A. It is the city or town chosen for the meeting of the State Legislature.

270. What do the capitals of States usually contain?

A. The State House, State Prison, Governor's residence and other offices connected with the government of the State.

271. In some states, the most important place in it is chosen for the capital, without any regard to its position, as Boston, in Massachusetts. In most instances, however, a central position is adopted.

272. What is the State House?

A. The house where the Legislature of the state meets.

273. What is the Legislature of a State?

A. A body composed of men who have power to make laws.

274. Who is the Governor of a State?

A. He is the person who executes the laws of the State.

275. What is the capital of the United States?

A. It is the city of Washington, the place adopted by the American people for the annual meeting of the national Congress.

276. After whom was it named?

General Washington.

277. What is the National Congress?

A. It is an assembly composed of the Representatives elected by the people.

278. For what length of time are the Representatives elected by the people.

A. The members of the Senate are elected for six years and those of the House of Representatives for two.

279. What two bodies does Congress comprise?

A. The Senate and the House of Representatives.

280. What are the duties of Congress?

A. To make the laws by which the nation is governed.

281. In what building in the city of Washington does Congress hold its meetings?

A. In the Capitol which is one of the finest edifices in America.

Capitol at Washington.

282. Who executes the laws passed by Congress?

A. The President, with the aid of the other officers of government.

283. Who is the President of the United States?

A. He is the chief magistrate, or head of the government.

284. By whom is he chosen to that office?

A. By the people of the United States.

285. During what period does he hold his office?

A. He holds his office during the term of four years.

286. What forms the American nation?

A. The whole of the people of the United States.

287. The word nation signifies a distinct body of people livin under one government.

288. What is a Country?

A. A large tract of land, a region, one's native soil.

289. What are the boundaries of a country?

A. Those parts of land and water which lie next to the line which separates it from another country.

290. What is the interior of a country?

A. It is the central or inland parts.

291. What is the frontier of a country?

A. Those parts which lie near the border or boundary, the outside portions.

292. Thus we say, the Northern frontier, the Southern frontier, &c., according as the parts are situated to the North, South, East, or West.

293. What are the maritime parts of a country?

A. Those parts which border on the sea coast.

Asiatic. Malay. European. African. American.

— 25 —

RACES OF MEN.

294. Man is the most perfect of the works of God, being created in his own image, and formed by his wisdom, to subdue and exercise dominion over all the earth.

295. From whom has the whole human race descended?

A. From our first parents, Adam and Eve.

296. What does the human race present?

A. Several varieties, differing greatly from each other in colour, form, and features.

297 What is the cause of the varieties in the human race?

A. It is probably owing to a difference in climate, food, and mode of life, and no doubt partly to causes which we do not understand.

298. What are the various races of mankind?

A. They are five, the European or Caucasian, Asiatic or Mongolian, American, Malay, and African or negro.

299. How may they be classed in regard to their colour?

A. Into the White, Yellow, Red, Brown, and Black races.

300. What nations does the European or White race include?

A. The nations of Europe, Western Asia, the North of Africa, with all the white inhabitants of America and other regions.

301. What nations does the Asiatic or Yellow race include?

A. All the nations of Asia east of the Ganges river, (excepting the Malays of Malacca.)

302. What other nations belong to this race?

A. The Finns and Laplanders of Europe, and the Esquimaux of America, also belong to the Asiatic race.

303. What part of the earth does the American or copper-coloured race inhabit?

A. The whole of the American continent, except those parts occupied by the descendants of Europeans, with the Esquimaux and Negroes.

304. What nations does the Malay or Brown race include?

A. The people of Malacca and Malaysia, with those of Polynesia and New Zealand.

305. What part of the earth does the African or Black race inhabit?

A. All Western, Central, and Southern Africa, with a considerable part of Madagascar and Australasia.

306. A large number of this race are found in both North and South America, where they are chiefly in a state of slavery.

307. The European or Caucasian is the most noble of the five races of men. It excels all others in learning and the arts, and includes the most powerful nations of ancient and modern times. The most valuable institutions of society, and the most important and useful inventio have originated with the people of this race.

Which is the most noble of the five races of men?

In what does it excel all others?

What does it include?

What has originated with the people of this race?

To which of the races of men do the greater part of the people of the United States belong?

To which race do you belong?

— 26 —

STAGES OF SOCIETY.

308. Nations live in various stages of society, and their condition is found to depend materially on the progress they have made in knowledge, learning and refinement, and in their skill in the mechanic arts.

309. How may nations be divided according to their habits of life nd state of improvement?

A. Into five classes, viz: savage, barbarous, half-civilized, civilized, and enlightened.

310. How do men live in the savage state?

A. By hunting, fishing, and on the spontaneous productions of the ground. They are generally clad in the skins of wild animals, and reside in miserable huts, or dens, and caves in the earth.

311. What is the general character of savage nations?

A. They are bloodthirsty and revengeful, often eat the flesh of the enemies they take in war, and treat their women as slaves.

Habitations of the Kamtschatdales.

312. What degree of knowledge do they possess?

They possess little or no knowledge of agriculture, or the mechanic arts, and are ignorant of reading, writing, and a regular form of government.

313. What nations are examples of this class?

A. The nations of Australia, or New Holland, and New Guinea, most of the Indian tribes of North and South America, and the Kamtschatdales or people of Kamtschatka.

314. In what manner do barbarous nations live?

A. By agriculture and the pasturage of cattle, sheep, &c.

315. They understand a few of the most simple arts, and are acquainted with reading and writing only to a very limited extent.

316. What nations are examples of this class?

A. The roving tribes of Tartary, Arabia, Central Africa, and the people of Abyssinia.

— 27 —

317. How are the half-civilised nations distinguished?

A. They understand agriculture and many of the arts tolerably well, have written languages, with some knowledge of learning and books.

318. They have also established laws and religion, some little foreign commerce, but are very jealous of strangers, and treat their women generally as slaves.

319. What nations may be considered as belonging to the half civilized class?

A. China, Japan, Burmah, Siam, Turkey, Persia, &c.

320. How are civilized nations distinguished?

A. The arts and sciences are well understood, and the inhabitants derive their subsistence principally from agriculture, manufactures, and commerce.

321. What is the condition of the great body of the people in some civilized states?

A. They are very ignorant and superstitious, and there is likewise a vast difference between the condition of the upper and lower classes of society.

322. What countries rank among the civilized nations?

A. Russia, Spain, Portugal, Greece, Mexico, &c.

323. What is the character of enlightened nations?

A. They are noted for the intelligence, enterprise, and industry of their inhabitants; among them also the arts and ciences are carried to a high state of perfection.

324. How are they otherwise noted?

A. Females are treated with politeness and respect, the principles of free government are well understood, and education and learning are more general than among other nations.

325. What nations belong to this class?

A. The United States, Great Britain, France, Switzerland, and some of the German States.

Waterloo Bridge.

326. **Enlightened and civilized nations are distinguished by the number and variety of their public buildings, and works of national utility; of these, colleges, hospitals, libraries, bridges, canals, rail-roads, &c., are amongst the most prominent.**

28

GOVERNMENT.

327. **In every part of the earth it has been found necessary to have some system of government, or some power or authority, that shall protect the good and punish the wicked.**

328. Without government, no one could be secure either in his person or property, and the world would be a scene of confusion and bloodshed.

329. What is government?

A. It is the power or system by which the laws of a country are made and executed.

330. What is the object of government?

A. To afford protection to life and property, and ensure the happiness of the people.

331. What are the different kinds of government?

A. Three; Monarchy, Aristocracy, and Democracy.

332. What is Monarchy?

A. It is that form of government in which an Emperor or King rules during his life. Emperors, Kings, &c. are also called Sovereigns.

333 What are the forms of Monarchy?

A. Two; absolute and limited Monarchy.

334. What is an absolute Monarchy?

A. Where the monarch governs according to his own will

335. What countries are ruled in this manner?

A. China, Turkey, Persia, and generally all the states of Asia and Africa.

336. Some countries are ruled by tyrants, who use their people with great cruelty, and in consequence are afraid to go abroad without being surrounded by soldiers.

337. The picture represents the Emperor of Morocco, who is one of the most despotic sovereigns in existence. When he appears in public, every one he meets must fall with their faces to the earth, and there remain until the despot has passed.

Emperor of Morocco.

338. What is a limited monarchy?

A. Where the power of the monarch is limited by a constitution.

339. What states are ruled by a limited monarchy?

A. Great Britain, France, Sweden, &c.

— 29 —

340. What is an aristocracy?

A. A government where the power is vested in a few persons called nobles.

This does not at present exist as a distinct form of government, but frequently found combined with others.

341. How is aristocracy frequently found combined?

A. With monarchy and democracy.

342. This is the case in Great Britain and other limited monarchies. The king represents the monarchy, the nobles the aristocracy, and the representative body the democracy.

343. What is a Democracy?

A. It is a free government, in which the people choose their own rulers for stated periods of time.

344. What states have democratic governments?

A. The United States, Texas, Mexico, and all the Spanish American States.

345. What was the first kind of government?

A. The Patriarchal, in which every father or patriarch rules his own family or servants.

346. Does this kind of government still exist?

A. Yes; but it is found only amongst rude and barbarou tribes.

347. What tribes are governed in this manner?

A. The Bedouins of Arabia and the Great Desert, the Laplanders, and some others.

348. How did Patriarchs become chiefs?

A. In process of time families increased in numbers, and patriarchs became chiefs and rulers.

349. How did chiefs, &c. become monarchs?

A. Some chiefs being ambitious and powerful, conquered others, and became monarchs of empires, kingdoms, &c.

350. What titles do rulers assume in different parts of the world?

A. In Asia, they are called Nabobs, Sultans, Shahs, Rajahs, Imams, Khans, &c.

351. What are they called in Europe?

A. Emperors, Kings, Princes, Dukes, Electors, &c.

352. What are they called in America?

A. In America the chief magistrate of the different republics takes the name of President.

30

RELIGION.

353. All races of men, even the most savage, appear to believe in the existence of some invisible being possessed of power superior to man. The various methods in which this faith is manifested, form so many different modes of religion, and exhibit one of the most striking diversities by which nations are distinguished from each other.

354. How may the different forms of religion be divided?

A. Into true and false.

355. In what does true religion consist?

A. In worshipping God, according to his revealed will.

356. In what does false religion consist?

A. In the worship of idols, and the rejection of the true God.

357. What are the principal systems of religion?

A. The Christian, Mahomedan, Pagan, and Jewish.

358. Who are Christians?

A. Those who believe in Christ, as the Saviour of mankind.

A Christian Church.

359. Into what churches are Christians divided?

A. Three: Catholic, Greek, and Protestant.

360. In what do these agree?

A. In the necessity of redemption through the Saviour.

361. In what do they differ?

A. In points of doctrine, and modes of worship.

362. How are Protestants divided?

A. Into various sects; of which the chief are Episcopalians, Lutherans, Presbyterians, Baptists, Methodists, Friends, &c.

363. Who are Mahomedans, or Mussulmans?

A. Those who believe in Mahomed, a religious impostor, who lived in Arabia, about 600 years after Christ.

364. How are Mahomedans divided?

A. Into two sects: the sect of Ali, and the sect of Omar.

A Mahomedan Mosque.

——— 31 ———

365. Who are Pagans or Heathens?

A. Those who believe in false Gods, and who worship idols, beasts, birds, serpents, &c.

366. They comprise several classes, such as Bramins, Buddhists worshippers of the Grand Lama, &c., and number more than one half the inhabitants of the earth.

A Pagan Temple.

367. Who are the Jews?

A. They are those who believe in the Old Testament, but reject the New, and expect a Saviour yet to come.

368. The Christian nations are much superior in knowledge and power to all others, and through the increase of their colonies, the influence of the press, and the exertions of the Missionaries, will no doubt, in the course of a few generations, spread their religion over the greater part of the earth.

369. The importance attached by mankind, in all quarters of the world, to the worship of the Deity, is most strikingly displayed by the numbers of costly and splendid edifices erected for religious purposes.

What nations are superior in knowledge and power to all others?

What will cause their religion to be spread over the greater part of the earth?

To what do mankind, in all quarters of the world, attach importance?

How is it most strikingly displayed?

370. These are called among Christians, churches, cathedrals, and chapels; amongst the Mahomedans, they take the name of Mosques and among the Pagan Hindoos, they are termed Pagodas.

— 32 —

LANGUAGES.

371. The diversities of language form one of the most striking points of distinction between the various nations of the earth, and their arrangement into a general system constitutes an important branch of geography. The languages of cultivated nations are both written and spoken; while those of savage and barbarous races are merely verbal, and are not reduced to writing.

372. The number of original languages in the world, amounts to about 80, but including the various dialects or branches derived from them, they number upwards of 3000, of which more than 1200 are American, and about 550 European. In Asia and Oceanica, there are nearly 1000, and in Africa 276.

How many original languages are there in the world?

How many branches or dialects are derived from them?

How many of these are American?

How many are European?

How many are there in Asia and Oceanica?

How many are there in Africa?

373. The Chinese language is spoken by the greatest number of people, but the English is the most widely spread, and will probably become more general than any other. It is now spoken in every quarter of the globe, and is distinguished for its simplicity, conciseness, and strength.

374. The number of books printed in the English language is probably greater, and the influence of its literature is more extensive, than in the case of any other language.

What language is spoken by the greatest number of people?

Which is the most widely spread? Where is it spoken?

For what is it distinguished?

In what language is it probable that the greatest number of books is printed?

— 33 —

EXERCISES ON THE MAPS.

MAP OF THE WORLD, NO. 1. BEFORE THE LEARNER.

Of what Hemispheres does this Map consist? En. and Wn.

What does the Eastern Hemisphere comprise?

A. All that part of the earth lying east of longitude 20 degrees west from Greenwich.

Hemisphere signifies half a globe.

What great divisions does the Eastern Hemisphere contain? Ee., Aa., Aa.

These divisions form the Eastern Continent, or Old World.

What does the Western Continent comprise?

A. All that part of the earth lying west of longitude 20 degrees west from Greenwich.

What great divisions does the Western Hemisphere contain? N.-Aa., S.-Aa.

These divisions form the Western Continent, or the New World.

What is a Continent? Refer to No. 53, page 16.

What great division lies partly in the Eastern and partly in the Western Hemisphere? Oa.

This division is composed entirely of islands.

Which Hemisphere contains the greatest amount of land? En.

Which Hemisphere contains the greatest amount of water? Wn.

Which Hemisphere contains the largest islands? En.

Which is the largest island in the world? Aa.

Which are the two next largest? Bo., N.-Ga.

Which is the largest division of the Eastern Hemisphere? Aa.

Which is the smallest division? Ee.

Which division of the Eastern Hemisphere extends farthest south? Aa.

Which extends farthest to the north? Aa.

Which extends farthest south, Europe or Asia? Aa.

Which extends farthest west? Aa.

Which extends farthest east? Aa.

— 34 —

Which is the most southern land in the Eastern Hemisphere? Es.-Ld.

Which is the most southern in the Western Hemisphere? Gs.-Ld.

What is an Ocean?

A. It is a vast body of salt water.

What five Oceans are in the Eastern Hemisphere? Nn., Sn., Pc., Ac., In.

What four Oceans are in the Western Hemisphere? Nn., Sn., Pc., Ac.

There are only five Oceans on the earth, of which four extend into both Hemispheres. The Indian is the only Ocean that is wholly in one Hemisphere.

Which is the largest Ocean? Pc.

Which is the second in extent? Ac.

Which is the third in extent? In.

Which is the fourth in extent? Sn. or Antarctic.

Which is the fifth in extent? Nn. or Arctic.

Which is the largest division of the Western Hemisphere? N.-Aa.

Which extends farthest East? S.-A.

Which extends farthest West? N.-A.

Is North America in North or South Latitude? N.-Le.

Why is it in North Latitude?

Is South America mostly in North or in South Latitude? S.-Le.

Why is it mostly in South Latitude?

In what direction does South America lie from North America? S.

What regions lie South and South-east of South America? S.-Sd., S.-Oy., S.-Ld., G.-Ld.

35

MAP OF THE WORLD, NO. 2.

What Hemispheres does this map comprise? Nn. and Sn.

Which Hemisphere contains the greatest quantity of land? Nn.

Which Hemisphere contains the greatest quantity of water? Sn.

What great divisions are wholly in the Northern Hemisphere? Aa., Ee., N.-A.

What great divisions are partly in the Northern Hemisphere? Aa., S.-Aa., Oa.

What does the Northern Hemisphere comprise?

A. All that part of the earth north of the Equator.

What does the Southern Hemisphere comprise?

A. All that part of the earth south of the Equator.

What great divisions are partly in the Southern Hemisphere? Aa. S.-Aa., Oa.

What four regions lie nearest the North Pole? N.-Sa., N.-Za. Sn., Gd.

Nearest the South Pole? Va.-Ld., Ac.-Ct., Gs.-Ld., Es.-Ld.

What navigator has sailed nearest the South Pole?

A. Captain James C. Ross, in 1840.

What other navigator sailed nearly as far south?

A. Captain James Weddell in 1823.

Captain Ross sailed within 830 miles of the South Pole. Some navigators have gone still nearer to the North Pole: Captain Parry went within 500 miles of it, but was stopped by the ice from approaching closer. He found the sea, even in the middle of summer, covered with ice, and no signs of either birds or beasts were to be seen.

— 36 —

MAP NO. 3.—NORTH AMERICA.

What Ocean bounds North America on the East? Ac.

What Ocean bounds it on the West? Pc.

What Ocean bounds it on the North? Ac.

An Ocean is a vast body of salt water.

What Sea is north of British and Russian America? Pr.

What Sea between the West Indies and South America? Cn.

Tell what a Sea is. Refer to Question 22, page 11.

What great Gulf lies east of Mexico? Mo.

What Gulf between Mexico and California? Ca.

What Gulf west of Newfoundland? S.-Le.

What Gulf south-east of Boothia Felix? Ba.

What great Bay separates Prince William's Land from Greenland? Bs.

What great Bay is south-west of Prince William's Land? Hs.

What Bay south of Hudson's Bay? Js.

What Bay between Nova Scotia and New Brunswick? Fy.

What two Bays on the east coast of the United States? De., Ce.

What Bay east of Yucatan? Hs.

What Bay west of Yucatan? Ce.

What Bay east of Guatimala? Ga.

What Bay west of Alaska? Bl.

Describe a Bay. 24.

What Strait between America and Asia? Bs.

What Strait west of Greenland? Ds.

What does it connect? B.-By. and the A.-On.

What three Straits north of Labrador? Hs., Fs., Cd.

What Strait separates Newfoundland from Labrador? Bs

What is a Strait? 25.

What two Sounds in Baffin's Bay? Ss., Ls.

What Sound on the east coast of Greenland? Ds.

What two Sounds in Russian America? Nn., P.-Ws.

What Sound between Queen Charlotte's and Vancouver's Island. Q. Cs.

What Sound north of Cape Hatteras? Ae.

Describe a Sound. 26.

What five Lakes are in the northern part of the United States? Sr. Mn., Hn., Ee., Oo.

What river do they all flow into? S.-Le.

What are the four principal Lakes in British America? Wg., Aa., G.-Se., G.-Br.

What two Lakes are in the northern part of Mexico? Ts., Ba.

What Lakes are in the western part of Mexico? Te.

What Lake is in the southern part of Guatimala? Na.

Tell what a Lake is. 29.

What River flows into the Polar Sea? Ms.

Which are the two chief Rivers that flow into Hudson's Bay? Nn., Cl.

What River of the United States flows into the Pacific Ocean? Ca.

What River flows into the Gulf of California? Co.

Which two large Rivers flow into the Gulf of Mexico? Mi., Na.

What River flows into the Gulf of St. Lawrence? S.-Le.

What River flows into the Gulf of Georgia? Fs.

What River flows into Ungava Bay? Kh.

What River flows from Lake Chapala? Ge.

What River flows from Lake Nicaragua? S.-Jn.

Describe a River. 34.

How are Rivers shown on Maps? 174.

What Peninsula is in the south part of Russian America? Aa.

What Peninsula north of Hudson's Bay? Me.

What Peninsula in the southern part of British America? N. Sa.

What Peninsula in the southern part of the United States? Fa.

What Peninsula in the western part of Mexico? Ca.

What Peninsula in the eastern part of Mexico? Yn.

What is a Peninsula? 54.

What Island lies east of Greenland? Id.

What Island west of Greenland? Do.

What Island in Hudson Bay? Sn.

What four Islands in the Gulf of St. Lawrence? Nd., Ai., C.-Bn P.-Es.

What Islands east of Savannah? Bs.

What Islands south-east from Florida? Ba.

What Islands between North and South America? W.-Is.

Which are the four largest of the West India Islands? Ca., Hi., Ja., P.-Ro.

These are called the Great Antilles.

Which are the two chief Islands on the west coast of the United States? Vs., Q.-Cs.

Tell what Islands are. 56.

Which is the most western Cape of North America? P.-Ws.

Which is the most eastern Cape? Re.

Which is the most southern Cape? Ga.

Which is the most southern Cape of Greenland? Fl.

What three Capes on the east coast of the United States? Cd., Hs., Cl.

Which is the most southern Cape of the United States? Se.

The most southern Cape of California? Ls.

The most eastern Cape of Guatimala? G.-Ds.

What is a Cape? 57.

38

What Mountains extend through the whole of North America? Ry

What are they called in Mexico? M. Cs.

What Mountains extend along the west coast of Mexico? Sy.

What Mountains extend through the eastern part of the United States? Ay.

What two Mountains are in the southern part of Russian America? S.-Es., Fr.

What two Mountains are in the western part of British America? Bn., Hr.

What is a Mountain? 59

What Highlands are in the northern part of Greenland? A.-Ha.

Mountains and Hills are often called Highlands.

What two Peaks are in the western part of the United States? Ls., Js.

Mountains that are higher than those around them are sometimes called Peaks.

What Peaks are in the northern part of Mexico? Sh.

What Volcano is in the southern part of Mexico? Pl.

What two Volcanoes are in Guatimala? Wr., Ca.

What is a Volcano? 62.

What Desert lies in the western part of the United States? G.-An.

What Desert lies in the northern part of Mexico? G.-Sy.

What is a Desert? 70.

Which is the most western division of North America? R.-Aa.

This is called Russian America because it belongs to Russia.

Which is the most eastern division of North America? Gd.

This is sometimes called Danish America because it belongs to Denmark.

Which is the largest division in the North? B.-Aa.

This is called British America because it belongs to Great Britain.

Which is the largest division in the Centre? U.-S.

Which is the largest division in the South? Mo.

What division lies between the United States and Mexico? Ts.

Which division lies south of Mexico? Ga.

This division is likewise called Central America.

What small division lies north of Guatimala? Be.

What great Archipelago lies east of Mexico and Guatimala? W.-Is.

What is an Archipelago? 23.

What is the capital of British America? Qc.

What is the capital of the United States? Wn.

What is the capital of Texas? Hn.

What is the capital of Mexico? Mo.

What is the capital of Guatimala? S.-Sr.

What part of North America is crossed by the Tropic of Cancer? Mo.

What parts are crossed by the Arctic Circle? Gd., B.-Aa., R.-Aa.

In what Zone is the middle part of North America? N.-Te.

In what Zone is the southern part? Td.

In what Zone is the northern part? N.-Fd.

What countries of North America are in the North Frigid Zone? Gd., B.-Aa., R.-Aa.

What countries are in the North Temperate Zone? B.-Aa, U.-S., Ts., Mo.

What countries are in the Torrid Zone? Mo., Ga., W.-Is.

In what Zone is the largest part of North America? N.-Te.

39

MAP NO. 4.—UNITED STATES.

What country bounds the United States on the North? B.-Aa.

What Ocean bounds it on the East? Ac.-On.

What Ocean bounds it on the West? Pc.-On.

What Gulf bounds it on the South? Mo.

What Gulf separates Vancouver's Island from Oregon Territory? Ga.

What Republics lie west of the United States? Mo., Ts.

What five great Lakes are in the northern part of the United States? Sr., Hn., Mn., Ee., Oo.

What is the name of the eastern part of Lake Huron? Me.

What Lake lies east of Lake Ontario? Cn.

What Lake lies north-west of Lake Superior? Ws.

What great river extends through the middle of the U. States? Mi.

Which are its three great western branches? Mi., As., Rd.

Which is its principal eastern branch? Oo.

Into what Gulf does the Mississippi flow? Mo.

What River with two names in the western part of the United States? On. or Ca.

What are its two principal branches? Ls., Cs.

What three Rivers flow into the Atlantic Ocean north of Cape Cod? Pt., Kk., Mk.

What three between Cape Cod and Cape Charles? Ct., Hn., De.

What three flow into Chesapeake Bay? Sa., Pc., Js.

What River flows into Albemarle Sound? Re.

What two flow into Pamlico Sound? Tr., Nc.

What seven Rivers flow into the Atlantic between Cape Lookout and Cape Canaveral? C.-Fr., G.-Pe., Se., Sh., Aa., S.-Ms., S.-Js.

What three Rivers flow into the Gulf of Mexico east of the mouth of the Mississippi? Pl., Aa., Apalachicola.

40

There are eight Capes on the Atlantic coast of the United States.

What are they? Cd., Mr., Ca., Hy., Hs., Lt., Fr., Cl.

What two Capes are on the west side of Florida? Rs., Se.

What Cape west of Apalachee Bay? S.-Bs.

What four Capes are on the Pacific coast of the United States? Fy., Fr., Od., Mo.

What three Bays are between Cape Cod and Cape Hatteras? N.-Y., De., Ce.

What four Bays are on the west coast of Florida? Cm., Ta., Vr., Ae.

What three Bays between Cape St. Blas and the mouths of the Mississippi River? Pa., Me., Bk.

What three Sounds are between Cape Lookout and Cape Cod? Po., Ae., L.-Id.

What Sound on the west coast of Vancouver's Island? Na.

What Island is there on the coast of Maine? M.-Dt.

What two Islands lie south of Massachusetts? Nt., M.-Vd.

What Island lies south of Rhode Island? Bk.

What Island lies south of Connecticut? L.-Id.

What Islands lie south of Florida? F.-Rs. and T.-Is.

Reefs signify low sandy islands.

What Island is separated from the Oregon Territory by the Gulf of Georgia? Vs.

What range of Mountains is in the western part of the United States? Ry.

What three ranges of Mountains are in the Eastern part of the United States? Cd., Ay., B.-Re.

These three ranges are called sometimes the Apalachian Mountains.

In what State is the Black Mountain? N.-Ca.

This is the highest mountain in the eastern part of the United States.

What Mountains are in Pennsylvania and New Jersey? Be.

What Mountains are in Vermont and New Hampshire? Gn., Wc.

The White Mountains are the highest in New England.

What Mountains are in Arkansas and Missouri? Ok.

41

How many States are there in the United States? 26.

How many Territories, including Florida? 6.

There is also a District, called the District of Columbia, which you will see on Map No. 7. It is 10 miles long and 10 miles wide, and contains Washington City, the capital of the United States. Thus the United States contain 33 separate divisions.

There are 13 States lying along the Atlantic Ocean between Florida and New Brunswick.

What are they? Me., N.-H., Ms., R.-I., Ct., N.-Y., N.-J., De., Md., Va., N.-C., S.-C., Ga.

What State lies north of Long Island Sound? Ct.

To what State does Long Island belong? N.-Y.

What three States and Territory lie on the Gulf of Mexico? La., Mi., Aa., Fa.

What two States lie west of the Mississippi River? As., Mi.

What three Territories lie between the Mississippi and the Rocky Mountains? Ia., Mi., In.

What Territory lies between the Mississippi River and Lakes Superior and Michigan? Wn.

What four States lie directly east of the Mississippi River? Mi., Te., Ky., Is.

What State lies on both sides of the Mississippi? La.

What State is bounded by Lakes Huron, Michigan, and Superior? Mn.

What three States are bounded by Lake Erie? N.-Y., Pa., Oo.

What State is bounded by Lake Ontario? N.-Y.

What two States does Lake Champlain separate? N.-Y, Vt.

What two States are separated by the Connecticut River? N.-H., Vt.

What two States are separated by the Delaware River? Pa., N.-J.

What two States are separated by the Potomac River? Va., Md.

What two States are separated by the Savannah River? S.-C., Ga.

What two States are separated by the Chattahoochee River? Ga., Aa.

What five States are bounded by the Ohio River? Ia., Is., Oo. Ky., Va.

What two States are separated in part by the Cumberland Mountains? Va., Ky.

What two States are separated by the Alleghany Mountains? N.-C., Te.

42

Which is the largest State? Va.

The smallest? R.-I.

What is the capital of the United States? Wn.

Which of the Eastern States have each two capitals? Ct., R.-I.

The six Eastern States are Maine, New Hampshire, Vermont, Massachusetts, Rhode Island, and Connecticut.

What is the capital of each? Aa., Cd., Mr., Bn., Pe., Nt., Hd., N.-Hn.

The four Middle States are New York, New Jersey, Pennsylvania, and Delaware.

What is the capital of each? Ay., Tn., Hg., Dr.

The eight Southern States are Maryland, Virginia, North Carolina, South Carolina, Georgia, Alabama, Mississippi, and Louisiana.

What is the capital of each? As., Rd., Rh., Ca., Me., Ta., Jn., N.-Os.

The eight Western States are Ohio, Kentucky, Tennessee, Michigan, Indiana, Illinois, Missouri, and Arkansas.

What is the capital of each? Cs., Ft., Ne., Dt., Is., Va., J.-Cy., L.-Rk.

The organized Territories are Florida, Wisconsin, and Iowa.

What is the capital of each? Te., M.-Cy., Bn.

Through what States does the 40th parallel of Latitude pass? N.-Jy., Pa., Va., Oo., Ia., Is.

Through what Territory does it pass? Ia.

Through or near what Cities and Towns does it pass? Pa., Lr., Bd., Wg., Ze., Cs., Bn., Qy. These places have all the same or very nearly the same latitude.

What six places have nearly the same latitude as Washington City? Wk., Ph., Mn., Vs., Va., S.-Cs.

By placing a ruler on the Map directly on the place named, keeping it parallel with the lines that cross the Map from east to west, the learner will see at once all those places that have the same latitude.

What places have the same latitude as the City of New-York? Nk., Br., Br., Pu., Lt., Pa., Bn.

What places have the same latitude as Boston? Wr., Dt., S.-Jh., Ga.

Through what States does the meridian of Washington pass? N. Y., Pa., Md., Va., N.-C.

Through or near what Cities or Towns does it pass? Ea., Ga.

These places therefore have the same longitude as Washington City.

What four places have about the same longitude as Boston? Sm., Nt., Ph., Dr.

— 43 —

MAP NO. 10.—SOUTH AMERICA.

What Ocean bounds South America on the East? Ac.

What on the West? Pc.

What Sea bounds it on the North? Cn.

What are the principal Mountains of South America? As.

What is their length?

The highest peak, Mount Sorato, is nearly 5 miles high. It is the highest Mountain in America.

What is the next highest Mountain? Ii.

On what side of South America are the Andes? Wt.

What Mountains are on the East? Bn.

How long are they?

What Mountains are in the west part of Brazil? Gl.
What Mountains are between Brazil and Guiana? Ay.

Which is the largest River in South America? An.
Which is its largest branch? Ma.
Which is the second River in length? R.-Pa.
Which is the third? Oo.
Which is the fourth? S. Fo.
Into what Ocean do these flow? Ac.
What River flows into the Caribbean Sea? Ma.

Which is the most northern Cape of South America? Ga.
Which is the most southern Cape? Hn.
Which is the most eastern? S.-Re.
Which is the most western? Bo.

What two Gulfs are on the Caribbean Sea? Dn., Va.
What two are on the west coast? Gl., Ps.
What are the principal Bays on the west coast? Pa., Co.
What are the principal Bays on the east coast? A.-Ss., S.-Ms., S.-Ge.

What Islands are in the Caribbean Sea? B.-Ae., Ma.

These are a part of the Little Antilles, which form the southern division of the West Indies. Margarita belongs to Venezuela, and is the only West Indian Island that is owned by a South American power.

What five Islands north of South America? Td., To., Ga., Bs., S.-Vt.
These form a part of the Caribbee Islands.
What Island lies between the Amazon and Para rivers? Js.
What Islands on the coast of Brazil south of the Equator? Ia., As., S.-Sn., Ca., S.-Ça., Ti.
What Islands east of Patagonia? Fd.
What Island south of Patagonia? T.-Fo.
What Island east of Terra del Fuego? S.-Ld.
What Island east of Staten Land? S.-Ga.
What Islands south of Terra del Fuego? Cn.
What Island south of Chili? Ce.
What three Archipelagoes south of Chiloe? Cs., M.-Ds., Q.-As.
What Island south of the Gulf of Penas? Wn.
What Islands west of Chili? J.-Fs., S.-Fx.
What Island in the Gulf of Guayaquil? Po.

— 44 —

What Lake lies in the north-west part of Venezuela? Mo.

What Lake forms part of the boundary between Peru and Bolivia? Ta.

What two Lakes are in Bolivia? Uy., Xs.

What three Lakes are in Buenos Ayres? Ve., Ps., Ia.

What two Lakes are in the southern part of Brazil? Ps., Mm.

What Lake in Peru forms the source of the Amazon River? Rs.

What are the extensive grassy plains in the east part of Brazil called? The Sm.

What are the elevated plains in the west part of Brazil called? C.-Ps.

Point out in Venezuela the word Llanos, and in Buenos Ayres the word Pampas. These are the names given to extensive plains in those parts of South America. They are, like the Sertam in Brazil, the Prairies in North America, and the Steppes of Asia, covered with grass, on which vast herds of cattle roam and feed.

The three most northern divisions on the west side of South America are called the Colombian States.

Which are they? Va., N.-Ga., Er.

The two next lying immediately south of these are called the Peruvian States.

What are their names? Pu., Ba.

Which is the largest division of South America? Bl.

Which is the smallest division? Py.

Which division belongs to the British, Dutch, and French? Ga.

Which is the most northern division of South America? N.-Ga

Which is the most western division? Er.

Which is the most eastern division? Bl.

Which is the most southern division? Pa.

Which two divisions are separated by the Andes? B.-As. and Ci.

What is the Capital of New Grenada? Ba. Of Venezuela? Cs. Of Equador? Qo. Of Peru? La.

Of Bolivia? Ca. Of Brazil? R.-Jo. Of Paraguay? An.

Of Uruguay? Mo. Of Buenos Ayres? B.-As. Of Chili? So.

What States does the Equator pass through? Bl., Va., N.-Ga., Er

What is the Equator? 115.

What States does the Tropic of Capricorn pass through? Bl., Py., B.-As., Ba.

In what Zone is that part of South America that lies north of the Tropic of Capricorn? Td.

In what Zone is that part south of the Tropic of Capricorn? S. Te.

What portion of South America is in the Torrid Zone, the largest or smallest? Lt.

How do you know it is in the Torrid Zone? 189.

In what Latitude is the greatest part of South America? S. Le

Why is it in South Latitude? 131.

What is Latitude? 130.

In what Longitude is South America, reckoning from Greenwich? W. Le.

How do you know it is in West Longitude? 151.

What is Longitude? 146.

45

MAP NO. 11.—EUROPE.

What Ocean bounds Europe on the West? Ac.

What Ocean bounds it on the North? Ac.

What Sea bounds it on the South? Mn.

What Mountains bound it on the east? Ul.

There are eight Seas in Europe. What are they? We., Bc., Nh a., Mn, Ma., Bk., Av.

What Sea is on the north of Russia? We.

What Sea between Russia and Sweden? Bc.

What Sea between Scotland and Denmark? Nh.

What Sea between England and Ireland? Ih.

What Sea between Europe and Africa? Mn.

What Sea south of Turkey? Ma.

What two Seas south of Russia? Bk., Av.

What is the name of the Sea between Greece and Asia? Ao.

What is an Archipelago? 23.

What large Islands lie west of Europe? B.-Is.

The Island containing England, Scotland, and Wales, is called Great Britain.

What Island lies west of Great Britain? Id.

What four groups of Islands are west and north of the British Isles? Hs., Oy., Sd., Fe.

What large Island lies west of Norway? Id.

What Islands are in the Baltic Sea? Ad., Do., Ol., Gd., Od., Rn., Zd., Fn.

What Islands in the Mediterranean belong to Spain? Bc.

What Islands belong to France? Ca. To Great Britain? Ma., In To Egypt? Ca.,

What Island south of Italy? Sy.

What Mountain do you observe on it? Ea.

What Island east of Greece? Nt.

What small Island between Tuscany and Corsica? Ea.

This island is remarkable for being the place to which Napoleon Bonaparte was banished in 1814.

What Island bears the same name as a kingdom in Italy? Sa.

What small Island between England and Ireland? Mn.

What Gulf between Sweden and Russia? Ba.

What two Gulfs in the Baltic Sea? Fd., Ra.

What Gulf south of France? Ls.

What Gulf south of the Kingdom of Sardinia? Ga.

What Gulf east of Italy? Ve.

What Gulf in the Black Sea? Bs.

What Bay north of Spain? By.

46

What Channel between France and England? Eh.

What Channel between Wales and Ireland? S.-Gs.

What Channel between Ireland and Scotland? Nk.

What Channel between Denmark and Norway? S.-Rk.

What Channel between Denmark and Sweden? Ct.

What Channel between the Marmora and Black Seas? Cc.

What Strait between France and England? Dr.

What Strait between Europe and Africa? Gr.

What Strait between Corsica and Sardinia? Bo.

What Strait between the Mediterranean and the Sea of Marmora? Ds.

What Strait between the Black Sea and the Sea of Azov? Ee.

What Strait between Italy and Turkey? Oo.

What Mountains form the boundary between Europe and Asia? Ul.

What Mountains divide Sweden and Norway? Dd.

What Mountains divide France and Spain? Pa.

What Mountains in France? Cs., Ae.

What Mountains in the north of Spain? Cn.

What Mountains in the south of Spain? Sa.-Ma., Sa.-Na.

What Mountains in Switzerland? As. these are the highest in Europe. Mt. Blanc is the highest of the Alps, it is near three miles high.

What Mountains extend through Italy? Ae.

What Mountains in the east of Austria? Cn.

What Mountains extend through Turkey? Bn.

Which is the most northern cape of Europe? Nh.

Which is the most southern? Mn.

Which is the most southern cape of Norway? Ne.

Which is the most southern cape of England? L.-Ed.

Which is the most southern cape of Ireland? Cr.

Which is the most northern cape of Spain? Ol.

Which is the most western cape of Spain? Fe.

Which is the most southern cape of Portugal? S.-Vt.

Which is the most southern cape of Greece? Mn.

What Rivers flow into the White Sea? Oa., Da., Me.

What Rivers flow into the Gulf of Bothnia? Ua., Ta., Kx., La., Sa. Il., La., Dl.

What Rivers flow into the Baltic Sea? Da., Nn., Va., Or.

What Rivers flow into the North Sea? Ee., Wr., Es., Re.

What Rivers flow into the Atlantic Ocean? Sn., Se., Le., Ge., Mo. Do., Ts., Ga., Gr.

What Rivers flow into the Mediterranean Sea? Eo., Re., Tr.

What River flows into the Gulf of Venice? P.

What Rivers flow into the Black Sea? De., Dr., Bg., Dr.

What River flows into the Sea of Azov? Dn.

What Peninsula lies west of the Baltic sea and the Gulf of Bothnia Sn. Ny.

What Peninsula lies south of Norway? Dk.

What Peninsula lies south of France? Sn. Pl.

What Peninsula lies west of the Gulf of Venice? Iy.

What Peninsula lies south of Turkey? Ge.

What Peninsula lies west of the Sea of Azov? Ca.

What grand division of the earth lies east of Europe? Aa.

What country lies east of the Ural Mountains? Sa.

What is the largest division in Europe? Ra.

What divisions lie west of the Baltic Sea and the Gulf of Bothnia? Sa., Ny.

What division lies south of the Baltic Sea? Pa.

What division lies west of the Black Sea? Ty.

What division lies west of the Archipelago? Ge.

What division lies west of the Gulf of Venice? Iy.

What division lies north of the Gulf of Venice? Aa.

What division lies north of the Mediterranean Sea? Fe.

What divisions lie west of the Mediterranean Sea? Sn., Pl.

What divisions lie on the Black Sea? Ty., Ra.

What seven divisions lie on the North Sea? Ny., Sd., Ed., Dk., Hr., Hd., Bm.

What divisions lie on the Baltic Sea? Sn., Dk., Ra., Pa.

What divisions lie on the Atlantic Ocean? Ny., Sd., Id., Fe., Sa., Pl.

What divisions lie on the Mediterranean Sea? Sn., Fe., Iy., Ge.

What is the Capital of Sweden? Sm. — Of Russia? S.-Pg. — Of Denmark? Cn. — Of Hanover? Hr. — Of England? Ln. — Of Holland? He. — Of Belgium? Bs. — Of Prussia? Bn. — Of Saxony? Dn. — Of Wirtemberg? Sd. — Of Bavaria? Mh. — Of Switzerland? Be. — Of France? Ps. — Of Spain? Md. — Of Portugal? Ln. — Of Sardinia? Tn. — Of Tuscany? Fe. — Of the Popedom? Re. — Of Naples? Ns. — Of Austria? Va. — Of Turkey? Ce. — Of Greece? As.

In what Latitude is Europe? N.-Le. — How do you know it is in North Latitude? In what Longitude is it mostly? E.-Le. — How do you know it is in East Longitude? What parts of Europe are in West Longitude? Pl., Sn., Fe., Ed., Sd., Id. — Which is the most Northern Country of Europe? Ny. — Which is the most Southern? Ge. — Which is the most Eastern? Ra. — Which is the most Western? Id.

48

MAP NO. 14. — ASIA.

What great division bounds Asia on the West? Ec.

What great division bounds Asia on the North East? N.-Aa.

What great division bounds it on the South West? Aa.

What Ocean bounds it on the North? Ac. or Northern.

What Ocean bounds it on the South? In.
What Ocean bounds it on the East? Pc.

What Sea divides Asia from Africa? Rd.
What Sea separates Hindoostan from Arabia? An.
What Sea lies west of Syria? Mn.
What two seas lie north of Turkey? Ma., Bk.
What Sea lies east of Nova Zembla? Ka.
What Sea lies east of Kamtschatka? Ka.
What Sea lies west of Kamtschatka? Ok.
What Sea lies west of the Kurile Islands? Jo.
What Sea lies between Niphon and Corea? Jn.
What Sea lies west of Corea? Yw.
What Sea lies east of Cochin China? Ca.
Asia contains three interior Seas: which are they? Cn., Al., Dd.

What Mountains separate Europe from Asia? Ul.
What Mountains bound Siberia on the South? L.-Ay., G.-Ay.
What Mountains extend through Mongolia? Tn.
What Mountains bound Thibet on the north? Kn.
What Mountains bound Hindoostan on the North-East? Hh.
Which is the highest of the Himmaleh mountains and its height? Ce
What Mountains in the southern part of Hindoostan? Gt.
What Mountains are in Turkey? Ts.
What Mountains are in Persia? Ez.
What Mountains bound Independent Tartary on the South? H.-Ko.
What Mountains are in China? Pg., Mg.
What Mountains separate Circassia from Georgia? Cs.

What three Gulfs are in the north part of Siberia? Oe., Yi., La.
What two Gulfs between Persia and Arabia? Pn., Os.
What two Gulfs on the west coast of Hindoostan? Ch., Cy.
What Gulf separates Hindoostan from Ceylon? Mr.
What Gulf south of Birmah? Mn.
What Gulf between Siam and Cambodia? Sm.
What Gulf east of Anam? Tn. What near the Yellow Sea? Pe.
What Gulf north of Kamtschatka? Ar.

Which is the most northern Cape of Asia? C.-Vi.
Which is the most southern Cape? Ra.

Which is the most eastern Cape? Et.

Which are the most southern Capes of Hindoostan and Birmah? Cn. and Ns.

49

What three great Rivers flow into the Northern Ocean? Oe., Yi., La.
What River flows into the Channel of Tartary? Ar.
What two large rivers flow through China? Ho., Yg.
What River separates Cochin China from Cambodia? Ca.
What River flows into the Gulf of Martaban? Iy.
What two Rivers flow into the Bay of Bengal? Ga., Br.
What River bounds Hindoostan on the west? Is.
What two Rivers unite and flow into the Persian Gulf? Es., Ta.
What Rivers flow into the Caspian Sea? Va., Ul.
What two Rivers flow into the sea of Aral? Ao., Sn.
What River flows through Little Bucharia? Cr.

What Island west of Syria? Cs.
What Island south of Hindoostan? Cn.
What Islands in the Bay of Bengal? An., Nr.
What Island west of Malacca? P.-Pg.
What Island south of China? Hn.
What Islands east of China? Fa., L.-Co.
What Islands form the Empire of Japan? Jo., Nn., Se., Ku.
What Island east of Mantchooria? Sn.
What Islands south of Kamtschatka? Ke.
What range of Islands east of Kamtschatka? An.
What three Islands north of Siberia? Ki., Lf., N.-Sa.

What Strait separates Asia from North America? Bs.
What Strait between the islands of Jesso and Niphon? My.
What Strait between Corea and Japan? Ca.
What Strait between China and Formosa? Fa.
What Strait between Malacca and Sumatra? Ma.
What Strait between Arabia and Abyssinia? Bl.
What two great divisions does this Strait separate? Aa., Aa.

What Peninsula lies between the Persian Gulf and the Red Sea? Aa.
What Peninsula south of Siam? Ma.
What Peninsula between the Yellow Sea and the Sea of Japan? Ca.
What Peninsula between the seas of Ochotsk and Kamtschatka? Ka.

What Isthmus between the Red Sea and the Mediterranean Sea? Sz.
What two great divisions does it unite? Aa., Aa.
What Isthmus west of the Gulf of Siam? Kw.

— 50 —

What three Lakes are in the southern part of Siberia? Ty., An., Bl
What two are in Soongaria? Bh., Z.-Nr.
The word Nor in Central or Middle Asia, appears to mean Lake.
What Lake is in Little Bucharia? L.-Nr.
What three Lakes in China? K.-Nr., Tg., Pg.
What Lake in Afghanistan? Zh.
The Caspian, Aral, and Dead Seas, are in fact Lakes, but have been called Seas because their waters are salt.

To what Empire do the Northern parts of Asia belong? Rn.
What Empire in the middle and eastern parts of Asia? Ce.
What great division in the south of Asia? In.
What country north of the Altay Mountains? Sa.
What great division south of the Altay Mountains? C.-Ty.
What great division east of the Caspian Sea? I.-Ty.
What country south of the Black Sea? Ty.
What country east of the Mediterranean Sea? Sa.
What country east of the Red Sea? Aa.
What country south of the Caspian Sea? Pa.
What countries east of Persia? An., Bn.
What country between the Arabian Sea and the Bay of Bengal? Hn.
What countries east of the Bay of Bengal? Bh., Sm.
What division east of the Cambodia River? Am.
What countries are included in Anam? Ca., C.-Ca., Tn. part of Ls.
What country north of Anam? Ca.
The Chinese Empire includes nine different countries; what are they? Sa., Ma., Ma., L.-Ba., L.-Tt., Tt., Bn., Ca., Ca.
Independent Tartary includes six different countries; what are they? Ks., Ta., Ka., Kn., G.-Ba., Kz.
Afghanistan includes two different States; what are they? Ht., Cl.
What Empire lies east of the Chinese Empire? Jn.

What is the Capital of Siberia? Tk. — Of the Tartar States, Kokan, Khiva, and Great Bucharia? Kn., Ka., Ba. — Of Persia? Tn. — Of the Arabian States, Hedjaz, Yemen, Nedsjed, and Omon? Ma. Sa., Da., Mt. — Of Herat? Ht. — Of Cabul? Cl.

Of Lahore? Le. — Of Hindoostan? Ca. — Of Thibet? La. — Of Birmah? Aa. — Of Siam? Bk. — Of Anam? He. — Of China? Pn. — Of Corea? Ko. — Of Japan? Jo.

What country in Asia does the Arctic Circle pass through? Sa.

What countries does the Tropic of Cancer pass through? Aa., Hn., Bh., Ca.

In what Zone is the northern part of Asia? N. Fd.

In what Zone is the central part of Asia? N.-Te.

In what Zone is the southern part of Asia? Td.

In what Latitude is Asia wholly? N.-Le.

How do you know it is in North Latitude? 135.

In what Longitude is Asia from Greenwich? E.-Le.

How do you know it is East Longitude? 151.

51

MAP NO. 16. — AFRICA.

What Sea bounds Africa on the North? Mn.

What Sea bounds it on the East? Rd.

What Ocean bounds it on the East? In.

What Ocean bounds it on the West? Ac.

What Strait separates Morocco from Spain? Gr.

What Strait separates Abyssinia from Arabia? Bl.

What Gulf between Tripoli and Barca? Sa.

What Gulf between Berbora and Arabia? An.

What Gulf south of Upper Guinea? Ga.

What Bays on the southern part of the west coast? G.-Fh., Wh., S.-Cr., S.-Ha.

What Bay on the east coast north of Caffraria? Da.

What Channel between Madagascar and Mozambique? Me.

Which is the most northern Cape of Africa? Ba.

Which is the most southern Cape? Ls.

Which is the most eastern Cape? Gi.

Which is the most western Cape? Ve.

What celebrated Cape near the southern extremity of Africa? G.-He

What two Capes on the desert coast? Br., Bo.

What Cape at the southern extremity of Liberia? Ps.

What Cape at the northern extremity of Mozambique? Do.

What Cape at the northern extremity of Zanguebar? Bs.

Which is the principal River in Africa? Ne.

The Nile is remarkable for flowing 1600 miles without receiving the smallest tributary.

Into what Sea does the Nile empty? Mn.

What are its three chief branches? Ad., Ai., Te.

What three Rivers empty into the Atlantic Ocean on the west coa f Africa? Sl., Ga., R.-Ge.

What River in Liberia? S.-Ps.

What River empties into the Gulf of Guinea? Nr.

This is a very remarkable river; though heard of 20 centuries ago, its source and mouth were discovered only a few years since.

What River between Angola and Benguela? Ca.

What River between Loango and Congo? Co.

What River south of Benguela? Be.

What River runs through the country of the Hottentots? Oe.

What River flows into Delagoa Bay? Me.

What River flows into the Mozambique Channel? Ze.

What Rivers run through Zanguebar? Oe., We.

What Rivers flow into Lake Tchad? Yu., Sy.

What two Lakes in Soudan? Td., Fe.

What Lake north of Bambarra? De.

What Lake in Abyssinia? Da.

What Lake in Barbary? Lh.

What Lake west of Zanguebar and Mozambique? Mi.

What three groups of Islands in the Atlantic Ocean belong to Portugal? Ae., Ma., C.-Ve.

What group of Islands belongs to Spain? Cy.

What three Islands in the Gulf of Guinea belong to Portugal? Ps., S.-Ts., An.

Which is the most northern Island in the Gulf of Guinea? F.-Po.

What two Islands south of the Equator belong to Great Britain? An., S.-Ha.

St. Helena is remarkable for being the place of imprisonment and burial of Napoleon Bonaparte. He died here in 1821, after a residence of six years. In the year 1840, his remains were taken to France.

What great Archipelago in the Indian Ocean? En.

What are its principal Islands and groups? Mr., Co., Se., Ae., Ma.

Which are the Mascarenha Islands? Bn., Ms.

The latter is often called the Isle of France.

What Islands belong to Great Britain? Ms., Se., Ae.

What Island belongs to France? Bn.

What Islands belong to Muscat? Pa., Zr., Ma.

What Islands between Madagascar and Mozambique? Co.

What Islands north-east of Cape Guardafui? Sa., A.-Ca.

To what power does Socotra belong? Kn.

What Mountains extend through Barbary? As.

What is the highest Peak of the Atlas Mountains? Mn. How high is it?

What Mountains between Soudan and Guinea? Kg.

What Mountains between Soudan and Ethiopia? Mn.

What Mountains in Congo? Cl.

What Mountains in Cape Colony? Sw.

What Mountains west of Mozambique? La.

These Mountains have been called by geographers the Back-Bone of the world, but their very existence is now considered doubtful.

What Mountains in Madagascar? Ra., Rd.

What great division occupies the northern part of Africa? By.

What States does Barbary include? Mo., As., Ts., Ti., B.-Jd.

What great division lies south of Barbary? G.-Dt.

What great divisions lie south of the Great Desert? Sn., Sa.

What great divisions lie south of Soudan? U.-Ga., L.-Ga. and Ea.

What great division lies west of Soudan? Sa.

What great division on the west coast on both sides of the Equator? L.-Ga.

What great division on the east coast on both sides of the Equator? Zr

What great division lies south of the Mountains of the Moon? Ea

What colony occupies the southern extremity of Africa? C.-Cy.

What two races of men inhabit the country north of Cape Colony? Hs., Bs.

53

What countries lie on the Red Sea? Et., Na., Aa.

In what country are the mouths of the river Nile situated? Et.

What is the district comprised between the outlets of the river Nile called? Da.

What is a Delta?

It is a term applied to those districts embraced by the outlets of rivers The Nile, Niger, Ganges, Mississippi, and other great streams, have each their respective deltas.

What Desert occupies a large portion of the north of Africa? G.-Dt

What Desert between the river Nile and the Red Sea? Nn.

What Desert is crossed by the Tropic of Capricorn? Ch.

How long and wide is the Great Desert?

This is the largest Desert in the world; and though extremely hot, and in most places destitute of water, yet contains a number of fertile spots called Oases, all of which are inhabited.

Which are the five principal Oases? Fn., Tt., As., Bh., Ty.

There are four other Oases: which are they? Aa., Sh., E.-Dl., E.-Kh.

What is the western part of the Great Desert called? Sa.

What is the Capital of Morocco? Mo. — Of Algiers? Al. — Of Tunis? Ts. — Of Tripoli? Ti. — Of Fezzan? Mk. — Of Egypt? Co. — Of Nubia? N.-Da — Of Foota Jallon? To. — Of Ashantee? Ce. — Of Dahomey? Ay. — Of Benin? Bn. — Of Kaarta? Ko. — Of Timbuctoo? To. — Of Bambarra? So. — Of Houssa? Ka. — Of Yarriba? Eo. — Of Bornou? Bu. — Of Bergoo? Wa. — Of Darfur? Ce. — Of Kordofan? It. — Of Abyssinia? Gr. — Of Congo? S.-Sr. — Of Angola? S.-P.-Lo. — Of Benguela? S.-F.-Ba. — Of Cazembe? Ce. — Of Monomotapa? Zo. — Of Mozambique? Of Cape Colony? C. Tn. — Of Imerina? Tu.

What parts of Africa are crossed by the Tropic of Cancer? G. Dt., Et.

What parts by the Equator? L.-Ga., Eu., Zr.

What parts by the Tropic of Capricorn? Hs., D.-Ch., Bs., Me.

In what Zone is Africa mostly? Td.

In what Zone is that part of it north of the Tropic of Cancer? N. Te.

In what Zone is that part of it south of the Tropic of Capricorn? S. Te.

Africa comprises about 37 degrees of North Latitude, and 35 degrees of South Latitude. In what Latitude then is it mostly situated? N.-Le.

Africa comprises more than 50 degrees of East Longitude, and about 18 degrees of West Longitude. In what Longitude is it then mostly? E.-Le.

— 54 —

MAP NO. 18. — OCEANICA.

Which are the three grand divisions of Oceanica? Ma., Aa., Pa.

Which is the largest division of Oceanica? Pa.
Which is the smallest division of Oceanica? Ma.

What three considerable Islands does the Equator pass through in Malaysia? Sa., Bo., Cs.
What Island lies south-east of Sumatra? Ja.
What five Islands east of Java? By., Sa., Ja., Fs., Tr.
What Islands east of Celebes? Se.
What Islands east of the China Sea? Pe.
Which are the two largest of the Philippine Islands? Ln., Mo.

What Strait separates Sumatra from Malacca? Ma.
What Strait separates Sumatra from Java? Sa.
American vessels generally pass through the Straits of Sunda on going to or returning from China.
What Strait between Borneo and Celebes? Mr.
What Islands between Borneo and Mindanao? So.
What Mountain in Sumatra directly under the Equator? Or.

Which is the largest Island of Australasia? Aa.
What are its divisions? W.-Aa., S.-Aa. and Ns.-W.
What Colony on the south-east coast of Australia? B.-By.
What Colony on the west coast? S.-Rr. On the south? S.-Aa.
What Island south of Australia? V.-D.-Ld.
What Strait separates Australia from Van Diemen's Land? Bs.
What Strait separates Australia from Papua or New Guinea? Ts.
What two Gulfs on opposite sides of Australia? Ca., Ss.
Which is the principal River in Australia? My.
Which are the principal Mountains in Australia? Bs., Bs.
Which is its principal town? Sy.

What large Island north of Australia? Pa. or N.-Ga.
What Islands north-east of Australia? S.-Ao., N.-Ga., N.-Id., N.-Bn., Le.
What Islands east of Australia? N.-Hs., N.-Ca., Nk.
What Sea between Australia and New Hebrides? Cl.
What Islands south-east of Australia? N.-Zd.
What Strait between the two largest Islands of New Zealand? Ca.
What Strait between the middle and southernmost Island of New Zealand? Fx.
What Bays in the northern part of New Zealand? Is., Py.

55

Which Archipelago of Polynesia does the Equator pass through? Cl

Which are the principal Archipelagoes and Islands of Polynesia north of the Equator? Ms.-A., As.-A., Ce., Le., Sh., Aa.

What Archipelago lies on the 140th meridian of Longitude west from Greenwich? Ms.

What groups of Islands does it contain? Wn., Ms.

Which are the principal Islands east of the 160th meridian of Longitude west from Greenwich, and south of the Equator? Sy., Gn., Cs., Al., Ps., Pu., Gr. P.-Ws., K.-Gs.

Which are the principal Islands that lie west of the 160th meridian of Longitude west from Greenwich, and south of the Equator? Ns., Fy., Fe., Hi., Ta., Kc.

Which is the most northern Island of Polynesia? Ms.

Which are the most southern Isles of Polynesia? Kc.

Which is the most eastern Island of Polynesia? Er.

Which are the most western Islands of Polynesia? S.-As.

The most important group of Islands belonging to Polynesia is on the 20th parallel of North Latitude. Which is it? Sh.

Which is the principal of the Sandwich Islands? Hi. or Oe.

What high Mountain is on the Island of Hawaii and its height? M.-Rh.

What distinguished personage was killed here in the year 1779? C. Ck.

What Tropic crosses the northern part of Oceanica? Cr.

What Tropic crosses the southern part? Cn.

What great Circle crosses the central or middle part? Er.

In what Zone is the northern part of Oceanica? N.-Te.

In what Zone is the middle parts? Td.

In what Zone is the southern part? S.-Te.

Oceanica comprises 50 degrees of South Latitude, and 40 North Latitude.

In what Latitude then is it mostly? Sh.

Oceanica comprises about 85 degrees of east and 72 of west Longitude from Greenwich.

In what Longitude then is it mostly? Et.

PART SECOND.

DESCRIPTIVE GEOGRAPHY.

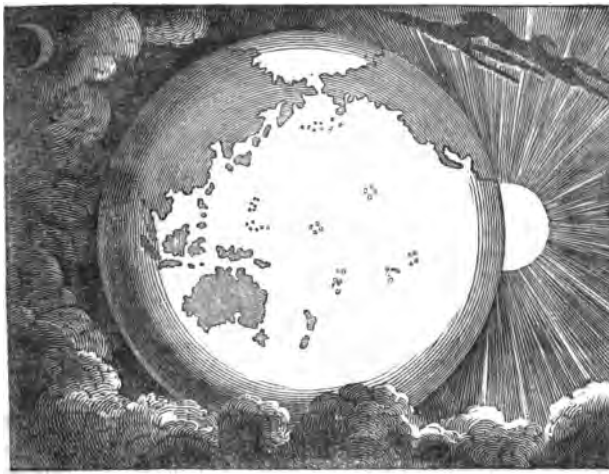


Figure and Population of the Earth.

56

1. The Earth is a vast globe or spherical body similar to a solid ball. Its entire surface is about 200 millions of square miles, of which one-fourth or 50 millions of square miles is land, and the remaining three-fourths are covered with water.

2. Ignorant people suppose the earth to be a flat body, bounded on all sides by the sea and sky. More attentive observers were, however, long ago persuaded that it is a globe or sphere, similar in form to a ball or apple.

3. Various circumstances render it evident that the earth must be a body round in every direction; of which one of the

1. What is the earth? What is its entire surface? How much is land? How much is water? 2. What do ignorant people suppose the earth to be? Of what were more attentive observers persuaded? 3. What is one of the most striking proofs that the earth is round in

ost striking proofs is that furnished by an eclipse of the on, which takes place in consequence of the earth coming tween the sun and the moon, and causing the circular adow of the earth to be thrown on the latter body.

4. If the earth, instead of being round in all directions, was merely ircular flat body like the top of a round table, the shadow thrown m it on the moon would at one time or other present the appearance an oval, of a straight line, or some other figure different from that ich it has always been found to assume.

5. Sailing round the world is another proof of its globular rm. It is well known that navigators, by leaving any sea- rt, Philadelphia for instance, and sailing as nearly east or st from it as the form of the different continents will per- it, may go round the world and return to the place they left a direction opposite to that from which they started.

6. To sail round the world is called circumnavigating it, and was st accomplished by Magellan, a Portuguese navigator, more than ee hundred years ago. It was for a long time considered a great dertaking, but it has been of late years so often performed, that it is t now thought to be an enterprise of any importance.

— 57 —

7. When a ship comes from sea towards the land, we first t sight of the tops of the masts and rigging; as she advan- s nearer, the lower parts are seen; and at last the hull, or dy of the vessel, comes distinctly into view. If the earth re not spherical, the hull would be the first part seen.

8. A person sailing to the southern parts of the earth, perceives that e sun appears more and more to come directly over him at noon, which length actually happens; and after he has passed the Equator, the n begins to appear to the northward, and will go farther and farther that direction as he advances south.

9. New stars will also come into view in the southern horizon, whil ose in the northern parts will gradually disappear. These circum nces could not possibly happen if the earth were a flat body, whereas

---

ery direction? 4. If the earth was a circular flat body what appear- ce would its shadow present? 5. What is another proof of its obular form? How must navigators sail to go round the world? What is it called? Who was the first that did it? What was it a long time considered? 7. What do we first get sight of when a ip comes from sea? What at last comes distinctly into view? 8. What ll a person sailing to the south perceive? After he has passed the quator, what will begin to appear? 9. What will come into view?

Ship coming from Sea.

on the supposition that it is spherical, they all appear simple and probable.

10. The inhabitants of the earth amount to about eight hundred millions, and if they were equally distributed, every square mile of land would contain 16 human beings.

11. On an average, a generation of men is supposed to exist about 33 years. Some individuals live more than twice, and a very few three times that period; but the estimate is that 800 millions of human beings are born and die every 33 years; being at the rate of almost 25 millions a year, 66,000 every day, 2700 every hour, and 45 every minute.

12. The creation of the world, according to the book of Genesis, took place near 6,000 years ago, so that supposing the average duration of life to have been always the same, about 175 generations of men would have existed since that time.

13. In the early ages of the earth, however, the duration of life was greater than at present; therefore, it is probable that a smaller number of generations of men must have existed than according to the above calculations.

What could not possibly happen? 10. How many inhabitants are there on the earth? Suppose they were equally distributed, what would be the effect? 11. How long on an average does a generation of men exist? How many are born and die every thirty-three years? How many die every year? Every day? Every hour? Every minute? 12. How long has the world been created? How many generations are supposed to have lived since that time? 13. When was the duration of life greater

— 58 —

14. The world comprises five great divisions, viz: America, Europe, Asia, Africa, and Oceanica, these are each subdivided into various Empires, Kingdoms, Republics, &c.

15. America is a great continent, entirely separated from the other parts of the earth. It is often called the New World, and also the Western continent.

16. Europe is the smallest of the five grand divisions, yet it contains the most powerful nations in the world.

17. Asia is the largest division of the Globe, and comprises more than one half of the Eastern continent. It is the most populous quarter of the earth.

18. Africa is a great peninsula, united to Asia by the isthmus of Suez. It is the least known of any of the great divisions of the earth.

19. Oceanica comprises the various groups of Islands situated in the Pacific Ocean between the Eastern and Western continents.

20. Of the population of the earth, 405 millions belong to the European or Caucasian race, 280 millions to the Asiatic or Mongolian race, 90 millions to the African or Negro race, 20 millions to the Malay race, and 10 millions to the American race.

	Square Miles	Population.		Square Miles.
America	15,000,000	46,500,000	Northern Ocean	6,000,000
Europe	3,500,000	233,500,000	Pacific do.	77,000,000
Asia.....	16,000,000	450,000,000	Atlantic do.	34,000,000
Africa	11,000,000	57,000,000	Indian do.	20,000,000
Oceanica	4,500,900	18,000,000	Southern do.	13,000,000
	50,000,000	805,000,000		150,000,000

---

than at present? 14. What does the world comprise? What are they 15. What is America? 16. What is Europe? 17. What is Asia 18. What is Africa? 19. What does Oceanica comprise? 20. Of the population of the earth, how many belong to the European race? The Asiatic? The African? The Malay? The American? Tell from the table the number of square miles and population in America. In Europe. In Asia. In Africa. In Oceanica. Tell the extent in square miles of the Northern Ocean. The Pacific. The Atlantic. The Indian. The Southern.

AMERICA.

Landing of Columbus.

59

1. AMERICA is an extensive continent, comprising one of the grand divisions of the globe. It contains about three-tenths of the dry land on the surface of the earth, and is washed on all sides by vast oceans.

2. Its climate is various, embracing that of every Zone, the torrid, the temperate on both sides of the equator, and part of the frigid. It is said to be colder, generally, than in places in the same latitude in other parts of the world.

3. This continent is distinguished for the variety and richness of its vegetable productions, the number of its mines of gold, silver, and precious stones, and for the freedom of its political institutions.

4. The inhabitants amount to about 46 and a half millions, of whom 20 millions are whites, 10 millions of Indians, 8 millions of negroes, and 8 and a half millions of the mixed races.

5. The whites are chiefly English in the North, and Spaniards in

America. Q. — 1. What does America contain? 2. What is said of the climate? 3. For what is this continent distinguished? 4. What is the number of inhabitants? 5. What are the Whites?

the South, with some French, Portuguese, Germans, Dutch, &c. The negroes are Africans and their descendants, who were purchased as slaves in their native country and brought hither from time to time.

6. The aboriginal population consists of two distinct races; the Esquimaux* inhabiting the shores and Islands of the Arctic regions, and the copper-coloured Indians who are spread over the rest of the continent.

7. America is called the Western continent, because it lies to the westward of Europe, and the New World from its recent discovery. It was unknown to European nations until the year 1492. It was at that time discovered by Christopher Columbus, a native of Genoa, in Italy, who was the most skilful navigator of his age.

8. The great object which engaged the attention of the maritime nations of Europe, at that period, was a passage by sea to the East Indies.

9. The spherical figure of the earth, which Columbus understood, made him conceive the idea that the eastern parts of the world stretched so far towards Europe, that they might be reached in a moderate space of time by sailing westward.

10. The project of Columbus was generally regarded as so visionary, that it was only after many years of ardent solicitation, that Ferdinand and Isabella, King and Queen of Spain, were at last induced to patronize his enterprise.

60

11. He was furnished by them with three small vessels and ninety men, and left Palos, a port on the south of Spain, August 3d, 1492. On the 12th of October following, he discovered Guanahani Island, which he named St. Salvador.

12. He visited at that time several of the adjacent Islands, and returned to Spain, where he was received with the greatest honours. He made three other successful voyages of discovery, but was, notwithstanding, treated with gross injustice by those who were envious of the fame he had acquired.

The Negroes? 6. The Aboriginal population? 7. What is America frequently called? In what year was it discovered? Who discovered it? 8. What great object engaged the attention of the nations of Europe at that period? 9. What idea did Columbus conceive? 10. Who patronized him? 11. What did they furnish him with? When did he leave Spain? When did he discover Guanahani? 12. What did he visit at that time? How was he received in Spain?

---

* *Esquimaux*, ĕs-ke-mō'

13. The discovery of Columbus excited a spirit of enterprise unknown and unfelt at any time before, and drew numerous adventurers from all parts of Europe.

14. In 1497, John Cabot, and his son Sebastian, natives of Venice, in the service of Henry VII. of England, discovered North America, and explored the coast from Newfoundland to Florida.

15. In 1499, Americus Vespucius, a native of Florence, visited South America. On his return to Europe, he published the first account of the New World, of which he claimed the original discovery, and thereby gave his name to the Western Continent. This however does not lessen the glory which crowns the discovery of Columbus, and which will descend with his memory to the most distant ages.

16. It was at first supposed that America was a part of the Eastern Continent; the Islands first discovered received therefore the name of the West Indies, and the inhabitants that of Indians, which was afterwards extended to the natives of the whole country.

17. Much controversy has taken place on the origin of the inhabitants of the New World: they were found in various stages of society, from the lowest savage state to that of a half-civilized people. The conclusion is, that they emigrated from the Eastern Continent, and that they reached America from the nearest points of North-Western Europe and North-Eastern Asia, but at what period is entirely unknown.

18. Several years elapsed before America was known to be a separate continent; at length in 1513 Balbao, a Spaniard, ascended the mountains in the isthmus of Darien, and first saw the Pacific Ocean.

19. The Western Continent is generally described under two grand divisions, viz: North America, and South America; these are joined together by the isthmus of Darien. There is besides a great collection of islands lying between the two continents, usually called the West Indies; but by some it is also termed the Columbian Archipelago.

What did he afterwards do? How was he treated? 13. What did the discovery of Columbus excite? 14. Who discovered North America? 15. Who published the first account of the New World? After hom was it named? What will descend to the most distant ages? 6. What was America supposed to be? What did the Islands first discovered receive? The inhabitants? 17. What has taken place on the origin of the inhabitants? How were they found? What is the conclusion? 18. Who first saw the Pacific Ocean? 19. What are the divisions of the Western continent?

NORTH AMERICA.

North American Indians.

— 61 —

1. North America comprises the northern division of the Western Continent. It extends from the Arctic Ocean to the Isthmus of Darien, a distance of 4800 miles in length, and from 3200 to 2600 in breadth.

2. The Rivers, Lakes, Plains, and Mountains, of this continent, are all on a grand scale, and are among the most remarkable in the world.

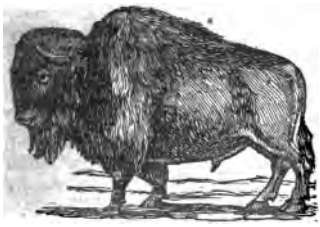
3. The Mississippi and Missouri far surpasses, in length of course, the principal rivers of the eastern continent; and Lake Superior is the largest body of fresh water known. It forms, with the great lakes with which it is connected, a vast interior sea, affording a continuou navigation many hundreds of miles in extent.

4. The precious and useful metals and minerals exist in North America in great abundance. Gold, silver, copper, and tin, are found in Mexico; and gold, iron, lead, and coal, in the

North America. Q.—1. What is North America? What is its extent? 2. What are on a grand scale? 3. What is said of its rivers and lakes? 4. What metals, &c., exist in great abundance? What

United States—where the three latter abound in such quantities, that ages of the most active industry will not probably exhaust them.

5. Among the animals of North America, there are several species not found in any other part of the world. The grizzly and barren ground bears are peculiar; also the moose or elk, the wapiti, and the caribou or rein-deer. The buffalo, musk-ox, and rocky mountain sheep and goat, all differ from animals of the same kind found elsewhere.



Buffalo.

Rocky Mountain Sheep.

6. Various species of birds abound; of the rapacious kind, there are eagles, vultures, hawks, falcons, &c. The bald-headed eagle is well known as being the chosen emblem of our own republic. The wild turkey is a native of this continent, and was introduced into Europe about 30 years after the discovery of America.

Bald Eagle.

Pinnated Grouse.

7. The highly esteemed canvas-back duck, the diminutive hum-

---

abounds in the United States? 5. What is said of the animals of North America? 6. What species of birds abound? What is said of the wild turkey, &c.? 7. What other birds are mentioned?

ming-bird, the whip-poor-will, the blue jay, and the mocking bird, are all confined to this continent; while grouse, pheasants, &c., of different kinds, are found in various parts, and are highly esteemed for food.

Alligator.

Rattle-Snake.

8. The alligator exists only in the southern section of the continent, being seldom seen north of Louisiana and the Carolinas. The rattle-snake is peculiar to the New World; it is formidable for the deadly venom of its bite, and comprises five or six different varieties.

9. The Indians and Esquimaux constitute the original inhabitants of the country. The Indians are usually tall, straight, and erect in form, of a dark copper-colour, with high cheek-bones and long coarse black hair; while the Esquimaux are short and stout in person, and of a dirty reddish yellow complexion. The latter are lively and cheerful in disposition, and appear to be more social and domestic in their habits than savages usually are.

10. North America is politically divided into the Republics of the United States, Texas, Mexico, and Guatimala; these occupy the continent south and west of the great lakes, while the northern parts comprise the colonial territories of Great Britain and Russia.

OBSERVATIONS ON THE QUESTIONS.

In bounding any country or state, let the learner tell what is on the north, what on the south, on the east, and on the west.

To the first question on the following page—How is Russian Americ bounded? the answer will be, on the north by the Polar Sea, south by th Pacific Ocean, east by British America, and west by Bhering's Strait.

In telling of Gulfs, Bays, or Sounds, say what countries they are in, or are surrounded by, and what Oceans they are connected with, thus: Baffin's Bay is bounded east by Greenland, west by Prince William's Land, and leads into the Atlantic Ocean.

---

8. Of the alligator? 9. Who comprise the original inhabitants of the country? What is said of the Indians? Of the Esquimaux? 10. How is North America politically divided?

Tell what countries, or divisions, Straits separate, and what Oceans, Bays, &c. they connect: thus, Bhering's Strait separates America from Asia, and connects the Pacific and the Arctic Oceans.

Tell where Lakes are situated, and with what Rivers they are connected: thus, Lakes Superior, Huron, Erie, and Ontario, are between Canada and the United States, and flow into the St. Lawrence River.

Tell where Peninsulas are situated, to what countries they belong, and what waters surround them: thus, Nova Scotia is in the southern part of British America; it has the Bay of Fundy and the Gulf of St. Lawrence on the north, and the Atlantic Ocean on the south. Tell where islands are situated, and their direction from the nearest Continent or other Islands; thus, Cuba is in the West Indies; it is south of the United States, east of Mexico, and north of Jamaica.

Tell where Mountains are situated, how they extend, what countries they separate, and what their length is: thus, the Rocky Mts. are in the western part of North America; they extend through Russian America, British America, the United States, and Mexico; they separate in part the United States and British America, and are 4,000 miles in length.

Tell where Rivers rise, in what direction they flow, and where they empty: thus, the Mississippi rises west of Lake Superior, flows southward through the United States, and empties into the Gulf of Mexico. Tell also the branches which form the main stream of various rivers in the United States: thus, the Alleghany and Monongahela form the Ohio; the Mattapony in Virginia is formed of the Mat, the Ta. the Po, and the Ny.

USE OF THE SCALES

By means of the Scales of Miles, which are attached to nearly all the Maps, the learner may measure the length and breadth of Continents, Seas, Gulfs, &c. Thus, for example, take with a pair of compasses, or the edge of a slip of paper, the length of the Scale of Miles of Map No. 3, and measure with it from Smith's Sound to the southern extremity of North America; it will be found to extend nearly five times the length of the scale, or about 4,800 miles. On north latitude 40 degrees, the breadth of the Continent is 2,600 miles; on latitude 52 degrees, 3,000 miles, and from Nova Scotia to Porto Rico 1,800. These exercises will give variety to the studies, and impress on the mind of the pupil the length and breadth of countries and their distances from each other &c., in a more decided manner than by any other method.

By studying the Explanation on the Maps, the learner will understand how the Capitals of Countries, the population of the cities and towns, and the lengths of the rivers, are represented.

62

Map No. 3.—How is Russian America bounded? British America bounded? Capital? United States bounded? Capital? Texas bounded? Capital? Mexico bounded? Capital? Guatimala bounded? Capital? Balize bounded? Capital?

How is North America bounded?

Where is Coronation Gulf? G. of Boothia? G. of St. Lawrence? Welcome G.? G. of Georgia? G. of California? G. of Mexico? G. of Tehuantepec? What is a Gulf or Bay? 24, page 12.

Where is Bristol Bay? Melville B.? Hudson's B.? Musquito B.? Ungava B.? James' B.? B. of Sir Francis Drake? B. of Fundy? Delaware B.? Chesapeake B.? Tampa B.? B. of Campeche? B. of Honduras? B. of Guatimala? *

Where is Norton's Sound? Prince William's S.? Smith's S.? Lancaster S.? Davy's S.? Queen Charlotte's S.? Albemarle S.? What is a Sound? 26, page 12.

Where is Bhering's† Strait? Davis' S.? Cumberland S.? Frobisher's S.? Hudson's S.? S. of Bellisle?‡ Gut or S. of Canseau? Claaset's S.? How wide is Bhering's S.? Where is Pr. Regent's Inlet? What is a Strait? 25, page 12.

Where is Great Bear Lake? Great Slave L.? Athabasca L.? Winnipeg L.? L. Superior? L. Huron? L. Michigan? L. Erie? L. Ontario? L. Chapala?§ L. Nicaragua?‖ What are the lengths of the four first and of the last Lake?
What is a Lake? 29, page 12.

Where is the Peninsula of Alaska? Melville? Greenland? Nova Scotia? Florida? Yucatan? California? Boothia Felix?
What is a Peninsula? 54, page 16.

Where is Cape Prince of Wales? C. Bathurst? C. Brewster? C. Farewell? C. St. Lewis? C. Race? C. Sable? N. S. C. Cod? C. Hatteras? C. Sable? Fa. C. St. Antonio? C. Gracias à Dios? C. Mendocino? Moro Hermoso? C. St. Lucas? C. Gorda? Point De Witt Clinton? P. Beechey? P. Barrow? Capes are frequently called Points.
What is a Cape or Point? 57, page 16.

Where is Nunnivack Island? Kodiak I.? Sitcha I.? Queen Charlotte's I.? Vancouver's I.? North Georgian Islands? Southampton I.? Disco I.? Newfoundland I.? Anticosti I.? Prince Edward's I.? Cape Breton I.? Bermudas Islands? Bahama Islands? The West Indies? Cuba? Hayti? Jamaica? Porto Rico? The last four are called the Great Antilles. Where are the Caribbee Islands? Where is Curaçoa? Margarita? Buen Ayre? Oruba? Tortuga? Orchilla? The last six are called the Little Antilles.
What are Islands? 56, page 16.

---

* *Guatimala*, Gwa-te-mah'-la. † *Bhering's*, Be-rings'. ‡ *Bellisle*, Bel-ile
§ *Chapala*, Sha'-pa-la ‖ *Nicaragua*, Nic-ar-aw'-gua.

— 63 —

Map No. 3.—Where are the Rocky Mountains? and what is their length? Where are the Snowy Mts.? Alleghany Mts.? and their length? Where are the Arctic Highlands? The Mexican Cordilleras? Where is Mount St. Elias? Mt. Brown? Mt. Hooker? Tell the heights of the three last Mountains. Where is Long's Peak? Spanish P.? Popocatepetl* ? The Water Volcano? Cosiguina? The three last are Volcanos.

What is a Volcano? 62, page 17.

Where is Mackenzie's River? Great Fish R.? Churchill R.. Nelson R.? St. Lawrence R.? Frazer's R.? Columbia R.? Colorado R.? Rio del Norte? Brazos R.? Mississippi R.? Give the lengths of all these rivers, and the parts of the Ocean into which they flow. What is a River? 34, page 13.

What stream do you observe extending along the east coast of the United States from Florida to the Grand Bank of Newfoundland? Gf. Sm. This is a remarkable current in the Atlantic Ocean, which runs where it is narrowest at the rate of 5 miles an hour, lessening in rapidity as it flows north. The water is warmer in the Gulf Stream than in the adjacent parts of the Ocean, and of a different colour also; so that sailors know when they come within its limits.

How many miles is it from Labrador to Russia? To Denmark? From Vancouver's Island to Mongolia? From California to Corea? To Thibet? To Hindoostan? From the United States to Greece? From the Bermudas to Madeira? From the United States to Egypt? From Guatimala to Hindoostan?

Which are the eight largest Cities in North America? The population of these is 80,000 and upwards. Bn., N.-Yk., Pa., Bc., N.-Os., Ha., Mo., L.-Pa.,

There are six Cities that contain between 40,000 and 80,000 inhabitants each; which are they? Ml., Ci., S.-L.-Pi., Go., Oa., P.-Pe.

There are fourteen Cities that contain between 20,000 and 40,000 inhabitants each; which are they? Qc., Ay., Pg., Le., Cn., Za., Do., Vd., N.-Ga., Ln., Co., S.-Jo., Kn., S.-Js. What is a City? 262, page 39.

— 64 —

RUSSIAN AMERICA.

1. Russian† America comprises that part of the Continent lying nearest to Asia, from which it is separated by Bhering's Strait, and from British America by the 141st degree of west longitude.

Russian America. Q.—1. What does Russian America comprise? What separates Russian America from Asia? What separates it from

* *Popocatepetl*, Po-po-cat-a-peet'-il.

† *Russian*, Ru'-shan.

It is a cold, dreary, and almost unknown region, inhabited chiefly by Indians and Esquimaux.

2. The Russians have established a number of trading factories along the coast, the principal of which is New Archangel. Here they barter fire-arms, beads, tobacco, and other articles, for the furs obtained by the natives in hunting.

Subterraneous Mansion of the Aleutian Islanders.

3. The Aleutian* or Fox Islands extend to a great distance westward from the Peninsula of Alaska: they are inhabited by a race of savages who live in houses under ground, which contain each from 50 to 150 inhabitants, and are divided into numerous apartments, which, though dark and dirty, protect their inmates effectually from the weather

Map No. 3.—What Sea bounds Russian America on the north? Pr.—What Ocean on the south? Pc.—What country on the east? B.-Aa.—What is the most northern point? Bw.—The most western Cape? P.-Ws.—What Peninsula in the south? Aa.—What two Mountains in the south-east? S.-Es., Fr.—On what Island is New Archangel situated? Sa.

65

GREENLAND.

1. GREENLAND is one of the most desolate and barren regions on the face of the earth. An almost perpetual winter prevails, interrupted only by a short summer of a few weeks'

British America? By whom is it chiefly inhabited? 2. What have the Russians established along the coast? How do they trade with the natives? 3. What Islands extend westward from Alaska? By whom are they inhabited? How do they live? What do they contain? How are they divided?

Greenland. Q.—1. What is Greenland? To what power does it

* *Aleutian*, Al-u'-shan.

duration. The whole region is claimed by Denmark, which has formed some small settlements along the western coast.

2. Several of these are also Moravian missionary stations, where the inhabitants have been in some measure converted from their ignorance and superstition, and partly enlightened by the doctrines of Christianity

3. In the Northern part of Greenland, Captain Ross discovered a district which he named the Arctic Highlands. The inhabitants, who had never before seen an European, were seized with the utmost astonishment, especially at the ships, which they at first imagined to be huge birds with wings.

4. The cliffs on the coast present the remarkable phenomenon of red snow, the nature and origin of which has excited much controversy among the learned in Europe.

Map No. 3. — What Bay bounds Greenland on the west? Bs. — What Ocean on the east? Ac. — What is its southern Cape? Fl. — What missionary stations on the west coast? Hg., Sp., N.-Ht., Ls., Jb., Lu. — What land on the east coast? Ss. — Does the largest or smallest part of Greenland lie north of the Arctic circle? Lt. — What Zone then is it in? N.-Fd.

66

BRITISH AMERICA.

1. British America comprises the whole of the American continent lying north of the United States, with the exception of the extreme north-western portion, which is claimed by Russia. It is a region of vast extent, being equal in area to the whole of the former country.

2. Its divisions are New Britain, Canada, New Brunswick, Prince Edward's Island, Nova Scotia, and Cape Breton, together with the Island of Newfoundland. About one-tenth part only of these territories is as yet settled by a civilized population.

3. The climate of British America is very severe, much exceeding what is felt under the same latitude in the Old Continent. Even the southern sections are covered with ice and snow for five or six months in the year; and in the northern parts of the country the winter is almost perpetual.

4. The lakes which form a portion of the boundary line between

---

belong? 2. What are several of the settlements? Of the inhabitants? 3. What did Captain Ross discover? What did the natives imagine respecting the ships of their visiters? 4. What do the cliffs on the coast present?

British America. Q. — 1. What does British America comprise? 2. What are its divisions? 3. Of the climate? 4. The lakes?

this territory and the United States, are on a greater scale than in any other part of the world. These form a vast inland sea of fresh water, which is navigable for vessels of the largest burthen, and is traversed by a number of steam-boats, ships, &c., in almost every direction.

The White or Great Polar Bear.

Musk Ox.

5. The White Bear, Musk Ox, Caribou or American Rein-Deer, and other animals, abound in all the northern parts of this region, and supply the inhabitants with the chief part of their clothing and food, besides furnishing the skins which are bartered with the traders of the Hudson's Bay Company for the various manufactured articles which have become essential to the comfort and even existence of the Indians.

6. Each province of British America has a governor and council, appointed by the Sovereign of Great Britain,* and a house of Commons or Representatives chosen by the people. The whole territory, however, is under the control of a Governor General, who resides at Kingston.

7. Canada was originally settled by the French, but fell into the hands of the English in consequence of the victory gained near Quebec, in 1759, by General Wolfe.

8. Since that period the trade and population of these provinces have greatly increased, and they have likewise enjoyed a considerable degree of prosperity. This part of British America was for fifty years divided into two provinces, but in the year 1841 it was united into one.

Map No. 3.—What bounds British America on the North? P.-Sa. — On the West? R.-Aa. — South? U.-Ss. — East? A.-On. — What separates it from Greenland? B.-By. — In what continent is British America? Wn. — What circle extends through the North part? Ac. — In what Zone is that part of it which lies north of the Arctic circle? N.-Fd. — In what Zone is the southern part? N.-Te. — In what latitude is British America? N.-Le. — In what longitude from Greenwich? W.-Le.

What do they form? 5. What animals abound? 6. What is said of the provinces of British America? 7. By what people was Canada first settled? 8. What has taken place since? What has been enjoyed? Evinced?

---

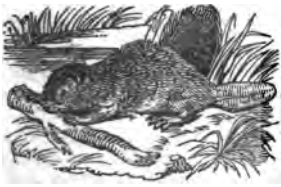
* *Britain*, Brit'-in.

— 67 —

NEW BRITAIN.

1. New Britain comprises that part of British America situated north of Canada and the United States. It contains more than three-fourths of the whole of the British possessions, and is divided by Hudson's Bay into two unequal portions.

2. The only trade in this region is that of furs, to facilitate which, the Hudson's Bay Company have established forts and trading-houses in various quarters, extending from Hudson's Bay westward, to the shores of the Pacific, and to the northward almost to the Arctic Ocean. The whole region is in consequence often called the Hudson's Bay Company Territory.



Beaver.

Raccoon.

3. The Beaver, Raccoon, Muskrat, and other animals, are eagerly hunted for their furs; the exports of which have amounted in some years to upwards of a million of dollars from the port of Quebec alone.

4. The coast of Labrador, and the whole of the northern shores of this region, from Greenland westward to Bhering's Strait, is inhabited by the Esquimaux, a race of savages differing essentially from the Indians, in form, disposition, and complexion.

5. Among these people on the coast of Labrador, the Moravian Missionaries have established the settlements of Nain, Okkak, Hopedale, &c., and have partially improved their habits and condition.

Map No. 3.—What territory lies along the east coast? Lr. — On the east side of Hudson's Bay? E.-Me. — On the west side? N.-N.-Wa. N.-S.-Ws. — On the coast of Baffin's Bay? P.-W.-Ld. — West of the

---

New Britain. Q. — 1. What does New Britain comprise? 2. What trade has it? What company has established forts in various quarters? 3. What animals are hunted for their furs? 4. What people inhabit the coast of Labrador and the Northern shores? 5. What have the Missionaries established?

Gulf of Boothia? B.-Fx.—East of Bathurst Inlet? Va.—What large Bay in New Britain? Hs.—How long and wide is it?—Between New Britain and Greenland? Ba.—How wide is it?—Name the four largest Lakes in New Britain? G.-Br., G.-Se., Aa., Wg.—The length of each?—What large river flows into the Polar Sea? Ms.—Its length?—What two rivers flow into lake Athabasca? Pe., Aa.—Their lengths?—What river flows into Lake Winnipeg? Sn.—Its length?—What river connects Lake Winnipeg with Hudson's Bay? Nn.—Which are the principal forts? Re., Rn., Cl., Yk., Sn., Ay., Me.—The principal Indian tribes? Cr., D.-Rb., Cs., Kx., B.-Ft., As—What Mountains are in the west part of New Britain? Ry.—Their length?—Which are the two highest? Bn., Hr.—The height of each?

— 68 —

UPPER CANADA.*

1. Upper Canada extends along the whole chain of the great lakes almost to the western extremity of Lake Superior. The climate is generally healthy and salubrious. The summer heats are more moderate, and the winters shorter and less rigorous than in the Lower Province.

2. The soil in the settled parts of the country is mostly very fertile, and yields abundant crops of grain, wheat, Indian corn, flax, &c. Tobacco is also cultivated in the south-western districts.

3. The most important canals in British America are in Upper Canada; these are the Rideau and the Welland canals; the first extends from the Ottawa river to Kingston. The Welland canal unites Lake Erie with Lake Ontario; both these works allow vessels of 125 tons burthen to pass through.

4. In this province, on the Niagara river, which connects Lake Erie with Lake Ontario, is the Falls of Niagara, 165 feet high. This is one of the most magnificent of Nature's works. The noise of the cataract is heard, and the cloud of vapour which rises from it is seen, at the distance of several miles.

5. Toronto and Kingston, on the northern shore of Lake Ontario, are the two principal towns of Upper Canada. Toronto, the largest, is pleasantly situated on a bay of the same name; it is regularly laid out, and has a number of handsome buildings.

6. Kingston became the capital of Canada, and also of all British

Upper Canada. Q.—1. What is the extent of Upper Canada? Of the climate? 2. The soil? What does it yield? 3. Canals in Upper Canada? 4. What great falls are in Upper Canada? How high are they? 5. What is the Capital? 6. The principal British naval station?

* Upper and Lower Canada long formed separate provinces, but are now united by Act of the British Parliament. This part of the Continent is so well known by the old divisions, that it has been thought most expedient to retain them in our description.

Falls of Niagara.

America, in the year 1841; it has a fine harbour and a flourishing trade. Niagara is a small town at the mouth of the Niagara river. Goderich, on the east shore of lake Huron, and London, on the river Thames, are the chief towns in the western part of the province.

Map No. 4.—What lakes separate Upper Canada from the United States? Oo., Ee., Hn., Sr.—What river, in part, from New York? S.-Le.—What river from Lower Canada? Oa.—What is the eastern part of Lake Huron called? Me.—What Isles in the north part? Me.—What Island in the western part of Lake Superior? Re.—What is the length of Lakes Superior, Huron, Erie, and Ontario?—On Map No. 9, tell who was defeated on the River Thames,* in 1813? Pr.—Who was killed there? Th. He was a celebrated Indian chief.—On Map No. 7, tell what battles were fought in 1814, near the Falls of Niagara? F.-Ee., Ca.

69

LOWER CANADA.

1. Lower Canada extends on both sides of the St. Law rence river, from its mouth to the river Ottawa. The lower art of the province is rugged, cold and sterile; but the upper ortion is fertile, well watered, and more moderate in temperature. All sections have, however, the climate of Sweden, hough in the latitude of France.

2. More than three-fourths of the inhabitants are of French origin; they speak the French language, and are all Catho-

---

Lower Canada. Q.—1. How far does Lower Canada extend? 2. How

* *Thames*, Temz.

lics. The remainder are mostly natives of Great Britain and their descendants, who are principally Protestants.

Canadian Habitans.

3. Education is much neglected, and the chief part of the people are very ignorant. The native French Canadians are called *habitans.* They are gay in their dispositions, courteous and polite in their manners, and strongly attached to their religion and native country.

4. Lower Canada produces wheat, Indian corn, and other grains common to the northern parts of the United States. The exports are grain, flour, lumber, furs, pot and pearl ashes, &c.

City of Quebec.

5. The city of Quebec was, until the year 1841, the capital of British America; it is very strongly fortified, and situated half in a plain along the River St. Lawrence, and the other half on a steep, perpendicular rock, 350 feet high. These are called the upper and lower towns.

6. Montreal,* on Montreal Island, and 180 miles above Quebec, by the St. Lawrence river, is the commercial capital of Canada; it is the centre of the fur trade, and of the commerce with the United States.

The town of the Three Rivers, on the north bank of the St. Lawrence river, is the next in importance to Quebec and Montreal. William Henry, Chambly,† and St. Johns, are small towns on the Sorelle ‡ River.

---

many of the inhabitants are of French origin? What are the rest? 3. What is said of education? The character of the French Canadian? 4. Produce? Exports? 5. What is Quebec? 6. Montreal? Name the other Towns.

---

* *Montreal,* Mont-re-awl'. † *Chambly,* Shamb'-le. ‡ *Sorrelle,* Sor-el'.

Map No. 4.—What country lies west of Lower Canada? U.-Ca.—What two States lie south? N.-Yk., Vt.—What State lies east? Me.—The principal River? S.-Le. Its length? (This includes the Lakes.)—What Lake does the Saguenay flow from? S.-Is. The length of the Saguenay? The Ottawa? What River unites Lakes Champlain and St. Peters? Se.—The population of Quebec? Of Montreal?—What three Lakes are in Lower Canada? S.-Js., S.-Ps., Tg.

— 70 —

NEW BRUNSWICK.

1. NEW BRUNSWICK is situated to the east of the State of Maine, and to the north-west of Nova Scotia. Until the year 1784 it was included within the limits of the latter, which at that period was divided into two separate provinces.

2. This colony is but partially cleared, and contains extensive forests which furnish large quantities of excellent timber. The soil is generally of good quality, especially along the banks of the St. John's and other rivers.

3. The fisheries are a source of considerable wealth, and employ many of the inhabitants, the produce being with lumber the chief articles of export. Ship-building is an important branch of industry, and is carried on to a considerable extent.

4. The Bay of Fundy, which separates this province from Nova Scotia, is remarkable for the great and rapid rise of its tides, which often attain the height of 70 feet.

5. Frederickton, the seat of government, is situated some distance up the river St. John's. It is built chiefly of wood, and contains the government offices, several churches, and a college.

6. The city of St. John's is the most considerable place in New Brunswick, and has an extensive commerce. St. Andrews, at the head of Passamaquoddy Bay, is the next town to St. John's in trade and population.

Map No. 3.—What island lies near New Brunswick? P.-Es.—What Gulf to the eastward? S.-Le.—What bay on the south? Fy.—What Peninsula south-east? N.-Sa.—What is the population of St. John's? Of Frederickton? On what river is the city of St. John's?

New Brunswick. Q.—1. How is New Brunswick situated? In what was it included? 2. What is said of the soil? 3. The chief articles of export? What is an important branch of industry? 4. Of the Bay of Fundy? 5. The Capital? 6. St. John's? St. Andrew's?

— 71 —

NOVA SCOTIA.

1. Nova Scotia was first settled by the French, and named by them Acadia. In 1763 it was conquered by Great Britain, and since that time has been called by its present name.

2. It is a large peninsula, 280 miles long, and from 50 to 100 broad. On the coast the soil is generally poor, but in the interior and northern parts it is well adapted to cultivation.

3. Wheat and other grains, with potatoes of the finest quality, are raised to some extent. Coal, and gypsum, or plaster of paris, are found in vast quantities, and are largely exported: copper, iron, and various other minerals, also abound.

4. Halifax, the capital, is situated on one of the finest harbours in the world, and contains the most extensive dock-yard in British America. Lunenburg, Liverpool, Yarmouth, and Pictou, are all places of some trade; from the latter, coal is shipped to the United States in considerable quantities.

5. Cape Breton Island.—Cape Breton is a large Island, separated from Nova Scotia by the Gut or Strait of Canseau; * it is about 100 miles in length, and from 30 to 80 in breadth, and is divided into two nearly equal portions by an arm of the sea called the Bras d'Or.

6. Agriculture is in a backward state, the Cod Fishery attracting the chief industry of the people. This island was in 1820 politically attached to Nova Scotia, and sends two members to the House of Assembly.

7. Louisburg, which the French carefully fortified, was once a place of great importance, but it is now entirely deserted; and Sidney, a village of about 800 inhabitants, is all the capital Cape Breton possesses.

Map No. 3.—What Islands lie east of Nova Scotia? C.-Bn., Se. — What Island north? P. Es. — What separates Nova Scotia and Cape Breton? G.-Cu. — What Ocean on the south-east? Ac. — What Bay on the north-west? Fy. — What is the population of Halifax? Lunenburg? Liverpool? The southern Cape of Nova Scotia? Se.

Nova Scotia. Q.—1. By whom was Nova Scotia first settled? What was its first name? When was it conquered by Great Britain? 2. What is this Colony? What is said of its soil? 3. Its productions? Its minerals? 4. The capital and other towns? 5. What is Cape Breton? How is it divided? 6. What is said of its agriculture, &c.? When was it attached to Nova Scotia? 7. What is said of Louisburg, &c.

---

* *Canseau*, Can-so'.

— 72 —

9. PRINCE EDWARD'S ISLAND.—Prince Edward's is a fine fertile island in the Gulf of St. Lawrence, lying nearly parallel to the coasts of Nova Scotia and New Brunswick.

10. The soil is good and well adapted to agriculture, which is in a more improved state than in any of the neighbouring colonies. Charlotte Town is the capital, with 3,500 inhabitants. There are several other small towns.

NEWFOUNDLAND.

1. NEWFOUNDLAND is a large island, situated at the mouth of the Gulf of St. Lawrence, and forming the most eastern part of British America. The soil is mostly barren, and the timber scanty and of small size.

2. It owes its importance to its Cod fisheries, which are the most valuable in the world. The fish are caught in vast numbers upon certain shallow places in the sea in the vicinity of the island, called the Banks of Newfoundland.

3. A great number of vessels and men (chiefly American and French) here find employment, while the inhabitants of the island carry on their fisheries along the shore.

4. The fishing business is dangerous, but profitable; it is an admirable nursery for the hardy seamen of the New England states, and furnishes us with an important article of export to other countries.

5. St. John's is the principal place in the island; the houses are all built of wood, and the town has in consequence suffered severely from fires. Harbour Grace is, next to St. John's, the most important town.

Map No. 3.—What bounds Newfoundland on the east? A. On.—On the west? G. S.-Le.—What Strait separates it from Labrador? Be.—What banks are near the Island? Gd. Gn.—How long and wide is the Grand Bank? Newfoundland? What is the population of St. John's? Of Harbour Grace.

Prince Edward's Island. Q.—9. What is Prince Edward's Island? 10. What is said of the soil and agriculture? The capital and its population?

Newfoundland. Q.—1. What is Newfoundland? 2. To what does it owe its importance? 3. What are they called? Who find employment there? 4. What is said of the fishing business? What does it furnish us with? 5. Describe St. John's. Harbour Grace.

292967

— 73 —

UNITED STATES.

1. The United States form one government, comprising twenty-six states, six territories, and one federal district. They occupy the most valuable and productive part of North America, and rank amongst the most powerful, commercial, and wealthy nations of the globe.

2. They are distinguished for the freedom and excellence of their political institutions, the rapid increase of the population, and for the intelligence, industry, and enterprise of the inhabitants.

3. The territory of the United States is very extensive; it ranges through 29 degrees of latitude, and 58 degrees of longitude. The frontier outline has an extent of 10,000 miles, and a line drawn from north-west to south-east would measure 3,200 miles.

4. In so vast a region there is of course included a great variety of surface, soil, and climate. It is well watered by noble streams, which not only give fertility to their borders,

---

United States. Q.—1. What do the United States form? Comprising what? What do they occupy? 2. For what are they distinguished? 3. What is said of the territory? 4. What does it include?

but are ready to carry the gifts of the earth to the ocean, and to bring back to the inhabitants the products of other climes.

5. The soil returns an ample harvest for all that is planted in it, and the climate is favourable to nearly every production of the earth, that can sustain life or increase its luxuries.

6. Agriculture is the leading pursuit in this country. The eastern states are devoted to grazing, and the dairy; the middle and western to the raising of wheat, Indian corn, &c.; and the southern states, to cotton, tobacco, sugar, and rice. Slave labour is chiefly employed in the southern and some of the western states.

7. The United States are richly supplied with valuable minerals. Gold, the most precious, and iron, the most useful of metals, with lead, coal, salt, and lime, all exist, most of them in great abundance; while beautiful and durable building materials are furnished by the extensive quarries of the different sections of the Union.

8. The manufactures are already extensive, and are rapidly increasing; they yield in value, annually, near 400 millions of dollars; and with the products of the agriculture, the forests, the mines, and the fisheries, amount yearly to almost 1300 million dollars.

9. The commerce is, next to that of Great Britain, the largest in the world; it extends to all parts of the earth, and embraces the products and manufactures of all nations. The number of vessels that enter and depart from the ports of the United States, amounts from 22,000 to 25,000 every year.

74

10. The Fisheries are highly important, and are carried on mostly by the New England states: they embrace chiefly the whale, cod, and mackerel fisheries, the products of which amount to from 10 to 12 millions of dollars, annually.

11. The whale fishery alone employs upwards of 650 vessels, and 16,000 men. The ships employed in this important business are absent frequently two and three years at a time.

12. No part of the world presents such an extensive inland commerce as that of the United States. Steam vessels navigate all the principal rivers, lakes, bays, &c. The Mississippi River and its tributaries alone are traversed by near 400 steamboats, all of which make several voyages every year.

13. The employment of Steam Power is probably greater in this country than in any other part of the world, and forms one of the prin-

---

How is it watered? 5. What of the soil? Climate? 6. Agriculture? The eastern states? The middle and western? Southern? 7. What of the minerals? 8. Manufactures? Their value and the capital employed? 9. The commerce? 10. The fisheries? 11. Whale fishery? 12. The inland commerce? The Mississippi, &c. 13. Of the em-

Whale Fishery.—Cutting up a Whale.

cipal elements of American prosperity. 1300 steamboats have been built since the year 1807, of which 800 now exist; and the number of steam-engines in the United States employed in steamboats, locomotive rail-road cars, and for various manufacturing purposes, is not less than 3,000.

14. The Americans have surpassed all other nations in the number and extent of their canals and rail-roads; the united length of the former is not less than 3,600 miles, the whole of which, with one or two exceptions, have been executed in less than twenty years.

15. The rail-roads, all constructed within the last ten years, amount to an aggregate of 1,500 miles, over which carriages are propelled by locomotive steam-engines at the rate of from 20 to 30 miles an hour.

16. The United States are more distinguished for the general diffusion of knowledge, than for eminence in literature and science. The means of common school education are more widely extended than in any other part of the world, and there are numerous seminaries of learning throughout the country, though there are no universities and colleges on so large a scale as some in Europe.

17. The general government of the United States has done but little for the promotion of public instruction; but most of the states have made legislative provision, and some have large funds set apart, for that purpose. The first settlers of New England paid a very laudable attention to this important subject; and so early as the year 1628, a law was passed for the education of every child in the colonies.

---

ployment of steam? How many steamboats? 14. What is said of the Americans? Of canals? 15. Rail-roads? 16. Of the United States? Common school education? Seminaries of learning? 17. The general

18. There is no established church in the United States, religion being left to the voluntary choice of the people; yet in all the well-settled parts of the Union, religious instruction and observances are as faithfully dispensed and performed as in any other country in the world.

19. The great body of the people are attached to the various sects belonging to the Protestant faith: of these the Baptists, Methodists, Presbyterians, and Episcopalians, stand first as to numbers. There are also many Catholics, Universalists, Lutherans, Unitarians, and Friends, or Quakers.

20. The United States is a Federal Republic. Each state is independent in its local affairs; but the defence of the country, the regulation of commerce, and all the general concerns of the Union, are committed by the Constitution to a general government.

21. The government comprises three distinct powers, the Legislative, Judicial, and Executive branches: the first named power makes the laws, the second expounds, and the last executes them.

22. The Legislative power is vested in a Congress consisting of a Senate and House of Representatives. The Senate consists of two members from each state, who are elected for six years, one-third of the number being changed every two years. The members of the House of Representatives are elected by the people for two years; their number is, at present, 223.

23. The Judicial power is composed of a Supreme Court of one chief and eight associate Judges, who are appointed by the President, with the advice and consent of the Senate, and hold their offices during life or good behaviour.

24. The Executive power is vested in a President, who, together with the Vice-President, is chosen for four years by electors from all the states. The principal subordinate officers of the executive department are the Secretary of State, of the Treasury, of War, and of the Navy, the Post-Master General, and the Attorney-General. They are all removable at the will of the President, and, with the Vice President, form the Cabinet.

25. The inhabitants of the United States amount to more than seventeen millions, of which the black or coloured races form one-sixth part. The Indians number about 300,000, but are not usually considered as forming a part of the population of the Union.

Government? Of the first settlers in New England? 18. Established Church? 19. To what are the great body of the people attached? What are they? 20. What is the United States? 21. What is said of the government? 22. Of the legislative power? House of Representatives? Senate? 23. The judicial power? 24. Executive power? The subordinate officers? What do they form? 25. What may the

26. This amount, in proportion to the vast territory over which it is spread, is small, compared with the dense population of some of the European states; but when it is considered that the inhabitants of the colonies 100 years ago numbered but 1,000,000, it presents the most striking instance of national growth to be found in the history of mankind.

——— 76 ———

27. The United States were formerly colonies or provinces of Great Britain. In the year 1775 there were thirteen colonies, with a population of nearly three millions of people. At that time they took up arms for the purpose of separating themselves from the mother country.

28. They were incited to this by the injustice of Great Britain, who taxed the people of the colonies without their consent, and passed various oppressive laws, to which they would not submit.

Battle of Lexington.

29. The first battle between the Colonists and the British troops, took place at Lexington, Massachusetts, April 19th, 1775. On the 4th of July, 1776, they declared themselves independent, under the title of th United States of America.

30. The efforts of Great Britain to subdue the country were great, and the struggle which ensued was long and bloody; but animated by a love of liberty, and led by Washington and other gallant and patriotic

---

inhabitants be estimated at? The blacks? Indians? 26. How does it compare with the population of some European states? 27. What were the United States formerly? When did they take up arms? 28. Why were they incited to this? 29. When and where did the first battle take place? What did they do on the 4th of July, 1776? 30. What is said of Great Britain? Of General Washington? The

leaders, the people of the United States, after a war of eight years, drove the British armies from their shores, and established their independence.

Resignation of General Washington

31. At the close of the Revolutionary War, the American Army, though suffering great privations, disbanded, without violence or disorder; and the Commander in Chief, General Washington, resigned the almost absolute power he possessed to the authority that conferred it, thus presenting to the world the rare example of a great military chief descending voluntarily to the rank of a private citizen.

32. The Constitution of the United States was framed and adopted in 1789, and has since been amended. It secures to the people the grand principles of freedom, liberty of conscience in matters of religion, liberty of the press, trial by jury, and the right of choosing and of being chosen to office. The Presidents of the United States since the adoption of the Constitution, are as follows:

32.	1. George Washington,	of Virginia,	from 1789	to 1797—8 years.
	2. John Adams,	Mass.	1797	to 1801—4
	3. Thomas Jefferson,	Virginia,	1801	to 1809—8
	4. James Madison,	Virginia,	1809	to 1817—8
	5. James Monroe,	Virginia,	1817	to 1825—8
	6. John Quincy Adams,	Mass.	1825	to 1829—4
	7. Andrew Jackson,	Tennessee,	1829	to 1837—8
	8. Martin Van Buren,	New York,	1837	to 1841—4
	9. Wm. Henry Harrison,	Ohio,	1841	one month.
	10. John Tyler,	Virginia,	1841	

people of the United States? 31. The American army? The commander in chief? 32. The Constitution? What does it secure to the people? 33. How many Presidents have there been? Who were from Virginia? Massachusetts? Tennessee? New York? Ohio? How many years did each serve?

77

Map No. 4.—How are the United States bounded?

On the North? the South? the East? the West?

What is the capital of the United States? Wn.

The capitals of countries, the scholar will perceive by the explanation on the map, are made by a large dot with eight small ones around it and the capitals of states on Maps Nos. 4 and 5, are made by a sma ring or circle with a dot in the middle of it.

Which are the six Eastern States? They are Me., N.-H., Vt., Ms., R.-I., Ct.

Point out their capitals.

Which are the four Middle States? They are N.-Y., N.-J., Pa., De.

Point out their capitals.

Which are the eight Southern States? They are Md., Va., N.-C., S.-C., Ga., Aa., Mi., La.

Point out their capitals.

Which are the eight Western States? They are As., Te., Ky., Mi., Is., Ia., Oo., Mn.

Point out their capitals.

Which are the Territories of the United States? They are Fa., Wn., Ia., In., Mo., On.

Point out the capitals of the three first. The others are not settled by white men.

How many States are there?

How many Territories?

How many States and Territories are there altogether? Besides these, the District of Columbia contains the seat of Government, so that the whole of the divisions of the United States are 33.

Where is Lake Superior? L. Huron? L. Michigan*? L. Erie†? L. Ontario? L. Champlain‡? L. of the Woods?

Tell the length of each Lake.

Which two are wholly in the United States? Mn., Cn.

Where is Manitouline Lake? Moosehead L.? Chesuncook L. Timiscouata L.? L. Memphramagog§? L. George? L. Okee-cho-bee? L. Pontchartrain‖? L. Pepin? Itasca L.? The Mississippi flows from this Lake. Where is Ruiny Lake? Red L.? St. Croix¶ L.? Winnebago L?

---

* *Michigan*, Mish'-e-gan. † *Erie*, E'-re. ‡ *Champlain*, Sham'-plane § *Memphramagog*, Mem-fra-ma-gog' ‖ *Pontchartrain*, Pon-shar-trane' ¶ *St. Croix*, Saint Croy'.

— 78 —

Map No. 4.—Where is Passamaquoddy Bay? Penobscot B.? Casco B.? New York B.? Delaware B.? Chesapeake B.? Chatham B.? Tampa B.? Apalachee* B.? Pensacola B.? Mobile† B.? Black B.? Barataria B.?

On the Great Lakes, where is Saginaw B.? Thunder B.? Green B.?

Where is Long Island Sound? Albemarle S.? Pamlico S.?

How many miles long are each of these? also Chesapeake Bay?—*See Map No.* 7.

Where is the Mississippi River?

Where does it rise? Where does it empty?

How many miles long is it?

What are its chief tributaries and their lengths?

Where is the Missouri River? Yellow Stone R.? Big Horn R.? Platte‡ R.? Kanzas R.? Arkansas R.? Canadian R.? Red R.? Osage R.? Des Moines R.? St. Peter's R.? Wisconsin R.? Rock R.? Illinois§ R.?

Where is the Wabash R.? Maumee R.? Ohio R.? Alleghany R.? Monongahela R.? Kanawha R.? Cumberland R.? Tennessee R.? White R.? Washita‖ R.? Yazoo R.?

Where is the Pearl R.? Tombigby R.? Alabama R.? Chattahoochee R.? St. John's R.? Fa.—Alatamaha R.? Savannah R.? Santee R.? Great Pedee R.? C. Fear R.? Neuse¶ R.? Tar R.? Roanoke R.? James R.? Potomac R.? Susquehanna R.? Delaware R.? Hudson R.? Mohawk R.?

Where is the St. Lawrence R.? Connecticut R.? Merrimack R.? Kennebec R.? Penobscot R.? St. John's R.? Me.

Where is the Oregon or Columbia R.? Lewis R.? Clark's R.? Frazer's R.? Clamet R.? Tell how long each of these rivers is.

Where is Cape Cod? C. Malabar? C. Charles? C. Henry? C. Hatteras? C. Fear? C. Lookout? C. Cannaveral? C. Sable? C. Romans? C. St. Blas?**

Where is Mt. Desert Island? Nantucket I.? Martha's Vineyard? Long I.? Florida Reefs? These are low sandy islands.

Where are the Tortugas Islands? Manitouline†† Isles? Grand I.? I. Royale? The Apostles? The four last are in the Great Lakes. Where is Vancouver's Island? How long is it?

---

* *Apalachee*, Ap-a-lash-e'. † *Mobile*, Mo-beel'. ‡ *Platte*, Plat.
§ *Illinois*, Ill-e-noy'. ‖ *Washita*, Wash-e-taw'. ¶ *Neuse*, Nuse.
** *St. Blas*, Saint Blaw' †† *Manitouline*, Man-e-tu'-lin.

79

Map No. 4.—Where is Mt. Rainier*? Mt. Hood? Mt. Jefferson? Mt. Olympus†?

How high are the two first?

Where are the Rocky Mts.? How long are they?

Where is Long's Peak? James's Peak? How high are they?

Where are the Ozark Mts., and what is their height?

Where are the Cumberland Mts.? Alleghany Mts.? Their length and height?

Where is the Blue Ridge? Blue Mts.? Green Mts.? White Mts. Black Hills? Where is Black Mt.? &c. &c.?

The three Butes? The three Paps? The last are said by some to be the highest mountains in the United States; but this is uncertain. Long's Peak is the highest known.

What seven Cities in the United States number 30,000 inhabitants and upwards? Bn., N.-Y., Ay., Pa., Be., Ci., N.-Os.

What eight Cities number from 20,000 to 30,000? Ll., Pe., Rv., Wns. Le., Rd., Pg., Cn.

What twelve Cities have from 10,000 to 20,000? Pd., Sm., N.-Hn., Ty., Ua., Bo., Nk., S.-Ls., Nk., Pg., Sh., Me.

How far is it from New Jersey to Portugal?

From New Jersey to the Azores?

From Chesapeake Bay to Portugal?

From Cape Hatteras to the Strait of Gibraltar?

From Charleston to Madeira? From Savannah to Bermuda?

From Florida to Morocco? From Florida to the Canary Islands?

How long and wide is the Atlantic Ocean?

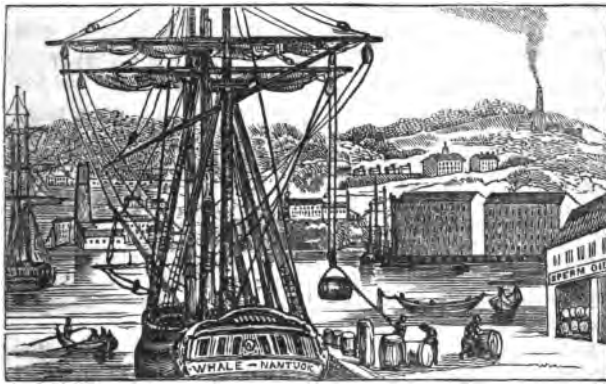
The Gulf of Mexico? the Pacific Ocean?—*See Map No.* 5.

Map of the Learner's own State.—In what State do you live? Is it one of the Eastern, Middle, Southern, or Western States? How is your State bounded? What rivers has it? Tell what they are. Does it contain any mountains? If so, what are they called? Is your state on the sea-coast, or in the interior, at a distance from it? Does it contain any Bays, Sounds, Islands, or Capes? What is the Capital of your State? What is the Capital of a State? 269, page 40. In what county do you live? Point it out on the map. How is it bounded? How long and wide is it? You can tell this by the scale of miles. What is a County? 266.

---

* *Rainier*, Ray-neer'. † *Olympus*, Ol-imp'-us.

EASTERN STATES.



— 80 —

1. The Eastern or New England States, comprise those situated to the east of the Hudson river. They are Maine, New Hampshire, Vermont, Massachusetts, Rhode Island and Connecticut.

2. The surface of New England is greatly varied; much of the soil is good, yet, in general, it requires diligent cultivation, and compels the farmer to use considerable industry to procure good crops.

3. Horses, cattle, sheep, and hogs, are reared in great numbers; and grass, Indian corn, wheat, rye, oats, barley flax, and hemp, are extensively cultivated. The principa fruits are apples, pears, peaches, plums, &c.

4. The manufactures of the Eastern States are very extensive, and embrace a great variety of articles. The cotton and woollen factories employ numerous individuals, and a

---

New England. Q. — 1. Which are the New England states? 2. What is said of the surface and soil? What does it require? 3. What are reared in great numbers? What is extensively cultivated? Which are the principal fruits? 4. What is said of the manufactures?

large amount of capital. Since the manufacturing system has prevailed, this part of the United States has increased rapidly in population and wealth.

5. The New Englanders are extensively engaged in commerce, and in the cod, mackerel, and whale fisheries, which train vast numbers of the most experienced and intrepid seamen in the world.

6. The inhabitants of the Eastern States are almost exclusively of unmixed English origin, and from the earliest settlement of their country, have been used to habits of industry, economy, and enterprise.

7. They have always been a religious people. Among them the Sabbath is strictly observed, and all classes generally attend public worship. It is considered disreputable for a man to have no religious belief; and there are few individuals who are not connected with some religious society.

8. Education is more general than in any other part of the world; and large funds have been set apart by the different State Legislatures for the support of common schools. It is rare to find in any part of the Eastern States, persons of mature age, who are ignorant of reading, writing, and arithmetic.

9. Institutions of learning were established, at an early period, by the first settlers of New England; some of which, at the present day, are among the most respectable and efficient in the Union. Many of the most distinguished men in the United States have been educated at Harvard and Yale Colleges.

10. The people of New England were, at an early period, noted for their republican principles, and were the first to resist the tyranny of the British Government. The destruction of the tea in Boston harbour and the battles of Lexington and Bunker's Hill, were among the first events that led to the independence of the United States.

---

5. What are the New Englanders engaged in? 6. What are the inhabitants? To what have they been trained? 7. What have the inhabitants always been? What do all classes generally attend? What is considered disreputable? 8. What is said of public instruction? What is rare to find?

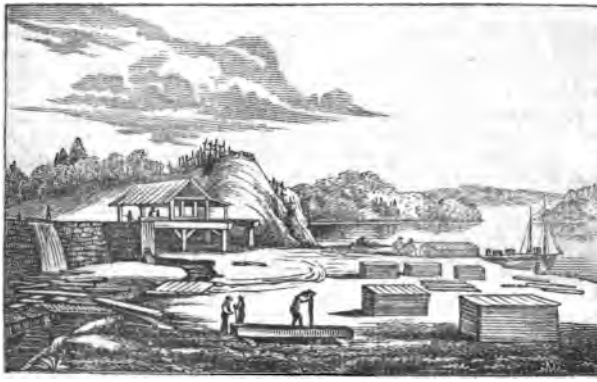
9. What was established at an early period? What are they at the present day? 10. For what were they noted? What were they the first to resist? What were the first events that led to the independence of the United States?

Harvard University.

Map No. 6. — Which are the New England States? Me., N.-H., Vt., Ms., R.-I., Ct. — Which extends farthest north and east? Me. — Which farthest south and west? Ct. — Which is the largest state? Me. — The second in extent? Vt. — Third? N.-H. — Fourth? Ms. — Fifth? Ct. — Smallest? R.-I. — These states extend from latitude 41 degrees to 48. — How many degrees of latitude then do they include? They extend east and west from 3½ degrees, to 10 east longitude from Washington. — How many degrees then of longitude do they include? Which is the largest river in New England? Ct. — The next? Pt. — What river is partly in Maine and partly in New-Brunswick? S.-Js. — How long are these rivers? Which is the largest lake wholly in the Eastern States? Md. — How long is it? — What lake is partly in New England and partly in the state lying west of it? Cn. — How long is this lake? Lake Champlain is navigable for vessels of large burthen. During the war of the Revolution, and that of 1812, naval battles were fought upon it. Commodore M'Donough's victory, in which the whole British fleet was captured, took place September 11th, 1814. Which is the highest mountain i ew England? Wn. — Which is the next highest? Kn. — The next d. — How high are each of these mountains? — Which are th hree principal Islands in New England? M.-Dt., Nt., M.-Vd. — Whic state has the greatest extent of sea-coast? Mc. — Which has th smallest? N.-H. — Which has no sea-coast? Vt. — How many mile is it from Maine to Nova Scotia? — To Spain? — To Circassia? — From Massachusetts to Italy? — To Turkey? — From Long Island to Greece? In what year did the Pilgrims emigrate to New England? What was the name of the vessel? Mr. — How many miles is it from Boston to Halifax? To Liverpool? Total distance?

— 82 —

MAINE.



Lumber Yard, &c.

1. MAINE comprises about one-half of the area of New England. Before the year 1820, it formed a part of the State of Massachusetts, under the title of the District of Maine.

2. The soil is various; much of it is fertile, but in general it is better adapted for grazing than tillage. One of the chief products is white pine timber, of which there is cut and sawed to the amount of several millions of dollars annually.

3. The coast is remarkably indented with bays and harbours, affording great facilities for commerce and the fisheries, which the inhabitants have not failed to improve.

4. They are also largely engaged in ship-building and navigation, and export vast quantities of lumber, fish, beef, pork, grain, &c.; together with a considerable amount of ice, to the West Indies and the Southern States.

5. By a partial construction of the treaty of 1783, nearly a third part of Maine was long claimed by Great Britain. In the year 1842, a treaty was formed, by which the boundary

---

Maine Q. — 1. What does Maine comprise? What did it form a part of before 1820? 2. What is said of the soil? 3. Of the coast? 4. What are the exports? 5. What power long claimed one-third of Maine?

ine was established, and the British claim much restricted. The right to navigate the river St. Johns to the sea was also obtained by the people of the United States.

6. Augusta, the capital, is on the Kennebec river, 50 miles from its mouth: it contains a handsome State House, of granite, and a United States' Arsenal. Portland, on Casco Bay, is the largest and most important town in the state; it is well laid out, and handsomely built and has an extensive foreign and coasting trade.

7. Bangor, on the Penobscot river, 50 miles from the sea, has treble its population since 1830. Its trade in lumber is very extensive. Bath is noted for its ship-building, and Thomaston for its exports of lime, marble, and granite. Gardiner, Hallowell, Eastport, Belfast, Brunswick, Bristol, Saco,* Wells, and York, are all flourishing towns.

Map No. 6. — What country bounds Maine on the east? N.-Bk. — On the west? L. Ca. and N. H. — What ocean on the south? Ac. — Which are the five principal rivers that flow into the Atlantic Ocean? S.-Cx., Pt., Ko., An., So. How long are they? — What river rises in the centre of Maine and flows into New Brunswick? S.-Js. How long is it? — Which are the three principal Lakes? Md., Ck., Gd. How long are the two first? — The principal mountain, and its height? Kn. — The largest island? M.-Dt. — Which is the most eastern county? Wn. — The most western? Od. — The most southern? Yk. — In what county, and on what river, is the capital situated? Kc., Ke., — Which are the four largest towns, and their population? Pd., Br., An., Tn. — How many miles is it from Maine to Nova Scotia? To Spain? To Circassia? What boundary in the northern part of the state? What in the middle? What boundary formerly separated the state from Lower Canada? What boundary extends from L. Pohenagamook to the N. W. branch of the St. Johns?

— 83 —

NEW HAMPSHIRE.

1. NEW HAMPSHIRE is often called the Switzerland of America, on account of its beautiful and varied scenery, its mountains, lakes, rivers, cascades, &c. It is also called the granite state, from the great quantities of that rock found in it.

2. The sea-coast of New Hampshire is only 18 miles in

What occurred in the year 1842? 6. What is said of Augusta? Of Portland? 7. Of Bangor? and the other towns?

New Hampshire. Q. — 1. What is New Hampshire often called? Why? By what other name also? Why? 2. What is said of the sea

* *Saco*, Saw'-co.

extent, and it has but a small share of commerce; but it is distinguished for its productive agriculture and flourishing manufactures.

3. The country on the coast is level; in the interior, the surface is greatly diversified by hills and valleys, and mountains of considerable height.

White Mountains.

Among these are the White Mountains, the most elevated of any in New England. They are distinguished by the names of Washington, Franklin, Adams, Jefferson, Madison, Monroe, &c.

4. The White Mountains are covered with snow for ten months in the year, and are seen from a great distance at sea. The wild and sublime character of the scenery causes them to be often visited.

5. Concord, the capital of the state, is on the right bank of the Merrimack river; it is a pleasant and flourishing town, and contains the State House, State Prison, and other buildings.

Portsmouth, the only sea-port in the state, is on the Piscataqua river, three miles from the sea. It has a fine harbour, and contains a United States' Navy-Yard.

6. At Hanover, is Dartmouth college, a respectable and flourishing institution. Dover, Somersworth, New Market, Exeter, and Nashua,

---

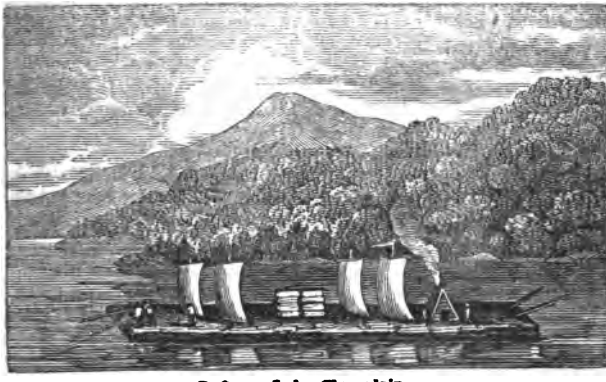
coast? Commerce? Agriculture and Manufactures? 3. What is said of the country? The White Mountains? How are they distinguished? 4. What causes them to be often visited? 5. Describe Concord. Portsmouth. 6. Where is Dartmouth College? What is said of Dover and other towns?

are all largely engaged in manufactures. Haverhill, Lancaster, Amherst, and Keene, are thriving towns.

Map No. 6. — What river separates New Hampshire from Vermont? Ct. — How long is it? — What river runs through the centre of the state? Mk.* — How long is it? — What lake flows into it? We. — How long is it? — What mountains are in Coos country? We. — Which is the principal? Wn. — How high is it? — Which is the principal town and its population? Ph. — The Capital and its population? Cd. — On what river is Concord? Mk. — Which is the most northern county? Cs. — The three most southern counties? Co. Hh., Rm. — In what county is the Capital? Mk. — What counties contain each two county towns? Rm., Sd., Gn. (County towns are distinguished by a ring with a dot in it.)

— 84 —

VERMONT.



Raft on Lake Champlain.

1. VERMONT is a mountainous but healthful and productiv state. The Green Mountains, from which it derives its name, extend through it from North to South, dividing it into nearly two equal sections.

2. The soil is fertile, and all kinds of grain, suited to the climate, are produced in abundance. Cattle of various kinds

Vermont. Q. — 1. What is Vermont? What is said of the Green

* This river is formed by the Pemigewasset and Winnipiseogee. The latter is the outlet of the lake of that name.

are raised with great facility; the beef, butter, and cheese, are well known for their excellence, and wool is an important product.

3. This state is entirely in the interior, yet, by Lake Champlain, and the Canal of the same name, steam-boats and other vessels have brought its territory into connection with he sea.

4. Part of the trade of Vermont goes by the canal to Albany, and art down Lake Champlain to Montreal. Immense rafts of timber containing houses for lodging the crews, are often seen sailing up the lake towards the canal, on their way to Albany and the towns on the Hudson.

5. The territory forming this state was first explored by the French from Canada, but was settled by the English more than a hundred years ago. During the revolutionary war, Vermont acted a conspicuous part, and the name of Green Mountain Boys, acquired by the bravery of her soldiers, has ever been regarded as a title of renown.

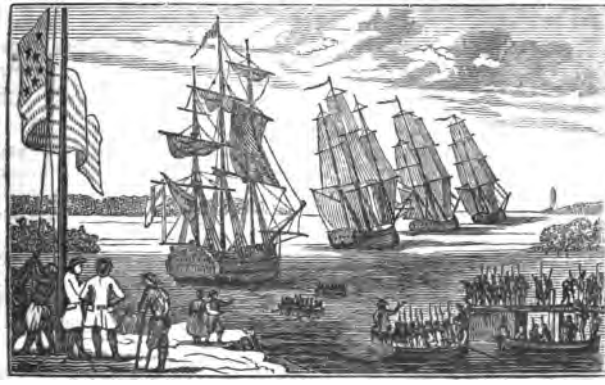
6. Montpelier, the capital of the state, is a neat little town on the Onion river. Burlington is the largest place in the state, and the most commercial town on Lake Champlain. It contains the University of Vermont. This place is 38 miles west from Montpelier.

7. Bennington, in the south-west corner of the state, is celebrated for the victory obtained by General Stark, in 1777, over a detachment of Hessians belonging to Burgoyne's army.

8. Middlebury and Rutland, on Otter Creek, and Brattleboro', Norwich, and Windsor, on the Connecticut river, are small but flourishing towns; the latter contains the Norwich University. Middlebury is the seat of Middlebury College.

Map No. 6. — What river bounds Vermont on the east? Ct. — What state does it separate from Vermont? N.-H. — What Lake bounds Vermont on the west? Cn. — What state does it separate from Vermont? N.-Y. — What country lies north of Vermont? Ca. — What state lies south? Ms. — What four streams flow into Lake Champlain? Me., L.-Me., On., Or. — What two Islands are in Lake Champlain? N.-Ho., S.-Ho. — These, with a small peninsula lying north of them, form the county of Grand Isle. — What Lake is partly in this state and partly in Canada? Mg. — What mountains extend through the state? Gn. — Which is the highest peak? Md. — How high is it? — What other peaks? C.-Rp., Kn. — When was the battle of Bennington fought? What rivers flow into the Connecticut?

Mountains? 2. Of the soil? Cattle, &c.? 3. What is said of the State? 4. Of the trade? Of the rafts on Lake Champlain? 5. The Revolutionary war? 6. Describe Montpelier. 7. Bennington. 8. And other towns.



British troops evacuating Boston.

MASSACHUSETTS.

1. Massachusetts is the oldest and most important of the New England States. It is the most thickly settled section of the Union, and is distinguished for the enterprise and public spirit of its citizens.

2. The agriculture is conducted with a superior degree of skill and intelligence; but the commerce, manufactures, and the fisheries, are the great objects of pursuit. The shipping amounts to nearly one-third of the whole owned in the United States.

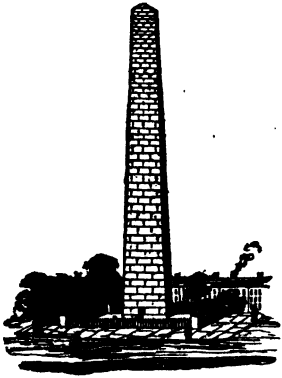
3. The literary, religious, and charitable institutions of Massachusetts, are highly important, and are in a flourishing condition. Harvard University at Cambridge is the oldest and best endowed literary establishment in the Union. Williams College at Williamstown, and Amherst College at Amherst, are also respectable institutions.

Massachusetts. *Q.* — 1. What is Massachusetts? For what is it distinguished? 2. What is said of the agriculture? Commerce? Manufactures and the fisheries? The shipping? 3. What is said of literary and other institutions? What of Harvard University?

4. This State contains a number of flourishing towns and villages, many of which are distinguished for the neatness of their buildings, and the elegance of their churches.

5. Boston, the Capital of the State, is situated on a peninsula at the head of Massachusetts Bay. This city is considered the literary and commercial metropolis of New England. Its shipping amounts to more than one-eighth of the whole tonnage of the Union, and its trade extends to all parts of the world. This city is noted for the number and elegance of its public buildings, among which are the State House, the New Market House, Tremont House, the Hospital, &c.

6. The American Revolution commenced in Boston. Its port was closed in 1774, by order of the British Government, and a garrison placed there to control the town It was, in consequence, besieged by the American army under General Washington, who compelled the British troops to evacuate it.



Bunker Hill Monument.

7. Charlestown is connected with Boston by three bridges. It is situated on a peninsula, the centre of which is occupied by Bunker Hill, celebrated for the battle fought on it during the revolutionary war. The Bunker Hill Monument, built of granite, is 220 feet high from its base, which is fifty feet square. Cambridge, united to Boston by two bridges, contains Harvard University.

8. Salem is a flourishing and wealthy place: it is the second in Massachusetts for its commerce. Newburyport has considerable trade. Beverly, Gloucester,* and Marblehead, are largely engaged in the cod fisheries, and Nantucket and New Bedford carry on the whale-fishing to a greater extent than any other place in the world

9. Lowell, on the Merrimack river, is famous for its cotton and woollen mills, and its great extent of water-power. Taunton and Fall River are considerable manufacturing towns. Lynn is noted for the vast amount of boots and shoes made in it; and Lexington for being the place where the first battle was fought during the revolutionary war.

---

4. What does this state contain? 5. Describe Boston. Its shipping. Trade. Buildings, &c. 6. What is said of the American revolution? What did the British Government do? What did the American army do? 7. Describe Charlestown, &c. The Bunker Hill Monument. 8. Describe Salem, Newburyport, Nantucket, and New Bedford. 9. Describe

---

* Glos'-ter.

10. At Plymouth the first settlers or pilgrims landed in the year 1620. The anniversary of that event is still observed. *Worcester, Springfield, Northampton, and Pittsfield, are all thriving and important towns. Springfield contains an United States armory, at which great numbers of fire-arms are made.

— 86 —

Map No. 6.—What state bounds Massachusetts on the north? N.-H. — On the south? R.-I., Ct. — On the west? N.-Y. — What ocean on the east and south? Ac. — What three mountains are in Massachusetts? Wt., He., Tm.—The range west of the Connecticut river, is called the Housatonick Mts.: it is a continuation of the Green Mts Which are the principal rivers? Ct., Mk. — How long are they? The other rivers? Be., Hk., Dd., Wd., Ms., Ce., Na., Cd. — What capes are on the coast? An., Cd., Mr. — What bays? Ms., C.-Cd., Bs. — What islands? Nt., M.-Vd. — What counties do these islands form? Nt., Ds. — Which is the most northern county? Ex. — The most southern? Nt. — The most eastern? Be. — The most western? Be. — What is the capital? Bn. — Its population? In what county is it? A., Suffolk County. — What four places have each a population of upwards of 10,000? Ll., Sm., N.-Bd., Cn. — In what year was the battle of Lexington fought? Bunker's Hill? †

Tell by the Scale what capital lies about 90 miles from Boston? Hd. —What county town in Maine lies a few miles farther? Pd. — This is the most important place in the state, and was formerly the capital What county towns in Connecticut are about the same distance from Boston as Portland? Mn., Hm., N.-Ln. — What island belonging to Rhode Island is not quite so far? Bk. — What island in Massachusetts is about the same distance? Nt. — What is the name of the county and county town? Nt. — What does this island carry on to a great extent? par. 8. — How far is Providence from Boston? Worcester? Amherst? Exeter? How far is Augusta? Montpelier? In what states are the two last? What towns on Massachusetts Bay?

— 87 —

RHODE ISLAND.

1. RHODE ISLAND is the smallest state in the Union, but is pleasantly situated, and possesses numerous facilities for commerce and manufactures.

Bowell, Taunton, &c. 10. Plymouth and the other towns.

Rhode Island. Q. — 1. What is Rhode Island? What does it pos-

---

*Worcester, Wurs'-ter.

†The flag denoting this battle is near Charlestown.

2. The face of the country is mostly level, except in the north-west, which is hilly and rocky. Part of the state has a thin and poor soil, but the islands bordering on the Narragansett Bay are of great fertility, and are celebrated for their fine cattle.

3. This state is extensively engaged in the cotton manufacture, and took the lead in that branch of industry. The first cotton-mill erected in the United States was built here.

4. Rhode Island has no Constitution, having been governed by the Charter of Charles II. ever since it was granted, in 1663. In the year 1841, measures were taken for the formation of a Constitution which, owing to a difference of opinion among the inhabitants, has not been adopted so promptly as had been expected.

5. Providence, on the river of the same name, 35 miles from the sea, is the second city in New England in population, wealth, and commerce. It contains the State House, Brown University, the Arcade, a number of churches, &c. Its manufactures are various and important.

6. Newport, near the entrance of Narragansett Bay, is noted for the beauty of its situation and salubrious air. Its harbour is one of the finest in the United States. Rhode Island, on which it is situated, has, from its beauty and fertility, been called the Eden of America.

7. Bristol is a handsome and flourishing town: its foreign and coasting trade is considerable. The villages of Pawtucket, Slatersville, and Woonsocket, are noted for their manufactures; the first is situated on both sides of the Pawtucket or Blackstone river, and is partly in this state, and partly in Massachusetts.

Map No. 6. — What state bounds Rhode Island on the north and east? Ms. — The west? Ct. — What ocean on the south? Ac. — What is the principal bay? Nt. — Which are the two principal islands? R.-Id., Bk. — What county do they belong to? Nt. — Which are the capitals? Pe., Nt. Their population? — In what county is Providence? Pe. — In which is Newport? Nt.

— 88 —

CONNECTICUT.

1. CONNECTICUT is noted for the excellence of its literary institutions, and for the intelligence, enterprise, and good morals of the people.

2. The state has a varied surface of hill and dale, but is

---

seas? 2. What is said of the country? Of the soil, &c.? 3. What is this state engaged in? 4. How is it governed? What has been hitherto experienced? 5. Describe Providence. 6. Newport. 7. Bristol. Pawtucket, &c.

Connecticut. Q. — 1. For what is Connecticut noted? 2. What is

School-House. Emigrants to the West.

seldom mountainous. The climate is healthful, and the soil generally good, especially in the valley of the Connecticut river.

3. The chief products are the grains, &c. common to New England: orchards are numerous; cider is produced in considerable quantities; and butter and cheese are made annually to a great amount.

4. The manufactures of Connecticut are extensive and various. The principal articles are cotton, woollen, and silk goods, clocks, cutlery, buttons, carriages, &c. The foreign trade is chiefly with the West Indies, but is less extensive than that along the coast.

5. The provision made for the public education of the people in this state, is more liberal than in any other part of the world. The interest of the school fund affords instruction to nearly ninety thousand children.

6. Perhaps no Atlantic state has sent so large a number of active and industrious settlers to the western country as Connecticut; and her emigrants, wherever found, are among the most enterprising and industrious part of the population.

---

said of the surface? Of the climate and soil? 3. What are the chief products? What is said of orchards, &c.? 4. Of the manufactures? The principal articles? The foreign trade? 5. Public education? What does the interest of the school fund afford? 6. What is said of

7. The seat of government is divided between New Haven and Hartford. The former is situated at the bottom of a small bay opening into Long Island Sound. It is built in squares, with straight and wide streets, and its regularity and neatness are much admired.

8. Yale College was removed to this city from Saybrook in 1717. Besides the college buildings, there are several churches and other public edifices that excite attention. The boarding-schools and seminaries for youth of both sexes are highly respectable and well conducted.

9. Hartford is on the Connecticut river, 50 miles from its mouth. During a few years past, it has rapidly increased in commerce, population and wealth. It is the seat of Washington College, and of the Asylum for the Deaf and Dumb, the first institution of the kind established in the United States. Wethersfield, 4 miles south from Hartford, is noted for its trade in onions. It contains the State Prison.

10. New London and Stonington employ a number of vessels in the whale and seal fisheries. Middletown and Norwich are extensively engaged in manufactures. Litchfield was long noted for its law-school; Bristol for its manufactures of clocks; Collinsville for axes, and Waterbury for buttons. Saybrook was the first place in this state occupied by the English.

89

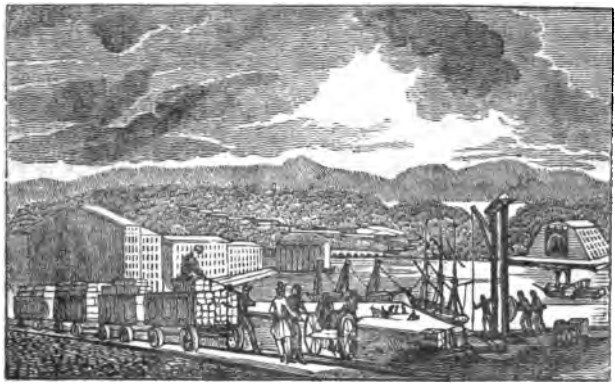
Map No. 6. — What state bounds Connecticut on the north? Ms. — On the east? R.-I. — West? N.-Y. — South? L.-I. Sd. — How long is Long I. Sound? To what state does Long I. belong? N.-Y. — What rivers flow into the Sound? Ct., Ts., Hk. The length of each? How far is the Connecticut navigable? For what kind of vessels? The Housatonick? Point out the other rivers. What is the population of New Haven? Of Hartford? Which are the four next largest towns, and their population? N.-Ld., Dy., Nh., Ld. — On what river is New London? Norwich? Middletown? Haddam? &c.

How many miles is it by the scale from New Haven to Hartford? What county town is about the same distance? Ld. — The city of New York, Northampton on the Connecticut river, and Block Island, are all about the same distance from New Haven. How many miles is it? Hartford is nearly half way between New York and Boston. How many miles is it from each? New Haven is about the same distance from Newport, Providence, and Worcester. How many miles is it? Hartford is situated very nearly half way between the eastern and western extremities of the state. How many miles is it from each? Hartford is about the same distance from Providence and Poughkeepsie. How many miles is it from each? How far is New Haven from the north line of the state? From the north-east corner of the state? From the north-west corner?

---

settlers to the western country? Of emigrants? 7. Of the seat of government? Describe New Haven. 8. Yale College, &c. 9. Hartford. 10 What is said of New London? Stonington? Norwich? Litchfield? &c.

— 90 —



MIDDLE STATES.

1. The Middle States comprise New York, New Jersey, Pennsylvania, and Delaware. They occupy one of the finest portions of the Union, and are distinguished for their rapid growth in prosperity and wealth, and for the enterprise and industry of their inhabitants.

2. These states exhibit some of the most mountainous tracts in the Union. The Alleghany, the Blue Mountains, and other ranges, stretch through the country from south-west to north-east. They are almost universally covered with forests, and contain many wild solitudes among them that are seldom or never visited by man.

3. The climate is generally more mild than in the New England States, except in the northern parts of New York, where the cold of winter is equally severe.

4. A great portion of the soil of the Middle States is fertile, well cultivated, and produces large crops of excellent wheat,

---

Middle States. Q. — 1. What do the Middle States comprise? What do they occupy? For what are they distinguished? 2. What do these states exhibit? With what are they covered? 3. What is said

Indian corn, rye, oats, and barley. The fruits are chiefly apples, pears, peaches, and plums.

5. The most useful minerals, coal, iron, salt, and lime abound to a great extent in various parts of the country; and mining is actively pursued, especially in the coal regions of Pennsylvania.

6. The commerce of the Middle States is extensive, and is carried on chiefly through the cities of New York and Philadelphia. The internal trade is greatly facilitated by the numerous canals and rail-roads which extend through the different parts of the country.

7. The manufactures are important and various; a vast amount of capital and labour is employed in their fabrication, and thousands of both sexes are supported by them.

8. In the Middle States common-school education is not so general as in most parts of New England, except in the state of New York, where great attention has been paid to the subject.

9. In Pennsylvania a system has been adopted that will afford the means of education to all classes of the people; but in New Jersey and Delaware, the plans pursued for that purpose have not as yet proved very efficient.

— 91 —

10. The great body of the people in the Middle States are of British descent; but in some parts of Pennsylvania there are many Germans, who speak only their own language, and are often ignorant of the English tongue. In New York and New Jersey, there are a number of the descendants of the original Dutch settlers of New York, and in some sections that language is partially spoken.

11. At the close of the revolutionary war, so many emigrants from the eastern states settled in New York, that a majority of the present population of that state are natives of New England, or their descendants. These, by their industrious habits, their enterprise and general intelligence, have contributed much to the prosperity of that section of the Union.

---

of the climate? 4. Of the soil? The crops? 5. What is said of the minerals? Of mining? 6. The commerce? The internal trade? 7. The manufactures? 8. Of common-school education? In New York? 9. In Pennsylvania? In New Jersey and Delaware?

10. Of what descent are the great body of the people? What of the Germans? Dutch? 11. Of emigrants from the New England states? What have they contributed?

Map No. 7. — Which is the largest of the Middle States? N.-Y. — The second in extent? Pa. — Third? N.-J. — Fourth? De. — Which extends farthest north and east? N.-Y. — South? De. — West? Pa. — Which state has the greatest extent of sea-coast? N.-Y. — Which has no sea-coast? Pa. — The Middle States extend from latitude 38½ to 45 degrees. — How many degrees of latitude, then, do they include? They extend from longitude 5 degrees east of Washington, to about 3½ west? — How many degrees of longitude do they include? — Which is the largest Island belonging to the Middle States? Lg. — What is its length? — The next in size? Sn. — This Island forms Richmond county, in New York. — Which are the principal mountains? Ay., Be., Cl., Mn. — Which is the highest mountain? My. — How high is it? — Which are the chief rivers that flow into the Ocean? Hn., De., Sa. — Which two form the Ohio? Ay., Ma. — How long are all these rivers? — Which state has the greatest extent of lake-coast? N.-Y. — The next? Pa. — How long is each of these lakes? — For what are they navigable? — How far is it from New York to Bristol, England? — From New Jersey to Italy? — From Delaware to Turkey? — From Philadelphia to Norfolk?

92

NEW YORK.

View of the lower part of the City of New York.

1. NEW YORK is the most flourishing, wealthy, and populous state in the Union. It exhibits one of those amazing examples of growth and prosperity that are no where seen on the globe beyond our own borders.

New-York. Q. — 1. What is New York? What does it exhibit?

2. The northern portion of the state is, in part, mountainous, and but thinly settled; the eastern is hilly, and tolerably productive; while the western part is level, remarkably fertile, and increasing rapidly in population.

3. The agriculture is well conducted. Wheat is the chief staple; but corn, rye, and other grains, are extensively cultivated. The flour is of excellent quality; and, with other provisions, is largely exported.

4. The manufactures are extensive and flourishing, and the commerce of the state is on a great scale. Near three-fifths of the imports, and more than one-fourth of the exports of the Union, are made by New York alone.

5. Iron ore is found in great abundance, and lead, gypsum, and limestone, also abound. There are numerous and important salt springs at various places. The principal are at Salina and Syracuse, where more than two million bushels of salt are made annually.

6. The mineral springs of Ballston and Saratoga are well known throughout the Union for their medicinal qualities, and are much visited from all quarters. The waters are largely exported to the other states, and even to foreign countries.

7. This state shares with Upper Canada the Falls of Niagara, one of the greatest wonders of the western continent. The widest and most imposing part of this cataract is on the Canadian side; while that on the New York side, though narrower, is several feet higher than the other.

8. New York is distinguished for its magnificent public works, of which the Erie, or Great Western Canal, is the largest in the state, and one of the principal works of the kind in the world.

9. The success attending its completion and use, fully convinced the people of the United States of the advantages of works of internal improvement. There are, likewise, a number of other canals, and also rail-roads, in successful operation, besides some that are partially completed.

---

2. What is said of the northern part? Eastern? Western? 3. The agriculture? 4. Manufactures? Imports? Exports? 5. Iron ore, &c.? Salt springs? How much salt is made annually? 6. What is said of the mineral springs? 7. Of the Falls of Niagara? 8. How is New-York distinguished? What is said of the Erie canal? 9. Of other canals and rail-roads?

10. Very ample provision has been made for popular education in this state; and there is no country in the world where the great body of the people have the means of being so generally instructed as in New York. More than 500,000 children are taught annually in the common schools and there are, also, 280 academies, 11 colleges, and a university.

11. The people of New York, during the revolutionary war, strenuously opposed the arbitrary measures of the British government. The state, for the greater part of that gloomy period, was the theatre of active hostilities; and the surrender of General Burgoyne and his army, with other memorable events, took place within its limits.

12. The city of New York is situated on Manhattan island, at the junction of the Hudson and East rivers. It is the great commercial emporium of America; and is, next to London, the greatest in the world. Its progress in population has never been surpassed. Since 1796, it has, including Brooklyn, increased nearly ten-fold.

13. The foreign, coasting, and inland trade of this city is immense: regular packets are constantly trading to the chief sea-ports in Europe, the West Indies, South America, and all the important maritime towns in the United States. Steam-ships also are constantly arriving from, and departing to, England, and other European countries.

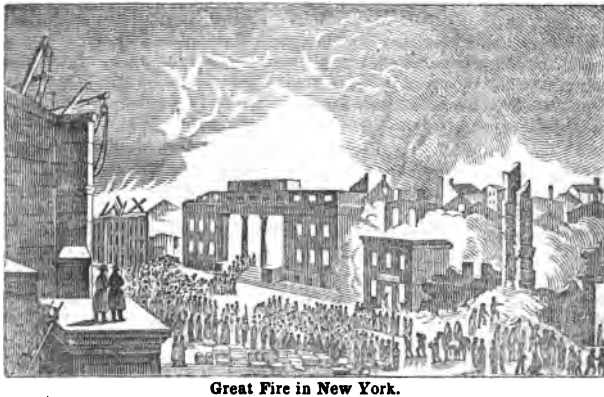
14. One of the most important works in the state is the aqueduct for supplying the city with wholesome water from the Croton river. It is 45 miles in length; will furnish 60 million gallons of water daily, and is estimated to cost 12½ million dollars. This noble structure was commenced in 1835, and was built at the expense of the city.

City Hall, New York.

15. The public buildings are numerous, and many of them elegant. The City Hall, new Custom House, Merchants' Exchange, Hall of the University, Astor House, Hall of Justice, &c. are among the most striking and important. The churches are about 150 in number.

---

10. Of popular education? How many children are taught annually? 11. What is said of the people of New York? Of the State? 12. Where is the city of New York situated? What is it? What is said of its progress in population? 13. Foreign, coasting, and inland trade? 14. The Croton aqueduct? 15. Mention the public buildings



Great Fire in New York.

16. This city suffered a severe loss by the great fire of December 16th, 1835, which destroyed 530 buildings, and other property to the amount of more than seventeen millions of dollars.

17. Brooklyn, on the opposite side of the East river, is properly a suburb of New York. It commands a delightful view of the city and surrounding country, and is a pleasant place of residence. Above New York, on the Hudson, is West Point, the seat of the United States' Military Academy for the instruction of officers of the army.

18. Albany, the capital of the state, is 150 miles north of the city of New York. It is the centre of an extensive and important inland trade, being connected with the ocean by the Hudson river, with lakes Erie and Champlain by the State canals, and with Boston by one of the finest rail-roads in the Union.

19. Newburg, Poughkeepsie,* Catskill, Hudson, Troy, and Lansingburg, all on the Hudson, are flourishing towns. Schenectady, Utica Syracuse, Rochester, Lockport, and Buffalo, are the most important places on the Erie canal. The latter is the great emporium of the trade on Lake Erie. Rochester is noted for its numerous flour-mills, and Syracuse for the vast quantity of salt made there, and in the vicinity.

20. Besides these, there are many other thriving towns in various parts of the state, of which, Rome, Auburn, Geneva, Canandaigua, Ithaca Oswego, Sackett's Harbour, and Plattsburg, are the principal. Plattsburg is noted for the two victories gained over the British in 1814. Sackett's Harbour was the chief naval station on Lake Ontario in the late war.

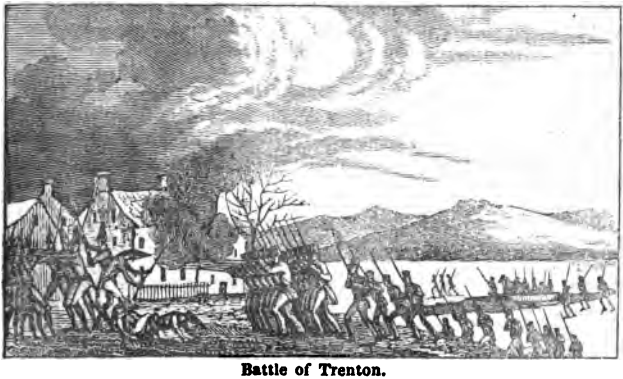
16. What is said of the Great Fire? 17. Describe Brooklyn, &c. 18. Albany. 19. Newburg, &c. 20. The other towns.

* Po-kep'-sy.

Map No. 7.—What countries bound New-York on the north? U.-Ca., L.-Ca.—What States on the south? Pa., N.-J.—On the east? Vt., Ms., Ct.—What are the three most northern counties? S.-Le., Fr., Cn.—Most southern? Rd.—Most eastern? Sk.—Most western? Ce.—What two great lakes separate New-York from Upper Canada? Ee., Oo.—How long are they? What river forms part of the boundary between this state and Upper Canada? S.-Le.—How long is it? How long is Lake Champlain? George? Oneida? Skeneateles? Cayuga? Seneca? Canandaigua? Crooked and Black Lakes? What three rivers flow into Lake Ontario? Ge., Oo., Bk.—What four flow into the St. Lawrence river? S.-Rs., Rt., Gs., Oe.—Which river flows into the Atlantic Ocean? Hn.—Which is the largest branch of the Hudson river? Mk.—Tell the lengths of all the foregoing rivers. How many miles is the Hudson river navigable for steam-boats? For sloops? For ships? What river unites Lakes Erie and Ontario? Na.—How high is Mt. Marcy? The Catskill Mts.?

What island is in Niagara river? Gd.—What celebrated falls on the Niagara river? Na.—What island forms one of the counties of the state? Sn.—What island contains three counties? Lg.—What is the length of Long Island? What Sound separates it from Connecticut? Point out the different places at which battles were fought, and their dates.

95



Battle of Trenton.

NEW JERSEY.

1. NEW JERSEY possesses considerable variety of surface, being mountainous in the northern parts, moderately level in the middle, and low and chiefly sandy in the south.

New Jersey. Q.—1. What does New Jersey possess? 2. What is

2. Most of the soil is well cultivated, and produces the various grains common to this part of the Union with fruits and vegetables in abundance, which supply the markets of the large cities in the adjacent states.

3. The manufactures are extensive and flourishing. They comprise cotton and woollen goods, with various articles of iron, glass, leather, &c.

4. Several important canals and rail-roads extend through the state, and add greatly to the facilities of intercourse between the northern and southern parts of the Union.

5. The people of New Jersey bore their full share in the perils and hardships of the revolution; and some of the most important battles of that period were fought within the limits of the state.

6. Trenton, on the Delaware river, at the head of tide-water, is the capital of New Jersey. It has considerable trade and manufactures, and is noted for the capture of the Hessians in 1776, by General Washington.

7. Newark, 10 miles west from New York, is the largest town in the state. It is well built, and has extensive manufactures. New Brunswick, on the Raritan river, is a place of considerable trade. It contains Rutgers College, a highly respectable literary institution.

8. Paterson, at the falls of the Passaic river, is one of the principal manufacturing towns in the country. Here are numerous mills, factories, founderies, and all the different establishments necessary in a place devoted to the fabrication, on a large scale, of cotton and woollen goods, paper, and machinery of various kinds.

9. Princeton, 11 miles north-east of Trenton, is a neat and pleasant town. It is the seat of New Jersey College, one of the oldest and most respectable literary institutions in the Union. Elizabethtown, Burlington, Camden, and Salem, are thriving towns.

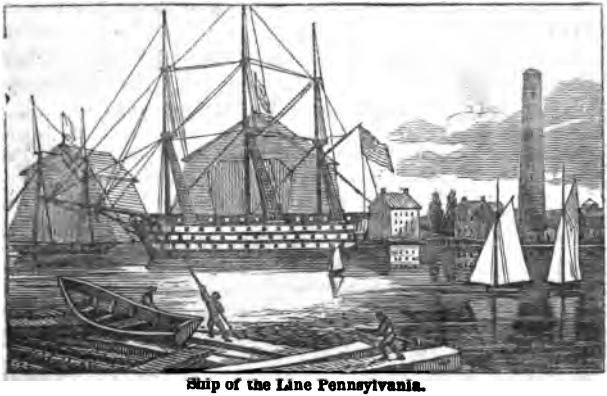
Map No. 7. — What bounds New Jersey on the north? N.-Y. — What on the east? A.-On., N.-Y. — West? Pa., De. — What river separates New Jersey from Pennsylvania and Delaware? De. — What river separates it from New York? Hn. — Which are the three principal rivers of New Jersey? Pc., Rn., Me. — Which is the most northern county? Sx. — The most southern? C.-My. — The most eastern? Bn. — The most western? Sm. — What Cape at the southern extremity of New Jersey? My. — What Bay on the south-west? De. — When were the battles of Trenton, Princeton, Monmouth, and

---

said of the soil? What does it produce? 3. What is said of the manufactures? What do they comprise? 4. What extends through the state? 5 What is said of the people? 6. Describe Trenton. 7. Newark. New Brunswick. 8. Paterson. 9. Princeton, and other towns.

Red Bank, fought? In which county is Trenton? Mr. — Newark? Ex. — Paterson? Pc. — New Brunswick? Mx. — What is the population of each of these towns? On what river is Newark? Burlington? Camden? &c.

— 96 —



Ship of the Line Pennsylvania.

PENNSYLVANIA.

1. PENNSYLVANIA is, next to New York, the largest in extent of the four Middle States, and the second in population in the Union. It is highly distinguished for its various manufactures, vast mineral resources, and extensive public works.

2. The interior of the state is traversed by the different ridges of the Alleghany Mountains, while the eastern and western sections are level, or moderately hilly.

3. The soil is generally well cultivated, and yields in abundance wheat, corn, and other grains, with all the fruits common to the Middle States.

4. The mineral wealth of Pennsylvania is probably greater than that of any other state in the Union; coal, iron, and lime, are found in vast quantities, and salt springs are numerous.

Pennsylvania. Q. — 1. What is Pennsylvania? For what is it distinguished? 2. What is said of the interior of the state? The eastern and western sections? 3. Of the soil? 4. The mineral wealth?

5. The works of internal improvement are on an extensive scale; though not yet completed, they have added greatly to the intercourse between the eastern and western parts of the Union, and are rapidly increasing the trade and commerce of the state.

6. No general system of education was adopted in Pennsylvania till 1834. Since that period, the number of schools and scholars has greatly increased. Besides nearly five thousand common schools, there is a University, eighteen Colleges, and a number of respectable academies in the state.

Girard College.

7. The Girard College, for orphans, near Philadelphia, was endowed by the munificence of a private individual, Stephen Girard, who died in 1832, and left two millions of dollars for the purpose of erecting and supporting the institution.

8. Pennsylvania was settled by a colony of English Quakers or iends, under the guidance of William Penn, whose liberal views in vernment and religion, and just policy towards the natives, ensured e prosperity of the colony, and preserved peace for many years between e Indians and white settlers.

9. This state acted a conspicuous part in the war of the revolution.

---

5. The works of internal improvement? What have they added? 6. What is said of education? Of the number of schools? 7. Girard College? 8. Who settled Pennsylvania? What is said of William Penn? 9. How did the state act during the revolution?

It was in her chief city that glorious declaration was made, which asserted and placed on a sure basis the civil and political rights of mankind, and formed a new era in the history of the world.

— 97 —

10. Harrisburg, the capital of the state, is pleasantly situated on the east bank of the Susquehanna river, 98 miles west of Philadelphia. It contains the state capitol, and other public buildings.

11. Philadelphia is one of the most regular and handsomely-built cities in America. It stands on the west bank of the Delaware river, one hundred miles from the sea, and is noted for the cleanliness of the streets, and the neat appearance of the buildings.

12. In manufactures, it is the first city in the United States. The foreign commerce is very considerable, and the inland trade with the Western States valuable and extensive. The exportation of coal employs many vessels and men, and a large amount of capital.

13. Philadelphia is celebrated as a seat of literature and science, especially of medical science. The University of Pennsylvania and the Jefferson Medical School both enjoy a high reputation. The public and private schools are numerous and well attended; and the city abounds in benevolent and religious institutions.

Wire Bridge over the Schuylkill river, with part of Fairmount.

14. It is also adorned with many handsome public buildings, of which the United States' Bank, Merchants' Exchange, and Mint, are

10. Describe Harrisburg. 11. What is said of Philadelphia? For what is it noted? 12. What is said of its manufactures? Commerce? Exportation of coal? 13. For what is Philadelphia celebrated? What are numerous? In what does the city abound? 14. With what is it

the most elegant. The Alms-House, State Penitentiary, Naval Asylum, and Girard College, all near the city, are large and important edifices.

15. The Fairmount water-works, on the Schuylkill* river, supply the city with pure and wholesome water, which is conveyed in pipes, amounting altogether to near 115 miles in length. Four million gallons of water are used every 24 hours. Close to these works an elegant wire bridge has been lately constructed, it is 357 feet in length, 30 feet above the surface of the river, and cost 52,000 dollars.

16. The ship of the line Pennsylvania was built here, and launche in 1837. This vast ship, probably the largest ever constructed, is 24 feet long, and 59 deep; carries 140 guns, and is 3,306 tons burthen.

17. Pittsburg, situated at the head of the Ohio river, is greatly distinguished for its numerous manufactories, and its extensive inland trade. The surrounding country abounds in bituminous coal, and the constant use of that fuel causes a perpetual cloud of smoke to hang over the town. Alleghany and Birmingham are considered suburbs of Pittsburg, and are connected with it by bridges.

18. Lancaster, 62 miles west of Philadelphia, is situated in a rich and fertile country. Reading, Easton, Lebanon, Carlisle, Pottsville, Beaver, Wilkesbarre,† and Erie, are all considerable towns: the latter is important on account of its harbour, which is one of the best on the lakes.

98

Map No. 7. — What bounds Pennsylvania on the north? N. Y. — On the south? De., Md., Va. — East? N.-Y., N.-J. — West? Oo., Va. — What river separates Pennsylvania from New Jersey? De. — What river flows into Chesapeake Bay? Sa. — Which are its two chief branches? Nh., Wt. — What rivers unite at Pittsburgh? Ay., Ma. — What river do they form? Oo. — What river flows into the Susquehanna above Harrisburg? Ja. — Tell the lengths of the foregoing rivers. — What two rivers flow into the Delaware? Lh., Sl. — What river flows into the Ohio below Pittsburg? Br. — How many miles is the Delaware navigable for steam-boats? — What mountains extend between Berks and Schuylkill counties? Be. — What mountains in the centre of the state? Ay. — What two ridges in the western part? Ll., Ct. — In which county is Philadelphia? Pa. — Harrisburg? Dn. — Lancaster? Lr. — Pittsburg? Ay. — What is the population of Philadelphia? — Lancaster? — Harrisburg? — Reading? — Easton? — Erie? — Beaver? — Pittsburg — What lake forms the N. W. boundary of the state? Ee. — What town on the lake? Ee. — When was Braddock defeated? — When were the battles of Brandywine and Germantown fought? — When did the massacre of Wyoming take place? — On what river is Reading? — Easton? — Pottsville? — Wilkesbarre? — Beaver?

adorned? Mention the public buildings. 15. Fairmount water-works? Wire Bridge? 16. Of the Ship Pennsylvania? 17. Describe Pittsburg. 18. Lancaster. The other towns.

* *Schuylkill*, Skool'-kill. † *Wilkesbarre*, Wilks'-bar-re.

99

DELAWARE.

1. DELAWARE is the smallest in population, and, except Rhode Island, the least in extent, of any state in the Union. Its general aspect is that of an extended plain mostly favourable for cultivation.

2. The chief products are wheat and Indian corn, of which the former is generally of excellent quality. Brandywine creek, in the upper part of the state, supplies extensive water-power for a number of large manufacturing establishments. The principal articles furnished by these, are flour, corn-meal, cotton and woollen goods, paper, and gunpowder.

3. The principal thoroughfare between the northern and southern states is through the upper part of Delaware, which is much facilitated by the Chesapeake and Delaware Canal, and two rail-roads which extend across it.

4. Near Lewistown, an important national work, the Delaware Breakwater, has been erected, for the purpose of affording a shelter to vessels in stormy weather. The work consists of two piers, an ice-breaker 1700 feet, and a break-water 2800 feet long. The cost of the whole is estimated at three millions of dollars.

5. Wilmington, situated between Christiana and Brandywine Creeks, near their junction, is the largest and most important place in the state. It is a well-built and growing town, and contains a United States' arsenal, several banks, churches, &c. It has considerable trade, with some manufactures, and sends several ships to the whale fishery.

6. Dover, the seat of government, is situated on Jones's creek, and contains a handsome State House. New Castle, Georgetown, and Smyrna, are places of some note. Lewistown, near the entrance to Delaware Bay, is the oldest town in the state, having been originally settled by the Swedes and Finns, about the year 1630.

Map No. 7. — What state bounds Delaware on the north? Pa. — On ne south and west? Md. — On the east? N.-J. — What river and Bay separate Delaware from New Jersey? De. — What Cape in the south part of the state? Hn. — Which is the most northern county? N.-Ce. — What is the population of the principal town?

Delaware. Q. — 1. What is said of Delaware? 2. What are its chief products? 3. What is said of the northern part of the state? What canal is in it? 4. What is said of the Delaware Break-water? 5. Describe Wilmington. 6. Dover. New Castle, and other towns.

— 100 —

SOUTHERN STATES.

1. The Southern States comprise Maryland, Virginia, North Carolina, South Carolina, Georgia, Alabama, Mississippi, and Louisiana. The District of Columbia and the Territory of Florida are also included in this section of the Union.

2. The whole region extends from the Susquehanna to the Sabine river: its shores are washed by the Atlantic Ocean and the Gulf of Mexico.

3. On the sea-coast, the ground is low and often swampy, but sometimes sandy. In the interior, the surface is greatly diversified, and frequently hilly and mountainous. The highest elevations in the Atlantic States are found in this section.

4. The inhabitants of the Southern States are chiefly occupied in agricultural pursuits; many of them have large plantations, with numerous slaves.

5. The wealthy classes are generally well-educated; possess culti-

Southern States. Q.—1. What do the Southern States comprise? 2. How far does the whole region extend? 3. What is said of the land on the sea-coast? In the interior? 4. How are the inhabitants chiefly employed? 5. What is said of the wealthy classes? What of the

vated minds, and refined manners; and are noted for their hospitality. Education is not so general among the poorer classes of the people as in the Middle and Eastern states.

6. Nearly the whole of the cotton crop of the United States is raised here; which, with sugar and rice, is confined to its southern section. In the northern, the principal productions are tobacco, wheat, and corn.

7. Gold abounds in nearly all the Atlantic States of thi region; but is almost exclusively confined to the upper an middle portions of the country. This metal is now so extensively found, as to have become an object of national importance.

8. The gold region embraces a great extent of country, and reaches from Virginia, through North and South Carolina, and Georgia, to Alabama.

9. Branches of the United States' Mint are established at Charlotte, in North Carolina, and at Dahlonega, in Georgia, for the purpose of coining the gold found in the Southern States.

101

10. The population of the Southern States is chiefly of British origin. There are, however, many descendants of the French and Spanish colonists, particularly in Louisiana and Florida.

11. The Negroes, who form about two-fifths of the population, constitute a separate class, and are mostly held in slavery. The Indians have nearly all emigrated west of the Mississippi river. A few Seminoles still remain in Florida.

Map No. 4. — Which is the largest division of the Southern States? Va. — The smallest? S.-C. — Which is the most northern? Va. — Southern? Fa. — Eastern? N.-C. — Western? La. — Which divisions border on the Atlantic Ocean? Md., Va., N.-C., S.-C., Ga., Fa. — Which border on the Gulf of Mexico? Aa,, Mi., La., Fa. — What state is divided by Chesapeake Bay into two parts? Md. — What Territory* has a coast both on the Atlantic ocean and the Gulf of Mexico?

---

poorer classes? 6. What is said of the cotton crop? Of other productions? 7. Where does gold abound? What has it become? 8. What does the gold region embrace? 9. What is said of the United States' Mint?

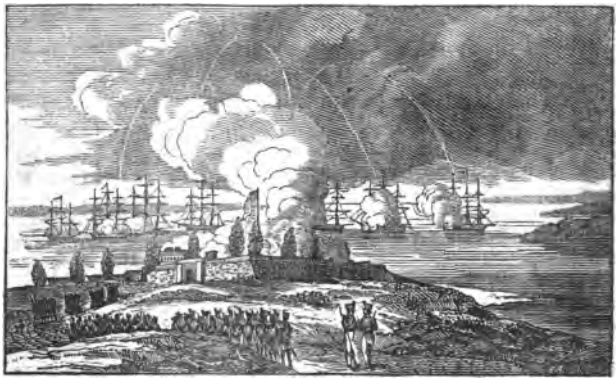
10. What is said of the population? 11. Of the Negroes? Of the Indians?

---

* The *Territories* of the United States are of two kinds, organized and unorganized The first are settled by white inhabitants, but contain a popula-

Fa. — The Southern States extend from latitude 40½ to 24 degrees. How many degrees of latitude, then, do they comprise? They extend from longitude 2 degrees east from Washington, to 17 west. What amount of longitude do they include?

— 102 —



Bombardment of Fort M'Henry.

MARYLAND.

1. MARYLAND is more irregular in its outline than any state in the Union, and is divided by Chesapeake Bay into two sections, which are called the Eastern and Western Shores.

2. In agriculture, manufactures, and commerce, this State holds a respectable rank. Flour and tobacco are the staple productions. Of the former article, more than 500,000 barrels have been inspected in Baltimore in one year.

Maryland. Q. — 1. How is Maryland divided? 2. What is said of

---

tion of less than 60,000. On attaining that number, the people of a territory, by receiving the sanction of Congress to that effect, may elect a governor and representatives to the National Legislature, similar to the other states. Florida, Wisconsin, and Iowa, are the organized territories. Missouri, Oregon, and the Indian Territory are inhabited by Indians only, and are unorganized. The last is peopled chiefly by the emigrant tribes, who are governed by their own chiefs, under the superintendence of the government of the United States.

3. The chief mineral products are iron and coal. The first is found in various parts of the State; the last occurs in the western part chiefly.

4. The State of Maryland was settled by a body of Catholics under Lord Baltimore, whose wise and liberal government attracted emigrants from all quarters, and tended greatly to the early growth and prosperity of the colony.

5. Baltimore is on a branch of the Patapsco river, 14 miles from Chesapeake Bay, and 200 from the sea; it possesses an extensive foreign and domestic trade, and is the greatest flour market in the world.

6. The public buildings are numerous, and many of them handsome specimens of architecture. The Exchange, the Roman Catholic Cathedral, and the Battle and Washington Monuments, are among the principal. The latter is the finest structure of the kind in the country. It is a Doric column, 140 feet in height, and 20 feet in diameter at the bottom; it stands on a pedestal that is elevated 20 feet from the ground; on the top is a colossal statue of the Father of his Country. Several important rail-roads centre in Baltimore, which add greatly to its trade.

7. Fort M'Henry, a short distance below the city, commands the entrance to the harbour. It was bombarded by the British in 1814; but being bravely defended, the assailants were forced to retire.

8. Annapolis is the capital of Maryland. It is situated on Severn River, three miles from Chesapeake Bay. The State House is a handsome building, in which the old Congress held some of their sessions.

9. Frederick City, 47 miles west of Baltimore, is, in point of population, the second place in the state. Hagerstown and Williamsport are thriving towns. Easton and Cambridge are the principal places on the Eastern shore. At Emmitsburg, in the northern part of the state, is Mount St. Mary's College.

Map No. 7. — What bounds Maryland on the north? Pa. — South and west? Va. — East? De., A.-On. — What bay and river divide Maryland into two separate parts? Ce., Sa. — What river separates it from Virginia? Pc. — What rivers flow into Chesapeake Bay on the east side? Ck., Ne., Pe. — What rivers on the west side? Pt., Pc. — Which is the most eastern county? Wr. — The most western? Ay. — On what river is Havre de Grace? Cumberland? Upper Marlboro'? What is the population of Baltimore? Of Frederick City? Of Hagerstown? Annapolis? Easton? In what year was the battle of North Point fought? Of Bladensburg? Of Havre de Grace? What mountains extend through the western part of the state? Ay.

---

the agriculture, manufactures, and commerce? 3. What are the chief mineral products? 4. By whom was Maryland first settled? What is said of this government? 5. Describe Baltimore. 6. Its public buildings. The Washington Monument. 7. What is said of Fort M'Henry? 8. Describe Annapolis. 9. Frederick City, and other towns.

— 108 —

View in Washington.

DISTRICT OF COLUMBIA.

1. The District of Columbia is a territory of ten miles square, under the immediate government of Congress. It is divided into Washington and Alexandria Counties, and contains the Cities of Washington, Georgetown, and Alexandria.

2. It lies on both sides of the Potomac river, and was ceded by the States of Virginia and Maryland to the United States in 1790. It is about 110 miles from the mouth of the river, and 200 from the sea.

3. The City of Washington, the Capital of the United States, was laid out in 1791, under the superintendence of the distinguished man whose name it bears; and in the year 1800, the seat of government was changed from Philadelphia to this place.

4. Washington is the residence of the President of the United States, and the other chief executive officers of the General Government, also of the different foreign ministers sent to this country.

5. The National Congress meets here in the Capitol every year on the

---

District of Columbia. Q. — 1. What is the District of Columbia? How is it divided? What does it contain? 2. By what states was it ceded? At what time? 3. What is the City of Washington? When was it laid out? When was the Government removed here? 4. Who resides in Washington? 5. What body meets here? What Court?

first Monday in December, and the Supreme Federal Court also holds its annual sessions in this city. During the sessions of Congress, Washington is thronged with visiters from all parts of the world.

6. The Capitol is a large and magnificent building of white freestone, 352 feet long, in the shape of a cross, with the Representatives' Hall and Senate Chamber in the two wings, and a spacious Rotunda in the centre.

7. The Representatives' Hall is semi-circular, 95 feet in length, and 60 in height, lighted from the top, and adorned with a colonnade of pillars beautifully polished. It is one of the most elegant halls in the world.

The Senate Chamber is of the same shape, and 74 feet long. The Rotunda is 96 feet in diameter, and is 96 feet to the top of the dome within. It is all of marble, and the floor is handsomely paved. The whole has a most grand and imposing effect. The centre, and each wing, are surmounted with domes.

8. The President's House, built of white freestone, on an eminence about a mile and a half west from the Capitol, presents a very handsome appearance. It is two stories high, with a front of 180 feet, and is surrounded by extensive grounds. On each side are the offices for the State, War, Navy, and Treasury Departments.

9. Alexandria, on the Virginia side of the Potomac, six miles south of Washington, has a considerable trade in flour and tobacco. Georgetown, separated from Washington by Rock Creek, is a thriving place, and has some commerce. It is the seat of Georgetown College.

Map No. 7. — On what river is Washington? Pc. — On which side is it? E. — On which side is Georgetown? E. — Alexandria? W. — What is the population of each of these places? The largest part of the District is on the Maryland side of the river, and forms Washington County. That on the other side forms Alexandria County.

104

VIRGINIA.

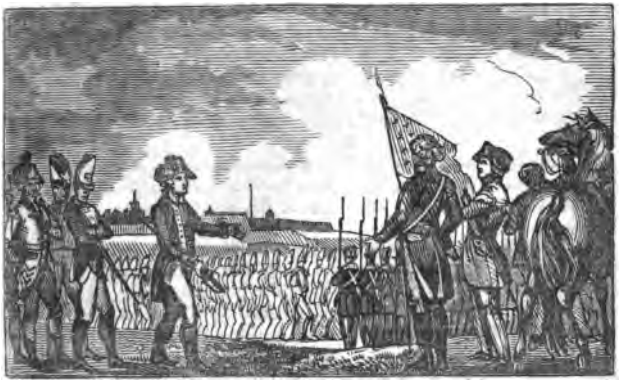
1. VIRGINIA is the largest state in the Union, and was the first settled of the English Colonies; from which circumstance it is often called "the ancient dominion."

2. Many eminent men were natives of Virginia; among whom, the illustrious Washington, with Jefferson, Madison, and Monroe, were all Presidents of the United States.

---

5. What is said of Washington? 6. Describe the Capitol. 7. Representatives' Hall. Senate Chamber. 8. President's House. 9. Alexandria. Georgetown.

Virginia. Q. — 1. What is Virginia? What is it often called, and why? 2. Who were natives of this state? 3. What mountains are



Surrender of Lord Cornwallis.

3. This state is traversed by the Alleghany Mountains and the Blue Ridge. The country east of the latter is generally level, while the western division is hilly and mountainous.

4. The productions of the north and the south, wheat, cotton, and tobacco, are all raised here. Indian corn is also extensively cultivated. Gold, copper, lead, iron, coal, and salt, abound. Several companies are at present employed in working the gold-mines.

5. The mineral-springs of Virginia are celebrated for their medicinal properties, and are much resorted to during the summer season. The principal of these are, the Warm, the Hot, and the White Sulphur springs.

6. Several important rail-roads and canals are already finished in this state, and others are advancing towards completion. By these, transportation and travelling will be rendered easy through a large portion of the state.

7. Virginia was among the leading states that distinguished themselves during the Revolutionary war. In the year 1781, the siege and surrender of Yorktown took place—when Lord Cornwallis and his army were made prisoners of war; an event that decided the hitherto doubtful contest, and secured the independence of the United States.

---

in Virginia? 4. What are the productions? What is said of gold, &c.? 5. Of the Mineral Springs? 6. Rail-roads? 7 What was Virginia?

8. The Natural Bridge over Cedar Creek, a small stream running into James river, consists of an enormous chasm, 200 feet in depth, nearly perpendicular, through which the creek passes. A huge rock is thrown across the chasm at the top, forming a natural bridge 60 feet in width, and covered with soil and trees.

Natural Bridge, Virginia.

9. Richmond, the capital of the state, stands on James river, 110 miles from its mouth. It is surrounded by a fertile country, and has a flourishing trade. Its exports are wheat, flour, tobacco, and coals.

10. Norfolk, on Elizabeth river, is the principal seaport. It has a fine harbour, and more foreign commerce than any other town in the state. At Gosport, in Portsmouth, opposite to Norfolk, is one of the most important Navy-Yards of the United States.

11. Petersburg, Fredericksburg, and Lynchburg, are each important towns. Wheeling, on the Ohio, is the channel of a great deal of business. Yorktown is celebrated for the surrender of Lord Cornwallis to the combined American and French armies, under General Washington Charlottesville is the seat of the University of Virginia. Monticello, two miles from this place, is noted for having been the residence of Thomas Jefferson, President of the United States.

12. In Westmoreland county, on the Potomac, is shown the spot where Washington was born. The house, which stood about half a mile from the river, is now in ruins. A simple stone, with the inscription, "Here, on the 11th of February,* 1732, GEORGE WASHINGTON was born," designates the consecrated spot.

13. Farther up the river, eight miles below Alexandria, is Mount Vernon, the former residence of that great and good man. Here repose his mortal remains, which have recently been deposited within a beautiful sarcophagus, the offering of private munificence.

What is said of Lord Cornwallis, &c.? 8. Describe the Natural Bridge. 9. Richmond. 10. Norfolk, &c. 11. Petersburg, and the other towns. For what is Yorktown celebrated? Of Charlottesville? 12. Where was Washington born? 13. Where is Mount Vernon, &c.?

* Old Style, which corresponds to the 22d of February, New Style, the day celebrated as the anniversary of Washington's birth.

Map No. 4. — What bounds Virginia on the north? Pa., Md. — On the south? N.-Ca. — East? A.-On. — West? Oo., Ky. — What river separates Virginia from Ohio? Oo. — Which from Maryland? Pc. — What river and mountains from Kentucky? B.-Sy., Cd. — What two ranges of mountains extend through Virginia? Ay., B.-Re. — How long and high are the Alleghany Mountains?

Map No. 7. — What Bay separates the two eastern counties from the rest of the state? Ce. — What two Capes at the entrance of Chesapeake Bay? Cs., Hy. — In what county is Richmond? Ho. — In which is Norfolk? Nk. — Lynchburg? Cl. — Wheeling? Oo. — Petersburg? De. — In which county is Washington's birth-place? Wd. — Mount Vernon? Fx. — The University of Virginia? Ae. — In what year did Cornwallis surrender? — What four rivers flow into Chesapeake Bay? Pc., Rk., Yk., Js. — Tell the length of each. — On what river is Richmond? Js. — Petersburg? Ax. — Lynchburg? Js. — Yorktown? Yk. — Fredericksburg? Rk. — Wheeling? Oo. — Charleston? Ka. — *See Map* 9. — A vast quantity of salt is manufactured at this place. What streams form James R.? Roanoke R.? York R.? &c.

106

Making Tar.

NORTH CAROLINA.

1. NORTH CAROLINA is an extensive but thinly peopled State. The country, for more than sixty miles from the coast, is a low, sandy plain, intersected with many swamps and inlets from the sea, and covered with extensive pine forests.

North Carolina. Q. — 1. What is North Carolina? Describe the

2. In the interior the surface is varied and hilly; and on the western frontier it ascends into mountains, whose summits are the most elevated of any in the Atlantic States; Black Mountain being 6476 feet in height.

3. The pine forests which occupy the lower part of the State, furnish one of the most important items of its trade, producing turpentine, tar, pitch, rosin, and lumber, in great abundance.

3. The commerce is limited for want of good harbours and there is no large commercial town. The trade is carried on chiefly through the ports of the neighbouring states. The exports are cotton, rice, tobacco, and the produce of the forests.

5. Gold, iron, and black lead, with some copper, are the principal minerals of North Carolina. The mines of the former are extensively worked, and are even considered of great national importance.

6. A branch of the United States' Mint has been established at Charlotte, for the purpose of coining the gold found in this and the neighbouring states.

7. *Raleigh, the capital, is near the west bank of Neuse river. Here was the State House, containing Canova's celebrated statue of Washington, which was destroyed by fire in 1831. A new and splendid granite building has since been erected.

Wilmington, on Cape Fear river, 70 miles from the sea, is the largest town in North Carolina. It carries on an active trade with the Northern and Middle States, and also with the West Indies. This place is the southern termination of an extensive line of rail-road.

9. Fayetteville, at the head of steam-boat navigation, on Cape Fear river, contains a United States' armory. Newbern is situated at the junction of Neuse and Trent rivers. Salem and Charlotte are small but thriving places. Chapel Hill, about 30 miles from Raleigh, contains the University of North Carolina.

Map No. 4. — What bounds North Carolina on the north? Va. — On the south? S.-Ca., Ga. — East? A.-On. — West? Te. — What mountain interior. What high mountain is in this state? 3. What occupies the lower part of the state? What do they produce? 4. What is said of the commerce? What are the exports? 5. What are the principal minerals? 6. What is established at Charlotte? 7. Which is the capital? 8. What is said of Newbern? Wilmington? 9. Fayetteville, and other towns?

---

* *Raleigh*, Raw'-le.

tains extend through the west part of North Carolina? Ay., B.-Re. — Which is the highest mountain? Bk. — How high is it? What three capes on the coast? Hs., Lt., Fr.

Map No. 7. — What two sounds in North Carolina? Ae., Po. — How long are they? What two rivers flow into Albemarle Sound? Re. Cn. — Which two into Pamlico Sound? Tr., Ne. — In what direction do the Cape Fear, Lumber, Yadkin, and Catawba rivers flow? How long are they? How far are Chowan, Roanoke, Tar, and Cape Fear rivers navigable, and for what kind of vessels? How many inhabitants have Wilmington, Newbern, Fayetteville, Raleigh, Charlotte, and Edenton? On what river is Halifax? Edenton? Tarboro'? Louisville? In what county is the University of North Carolina? Oe. — In what year was the battle of Guilford Court-House fought?

— 107 —

Battle of Eutaw Springs.

SOUTH CAROLINA.

1. This state lies nearly in the form of a triangle between North Carolina and Georgia. It is about half the size of the latter, and is similar to the adjoining states in climate, soil and productions.

2. Cotton is the great staple of South Carolina, but rice, tobacco, tar, pitch, turpentine, and lumber, are also amongst

---

South Carolina. Q. — 1. What is said of this state? How does it compare with Georgia? 2. What is the great staple? What are its

its products. Wheat, Indian-corn, and Indigo, are raised for home consumption.

3. The commerce is extensive and valuable. It consists in the export of agricultural products of the state, and of large quantities of those raised in Georgia and North Carolina.

4. The Charleston and Hamburg rail-road, 136 miles in length, is one of the most important works of the kind in the United States yet constructed, and has already greatly benefited the trade of Charleston.

5. The white residents, especially of the lower and middle sections of the state, are chiefly wealthy planters, who, in general, have large incomes, and are distinguished for their intelligence and refinement.

6. South Carolina was an illustrious actor and sufferer in the war of independence. Her capital was for a considerable period in possession of the enemy; and the battles of the Cowpens, King's Mountain, and Eutaw Springs, were among the most important that took place during the revolutionary contest.

7. Charleston stands at the junction of Ashley and Cooper rivers; it is the principal city of South Carolina, and the largest in the Atlantic states south of the Potomac river. Its commerce is considerable, and is annually increasing. The citizens are noted for their hospitality.

8. Columbia, the capital of the state, is regularly laid out, with very wide streets, and is a neatly built town. Georgetown, on Winyaw Bay, Camden, on the Wateree river, and Hamburg, on the Savannah, opposite Augusta, are amongst the principal towns of the state.

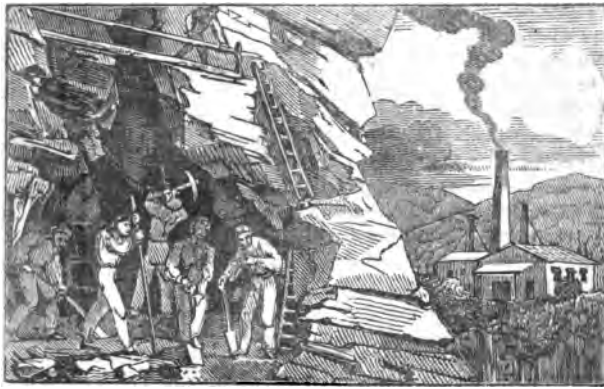
Map No. 8. — What bounds South Carolina on the north? N.-Ca. — On the west? Ga. — East? A.-On. — What river separates it from Georgia? Sh. — What rivers flow into Winyaw Bay? G.-Pe, Ww. — What river south of Winyaw Bay? Se. — What rivers form the Santee? We.* Ce. — The Congaree? Sa., Bd. — What rivers flow into St. Helena sound? Eo., Ce. — What are the lengths of all the foregoing rivers?—How many miles, and for what kinds of vessels, are the Waccamaw, Great Pedee, Wateree, and Congaree rivers navigable? — What is the population of Charleston? — Of Columbia? — Camden and Georgetown? — In what year was the battle of Fort Moultrie fought? — Charleston? — Monk's Corner? — Gates defeated? — King's Mountain? — Cowpens? — Hobkirk's Hill and Eutaw Springs? — In what district is Charleston? Cn. — Columbia? Rd. — Camden? Kw. — Which is the most northern district? — Most southern? — Eastern? — Western? — Near the junction of what rivers is Columbia?

---

other products? 3. What is said of the commerce? 4. Of the Charleston and Hamburg rail-road? 5. Of the white residents? 6. What was South Carolina in the war of independence? 7. Describe Charleston. 8. Columbia, &c.

* The Wateree river begins, and the Catawba ends, at the mouth of Big Wateree Creek.

— 108 —



Gold Mining.

GEORGIA.

1. Georgia is, next to Virginia, the largest of the Southern States; it was the last settled of the thirteen original colonies, and is now rapidly increasing in wealth, population, and importance.

2. The great staple of Georgia is cotton, of which the annual crop exceeds 300,000 bales. The other products are rice, lumber, pitch, tar, and turpentine, which are all exported to a large amount. Some tobacco is likewise raised in the northern, and sugar in the southern parts of the state.

3. The cotton produced is of two kinds, the sea island, and upland. The former is double the value of the other, and is raised only in small quantities on the islands that lie along the sea-coast.

4. The principal mineral is gold, which is found in the northern part of the state, and engages the labour of numerous individuals. Iron and copper also occur. Several rail-roads are now in progress in this state.

Georgia. Q.—1. What is said of Georgia? 2. What is the great staple of the state? What is the amount of the annual crop? What are the other products? 3. What is said of cotton? 4. What is the

5. Savannah, on the river of the same name, and 18 miles from the sea, is the chief commercial depôt of Georgia. It suffered much from the great fire of 1820; but it has recovered from that shock, and is, at present, one of the most flourishing cities in the southern states.

Milledgeville, the capital of the state, is situated on the Oconee river. It is a place of some trade, and contains the State House.

6. Augusta is the interior emporium of the state. It is connected with Charleston, by the Charleston and Hamburg rail-road; and with Savannah, by the Savannah river. It is well built, and contains some handsome public edifices. A bridge 1200 feet long across the Savannah connects it with Hamburg.

7. Columbus, on the Chattahoochee river, and Macon, on the Ocmulgee, are amongst the most flourishing places in Georgia. Darien, Brunswick, and St. Mary's, on the sea-coast, are improving towns.

Map No. 8. — What bounds Georgia on the north? N.-Ca. — On the south? Fa. — East? S.-Ca., A.-On. — West? Aa. — What river separates Georgia from South Carolina? Sa. — What river separates it in part from Alabama? Ce. — What river in part from Florida? S.-Ms. — What five rivers flow into the Atlantic ocean? Sh., Oe., Aa., Sa., S.-Ms. — What rivers form the Alatamaha? Oe., Oe. — What rivers form the Apalachicola? Ce., Ft. — What is the population of Savannah? Augusta? Columbus? Macon? In what counties are these towns? Cm., Rd., Me., Bb. — In what county is Milledgeville? Bn. — To what towns, and how far from the sea, do steam-boats ascend the Savannah? Oconee? Ocmulgee? Chattahoochee? and Flint rivers? Which is the largest island? Cd. — What extensive swamp in Ware county? Oe. — When was the battle of Savannah fought?

109

FLORIDA.

1. Florida was for nearly 200 years a Spanish Province, and was ceded by Spain, in 1819, to the American government. In 1822, East and West Florida were formed into a territory.

2. The surface of the country is level, and not much elevated above the sea. The soil along the streams is very fertile, and well suited to the production of cotton, rice, to-

---

principal mineral? What are the other minerals? What is said of rail-roads? 5. Describe Savannah, Milledgeville. 6. Augusta, &c. 7. Columbus, and the other towns.

Florida. Q. — 1. What was Florida? When was it ceded to the United States? When was it formed into a territory? 2. What is said

bacco, sugar, and corn. Oranges, figs, dates, and pomegranates, are among its fruits. Indigo was at one time extensively cultivated, but is now abandoned.

3. But a small part of Florida is under cultivation. It is better suited for a grazing than an agricultural district. Vast herds of cattle, horses, and swine, range over its pastures.

4. Live-oak timber, so valuable in ship-building, is one of the most important products of Florida; and, with cedar logs, boards, scantling, &c., are cut to a considerable extent. Cotton, and the other products of the soil, with hides, tallow, and bees'-wax, form the chief articles of export.

5. The Seminole Indians occupied, until lately, the Everglades, a flat, marshy district, in the southern part of the territory. From this region the savages sallied forth, committing numerous depredations upon the white inhabitants. In 1842 they were very nearly extirpated or removed, after a contest of several years' duration.

6. St. Augustine, 260 miles south of Charleston, is the oldest town in the United States, and is built in the Spanish style. Its climate is delightful, and it is often resorted to by invalids in quest of health.

7. Tallahassee, the capital of Florida, is 21 miles north of St. Mark's, on Apalachee Bay. It contains the Capitol, and several churches and banks. St. Mark's, Apalachicola, and St. Joseph's, are the chief commercial places of Middle Florida. They are all thriving towns. Pensacola is important as a naval station for United States' ships of war.

Map No. 4. — What bounds Florida on the north? Ga., Aa., — On the east? A.-On. — West and south? G.-Mo. — What Cape is on the east coast? Cl. — What Capes on the west? S.-Bs., Rs., Se. — What Bays on the west? Pa., Ae., Vr., Ta., Cm. — What are the two chief lakes? Ge., Oe.

Map No. 8. — What river separates Florida from Alabama? Po. — What from Georgia? S.-Ms. — What rivers flow into Pensacola Bay? Ea., B.-Wr., Y.-Wr. — What into Choctawhatchie Bay? Ce. — Into Apalachee Bay? Oy., Oa. — Into Vacassar Bay? Se. — What river flows into the Atlantic Ocean north of St. Augustine? S.-Js. — What into the Gulf of Mexico at Apalachicola? Aa. — Tell the lengths of the seven rivers that have figures attached to them. — What is the population of Tallahassee? — St. Augustine? — Pensacola? — In what counties are these towns? Ln., S.-Jn., Ea.

---

of the surface of the country? Of the soil? Of its productions? 3. For what is it better suited? 4. What is cut to a considerable extent? Which are the chief articles of export? 5. What is said of the Seminole Indians? What do they commit? 6. Describe St. Augustine. 7. Tallahassee, and the other towns.

110

Steam-boat loading with cotton.

ALABAMA.

1. Alabama is remarkable for its rapid growth in population, wealth, and general prosperity. In the year 1810, its inhabitants were less than 10,000 in number; and now the State contains nearly sixty times that amount.

2. Cotton is the chief agricultural product; the crop of which amounts in value annually to about fifteen millions of dollars. Corn, the principal grain, is raised all over the state, and some tobacco is cultivated in the northern counties.

3. Several useful works of internal improvement have been lately constructed, and others are in active progress. The principal of these will connect the most fertile districts in the interior with the Gulf of Mexico, and add greatly to the wealth and prosperity of the State.

4. The various rivers which traverse both the northern and southern sections of Alabama admit of an extensive steam-boat navigation, by which the valuable productions of the interior

Alabama. Q. — 1. For what is Alabama remarkable? How many inhabitants were there in 1810? How many now? 2. What is the chief product? What are also cultivated? 3. What is said of works of internal improvement? 4. For what are the rivers well adapted?

State are conveyed to its great commercial markets, Mobile and New Orleans.

5. The people of Alabama were greatly harassed during the late war by the depredations of the Creek and Seminole Indians; they were however, signally defeated, in several desperate engagements of which Tohopeka was the principal.

6. Mobile is a flourishing commercial town at the head of Mobile Bay; it was the first settled place in the state, and is the chief depôt for its produce. Tuscaloosa, the capital, is a town of considerable trade: it contains the State House, and the University of Alabama.

7. Montgomery, near the head of the Alabama river, Wetumpka on the Coosa, and Gainesville on the Tombigby, all in the centre of the state, are thriving towns. Florence, Tuscumbia, Decatur, and Huntsville, in the valley of the Tennessee river, are each places of some note.

Map No. 8.—What bounds Alabama on the north? Te.—The east? Ga.—The west? Mi.—What territory and gulf on the south? Fa., Mo.—What river separates Alabama from Florida? Po.—What river flows into Mobile Bay? Me.—What two rivers form Mobile river? Ty., Aa.—What rivers form the Alabama? Ca., Ta.—What river flows through the northern part of the state? Te.—On what river is Tuscaloosa? B.-Wr.—How long is the Tombigby? Alabama? Coosa? Tallapoosa? What is the population of Mobile? Wetumpka? Huntsville? Tuscaloosa? Florence? Montgomery? In what county is Mobile? Me.—Tuscaloosa? Ta.—Florence? Le.—Huntsville? Mn.—Wetumpka? Ca.—How many miles are the following rivers navigable for steam-boats: viz. Tennessee? Tombigby? Black Warrior? Alabama? In what year was the battle of Tohopeka fought? On what river is Florence? Decatur? &c.

111

MISSISSIPPI.

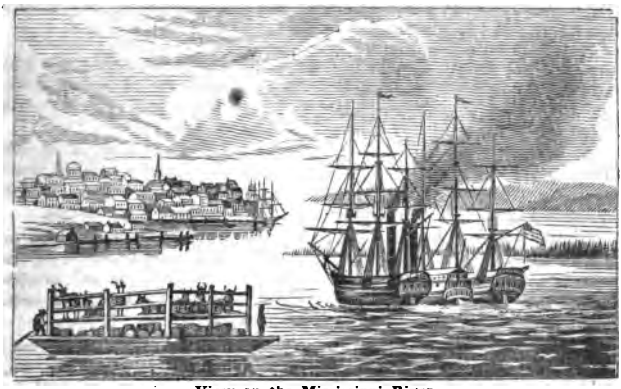
1. This state, like Alabama, is remarkable for the great increase of its population. Emigration for the last few years has been so extensive, that the number of the inhabitants between the years 1830 and 1840, was very nearly trebled.

2. Cotton is the chief production of Mississippi, and i employs nearly all the industry of the people. The crop i about 350,000 bales, which is annually increasing. Tobacco

---

5. By whom were the people harassed? What is said of them? 6. Describe Mobile. Tuscaloosa. 7. Montgomery. Wetumpka and other towns.

Mississippi. Q.—1. What is this state remarkable for? What has taken place since 1830? 2. What is the chief production? What



View on the Mississippi River.

and indigo were formerly cultivated, but are now abandoned. Indian corn is raised to some extent; but, in general, the quantity is not sufficient to supply the state.

3. Some sugar has been produced in the southern counties, but the cane does not appear to thrive. Sweet potatoes, with the peach, fig, and other fruits, grow in abundance. Several important rail-roads have been projected, and some of them are in progress.

4. Mississippi is now entirely under the control of a white population. The northern and central parts of the state were lately occupied by the Choctaw and Chickasaw Indians; but these have nearly all removed to the Indian territory.

5. Jackson, on the west bank of the Pearl river, is the capital of the state. It is finely situated, and contains the State House, Penitentiary, and other public buildings.

6. Natchez is the largest and most important place in the state. Though nearly 300 miles above New Orleans, it carries on a considerable direct commerce with the Atlantic ports of the United States. Its river and inland trade is very extensive, and great numbers of steamboats and other craft are constantly arriving and departing. The principal part of the city is built on a high bluff or bank, 300 feet above the surface of the Mississippi, and on the left bank of the river.

---

were formerly cultivated? Of Indian corn? 3. Of sugar? What is said of the rail-roads? 4. Of Mississippi? The northern and central parts? 5. Describe Jackson. 6. Natchez. What of its commerce?

7. Vicksburg is on the left bank of the Mississippi river, 520 miles from its mouth. It is a flourishing place, and, like Natchez, carries on a direct trade with the eastern sections of the Union. Ships of large burthen are brought up to the town, from the Gulf of Mexico, by means of the powerful steam tow-boats used on the Mississippi river.

8. Among other thriving places in the state, are Grand Gulf, on the Mississippi river, and Port Gibson, 7 miles from it, in the interior Manchester, or Yazoo city, on the Yazoo, Grenada, on the Yalabusha, and Aberdeen and Columbus, on the Tombigby river. The latter is the north-eastern emporium of the state.

Map No. 8. — What state bounds Mississippi on the north? Te. — On the south? La., G.-Mo. — On the east? Aa. — On the west? As., La. — What river separates it from Louisiana and Arkansas? Mi. — On what river is Natchez? Jackson? Grand Gulf? Vicksburg? Manchester, or Yazoo city? Grenada? Columbus? — What is the population of each of these towns? — How many miles from the sea do steam-boats ascend the Tombigby? Tallahatchie? Yalabusha? Big Black? Pearl? — How far is Vicksburg from the sea? What kind of vessels ascend to it? In what county is Natchez? As. — Vicksburg? Wn. — Jackson? Hs. — Columbus? Ls. — Grand Gulf? Ce.

112

LOUISIANA.

1. The territory comprising this state, together with the vast region lying west of the Mississippi river, was formerly all called Louisiana, and was purchased from France by the United States' Government in 1803.

2. The country bordering the Mississippi in this state, is generally lower than the surface of the water, and a large portion of it is protected by levées, or embankments of earth, nearly 200 miles along the shores of the river.

3. The great staples of Louisiana are sugar and cotton, but rice, corn, and tobacco, are also cultivated. A vast amount of capital is invested in the sugar business, in lands, slaves, &c., and the produce of that article has increased tenfold within twenty years.

4. During the late war, a powerful British army invaded this state;

7. Vicksburg? How are ships brought up to this place? 8. The other towns?

Louisiana. Q. — 1. What is said of the territory comprising this state? When was it purchased? 2. What is said of the country? 3. What are the great staples? 4. What took place during the late

Battle of New Orleans.

but they were totally defeated by the American army, under General Jackson, January 8th, 1815, and the country was abandoned by them shortly afterwards.

5. New Orleans, the capital of the state, is on the left bank of the Mississippi river, about 100 miles from its mouth. The inland and foreign trade of this city is very great. From 1500 to 2000 flat-boats, 50 to 60 steam-boats, and a forest of the masts of sea vessels, may be seen nearly always lying along its levée.

6. The produce that arrives at New Orleans annually from the various states, &c., watered by the Mississippi river and its tributary streams, is estimated to amount in value from fifty millions to seventy-five millions of dollars; among which, cotton, flour, sugar, tobacco, pork, hemp, and lead, are the principal staples.

7. The city is built on level ground, and is several feet below the surface of the river at high water. It contains a number of public buildings, some of which are splendid structures. The population during the winter season is from 40,000 to 50,000 greater than at other periods.

8. The towns in Louisiana are all small; some of them, however, hav considerable trade. Donaldsonville, Plaquemine, Baton Rouge, an Bayou Sara, are on the Mississippi river, and Alexandria, Natchitoches and Shreve Port, on Red river.

9. The great Raft, an immense accumulation of timber, which pre vented navigation to the upper parts of Red river, has been lately cut through, and steam-boats can now ascend that stream several hundred miles further than formerly.

---

war? When were they defeated? 5. Describe New Orleans. 6. What of the produce? 7. How is the city built? What of the population? 8. The other towns? 9. The great Raft?

Map No. 8. — By what is Louisiana bounded on the north? As., Mi. — On the east? Mi. — South? G.-Mo. — West? Ts. — What rivers separate Louisiana from Mississippi? Mi., Pl. — What river from Texas? Sc. — What two lakes are in the eastern part of the state? Pn., Be. — What two in the southern part? Cu., Mu. — How long is the Mississippi? Red river? Washita? Sabine? Calcasiu? Bayou Macon? Bartholomew? Some rivers are termed Bayous in Louisiana. What is the population of New Orleans? Donaldsonville? Baton Rouge? Alexandria? Natchitoches? In what parishes are these situated? N.-Os., An., E.-B.-Re., Rs., Ns. — In what year was the battle of New Orleans fought?

113

WESTERN STATES.

1. The Western States comprise Ohio, Kentucky, Tennessee, Indiana, Illinois, Michigan, Missouri, and Arkansas, the organized territories of Wisconsin and Iowa, together with the Indian Territory, and the unorganized territories of Missouri and Oregon.

2. From the great extent of this region, its climate possesses considerable variety of temperature; the winters are more variable, and the quantity of snow is less than in the same parallels in the Atlantic States.

3. The most striking features of this vast country are its

Western States. Q. — 1. What do the Western States comprise? 2. What is said of the climate? The winters? 3. The most striking

numerous rivers, towering forests, and extensive prairies. The latter are wide spreading plains, stretching farther than the eye can reach, destitute, for the most part, of trees, and covered with tall grass and flowering shrubs.

4. That part of this region lying between the Rocky and Alleghany Mountains is often called the Mississippi Valley, from its being chiefly watered by that great river, and its tributary streams. These afford immense facilities for internal commerce, and, in fact, constitute it one of the best watered districts on the face of the globe.

5. There are, at present, on the western waters between 300 and 400 steam-boats, many hundreds of arks or flat-boats, besides a multitude of smaller craft constantly engaged in the commerce of the country, and immense quantities of produce of various kinds are annually conveyed by them to New Orleans.

6. Lead, iron, coal, salt, and lime, abound in the Western States, and, probably, no region of equal extent in the world exhibits such a combination of mineral wealth and fertility of soil, united with such rare facilities of transportation.

7. Cotton and tobacco are produced in the southern districts, while wheat, Indian-corn, hemp, oats, and barley, are extensively cultivated in the other parts. Cattle, hogs, and horses, are raised in abundance, and constitute an important part of the wealth of the people of these states.

8. A considerable portion of the western country has been recently settled; but the cheapness of land, the fertility of the soil, and the general character of the climate, are causing a tide of emigration to flow, which is filling up the country with unexampled rapidity.

9. A laudable zeal is manifested in the cause of education. The number of common schools is rapidly increasing, while colleges and the higher seminaries of learning are also multiplying.

10. The population of the Western States and Territories amounts to more than five millions, of which the negro slaves constitute about one-eleventh part. Slavery is prevalent in Tennessee, Kentucky, Missouri, and Arkansas, but does not exist in the other states and territories.

---

features? What are prairies? 4. What is part of this region called? Why? What do they afford? 5. What is said of steam-boats, arks, &c.? What is conveyed by them? 6. What is said of lead, iron, &c.? 7. What is produced in the southern districts? In other parts? What of cattle, &c.? 8. What has been recently settled? What is filling up the country? 9. What is manifested? Of common schools, colleges, &c.? 10. Of the population? Where is slavery prevalent?

— 114 —

11. Nearly all the Indians in the United States are found within the limits of this quarter of the Union. Some of these are partially civilized, but a considerable number still remain unchanged; and while the settlements, arts, and improvements of white men are narrowing their boundaries, they still retain their original savage character and condition.

Indians viewing the improvements of white men.

12. The Creeks, Choctaws, Cherokees, and other tribes now resident in the Indian Territory, are under the protection of the General Government, and increase steadily in population and prosperity; while the Sioux, Riccarees, Black Feet, and other rude, roving bands of the Upper Missouri, are decreasing rapidly in number and importance.

13. Within a few years, the small-pox has swept them by thousands from the face of the earth; and tribes but lately numerous and powerful are now reduced to a few individuals.

Map No. 4. — Which is the largest of the Western States? Mi. — The smallest? Ia.—Which is the most northern? Mn. — Southern As. — Eastern? Oo. — Western? Mi. — Which is the largest of th western territories? On. — The most northern and western? On. — The most eastern? Wn. — Most southern? In. — The western states and territories extend from latitude 33 degrees to about 54½. How much latitude then do they include? They extend from about 4 degrees of longitude to 56 degrees west from Washington. How much

---

11. What is said of the Indians? What is narrowing their boundaries? What do they still retain? 12. What of the Creeks, Choctaws, &c.? The Sioux, Riccarees, &c.? 13. What is said of the small-pox?

longitude do they include? What states and territories have the Mississippi river for their western boundary? Te., Ky., Is., Wn. — Which have the Mississippi for their eastern boundary? As., Mi., Ia.—Which states have the Ohio for their southern boundary? Oo., Ia., Is. — What state has the Ohio for its northern boundary? Ky. — Which has the Ohio for its western boundary? Va. — How many miles is it by the scale from the mouth of Columbia river eastward to the Rocky Mountains? How many miles is it from the Rocky Mountains to Lake Michigan, measured on the parallel of 44 degrees? How many miles it from the head of the Arkansas to the head of the Alleghany river? This is about the greatest extent that can be measured through the centre of the Mississippi valley east and west. How far is it from the head to the mouth of the Mississippi river in a straight line? How far is it from the mouth of the Ohio river to the northern boundary of Illinois? and from the same point, to the east boundary of Kentucky? The states of Missouri and Indiana are about the same extent from north to south. How many miles is it?

115

OHIO.

1. This flourishing state, though settled so lately as the year 1789, already ranks next to Pennsylvania in the number of its inhabitants; and its increase in wealth and importance is unequalled in the history of any other country.

2. The southern section of Ohio is uneven and hilly; the

Ohio. Q. — 1. When was this state settled? How does it rank? 2. What is said of it? How is it intersected? 3. What are the staple

remainder is generally level, with extensive prairies in many parts. The whole state is intersected with numerous rivers, which afford a vast amount of water-power for mills, manufactories, &c.

3. The staple products are corn and wheat; but rye, oats, buckwheat, and tobacco, are extensively cultivated. Orchards flourish here, and produce the finest apples, and all the fruit of the Western States, in perfection. Horses, cattle, and hogs, are abundant, and thousands are every year driven to the eastern markets.

4. Iron and coal are found in vast quantities, and salt springs are numerous. Manufactures are carried to a greater extent than in any other western state. They consist of cotton and woollen goods, with flour, paper, and steam machinery.

5. The Ohio state canals were projected about the year 1823, and are, so far as completed, in successful operation. The influence of these works has, in many cases, enhanced four-fold the value of private property in and near the places where they are located, besides increasing greatly the commerce of the state. Various other canals and rail-roads are in the course of construction.

6. Columbus, the capital of the state is on the left bank of the Scioto river, 100 miles from the Ohio, and is situated in a rich and beautiful district. It is regularly laid out, and contains several public buildings, churches, &c.

7. Cincinnati is on the right bank of the Ohio river, 520 miles from its mouth. The growth of this city has been exceedingly rapid, and has kept pace with the increase of the state. It is regularly laid out: many of its private dwellings are elegant, its public edifices are numerous, and some of them are handsome specimens of architecture.

8. This city carries on an immense trade both up and down the Ohio river, and the Miami canal, which joins the former at this place. Pork is one of the chief articles of trade; besides which, wheat, flour, whiskey, and a great variety of manufactured articles, are exported.

9. Zanesville is an important place, and is noted for its flour-mills and various manufacturing establishments. Cleveland is the principal port on Lake Erie, and is a place of extensive business. Steubenville, Dayton, Portsmouth, Toledo, and Sandusky, are all thriving and flourishing towns.

---

products? What is said of horses, &c.? 4. Iron and coal? Manufactures? 5. State canals? What has been their influence? Other canals and rail-roads? 6. Describe Columbus. 7. Cincinnati. How is it laid out? 8. What does it carry on? What are exported? 9. Describe Zanesville. Cleveland. Steubenville, and the other towns.

Map No. 9.—What bounds Ohio on the north? Mn., L.-Ee.—South? Ky., Va.—East? Va., Pa.—West? Ia.—What river forms its south boundary? Oo.—What rivers flow into Lake Erie? Me., Sy., Hn., Ca.—Which flow into the Ohio river? Mi., L.-Mi, So., Mm.—What is the population of Cincinnati? Zanesville? Cleveland? Steubenville? Columbus? Chillicothe? Dayton? Portsmouth? In what counties are these places? Hn., Mm., Ca., Jn., Fn., Rs., My., So.—How long is the Ohio? Maumee? Miami? Scioto? Muskingum? What road extends through the state from east t west? Nl.—On what rivers are Zanesville, Dayton, and the other chie towns?

116

Early Settlers attacked by Indians.

KENTUCKY.

1. This state was first settled by the celebrated Daniel Boone and others, in 1769. It formed for a time a part of Virginia, but in 1790 a separation took place, and two years afterwards Kentucky was admitted into the Union.

2. The surface in the eastern section of the state is hilly and undulating, but in the western it is level, occasionally extending into prairies. Much of the soil of Kentucky is celebrated for its fertility.

3. The principal products are hemp, tobacco, wheat, and

Kentucky. Q.—1. By whom was this state settled? What did it form? What took place? 2. What is said of the surface? Of the

Indian corn. Cattle, horses, and hogs, are raised to a great extent, and numbers are annually carried into the neighbouring states.

4. Salt springs or licks are numerous, from which large quantities of salt are made. Great numbers of the bones of the mammoth have also been found in some of them.

5. There are several extensive caves found in this state that are great curiosities, of which the Mammoth Cave is the most remarkable, having been explored to a distance of several miles from its mouth. The earth in some of these caves is strongly impregnated with nitre or saltpetre, and considerable quantities of that article were made from it during the late war.

6. Until the year 1795 the people suffered greatly from Indian hostilities; many had fallen in battle in their fields or houses, by the hands of their savage foes; but since that period, Kentucky has advanced rapidly in population, wealth, and importance.

7. Frankfort, the capital of the state, stands on the right bank of the Kentucky river, 70 miles from its mouth. Lexington, the oldest town in the state, is 25 miles east of Frankfort, in the midst of a well-cultivated district. It is the seat of Transylvania University.

8. Louisville, the principal city of Kentucky, is on the left bank of the Ohio, 370 miles from its mouth. It carries on an extensive trade. Many thousands of flat-boats arrive here, yearly, from all parts of the upper Ohio, and steam-boats are daily arriving and departing in every direction. The town is well built, and regularly laid out; with spacious straight, and well-paved streets, running parallel with the river, intersected by others meeting them at right angles. Louisville was founded in the year 1780; in 1828, it was incorporated as a city.

9. Maysville is a flourishing commercial place. Newport and Covington, both opposite Cincinnati, are thriving towns, and contain some manufactures of cotton-bagging. These towns are all on the Ohio river

---

Map No. 9. — What states bound Kentucky on the north? Is., Ia., Oo. — South? Te. — East? Va. — West? Mi., As. — What river forms its northern boundary? Oo. — Its western? Mi. — What river and mountains are its eastern boundary? B.-Sy., Cd. — Which are the principal rivers in the state? Te., Cd., Gn., Ky., Lg. — Tell the lengths of all these. On what river is Frankfort? Louisville? Maysville? Covington? What is the population of each of these towns? Of Lexington? Which is the most northern county? Be. — Eastern? Fd. — Western? Hn.

---

soil? 3. The principal products? Cattle, &c.? 4. Of salt springs? What has been found in some of them? 5. What is said of the caves? Of the earth in them? 6. Of the people? 7. Describe Frankfort, Lexington. 8. Louisville. 9. Maysville, and other towns.

— 117 —

Tennessee Iron Works—View of the Cumberland Mountains.

TENNESSEE.

1. THE country comprising the state of Tennessee, was originally a part of North Carolina. In 1790, that state ceded it to the General Government. In the same year it was organized into the Territory south-west of the Ohio river; and in 1796 became an independent state.

2. West Tennessee comprises that part of the state lying between the Mississippi and Tennessee rivers. Middle Tennessee extends eastward to the Cumberland mountains; and East Tennessee is situated between the latter and the eastern limits of the state.

3. The climate is mild, pleasant, and salubrious, and the soil generally fertile and productive.

Agriculture is the chief employment of the people. Cotton and tobacco are extensively cultivated; besides Indian corn, wheat, rye, hemp, &c.

4. The mountains contain numerous caverns, which abound in nitrous earth, from which saltpetre is made. Iron, gold, coal, and salt,

Tennessee. Q.—1. What was Tennessee originally? When did it become an independent state? 2. Where is West Tennessee? Middle Tennessee? East Tennessee? 3. What is said of the climate? Of agriculture? 4. What do the mountains contain? What are the

are the chief minerals. The iron made in the state gives employment to a number of furnaces, rolling-mills, and nail-works.

5. Nashville, the capital, is on the left bank of Cumberland river, 200 miles from its mouth; it is situated in a fertile and picturesque district, and contains a number of elegant public and private buildings. The trade is active and extensive. Knoxville, on the Holston river, was the first seat of government of the state.

6. Franklin and Columbia, south of Nashville, Bolivar on the Hatchee nd Memphis on the Mississippi river, are among the most flourishing owns in Tennessee.

Map No. 8. — What state bounds Tennessee on the north? Ky. — On the south? Mi., Aa., Ga. — East? N.-Ca. — West? As. — What river separates this state from Arkansas? Mi. — Which are the two principal rivers? Te., Cd. — Name the head branches of the Tennessee? Pl., Ch., Hn., F.-Bd. — Tell how long, all these rivers are? How many miles from the sea do steam-boats navigate the Hatchee Cumberland, and Holston rivers? To what towns do they ascend? Br., Co., Ke. — What mountains separate Tennessee from North Carolina? Ay. — The Alleghany mountains, in this part, are distinguished by the local names of Stone Mt., Smoky Mt., &c. — What mountains between the Tennessee and Cumberland rivers? Cd. — How high are they? What is the population of Nashville? Memphis? Knoxville? Columbia? In what counties are each of these towns? Dn., Sy., Kx., My.

— 118 —

MICHIGAN.

1. This state comprises two large peninsulas, one of which is situated between Lakes Huron and Michigan, and the other between Lakes Superior and Michigan.

2. The former contains the white population of the state, while the latter is inhabited almost solely by a few Indians, and is but little known.

3. The settled part of Michigan is level, fertile, and highly productive. Large crops of wheat, corn, oats, and barley, are obtained; while apples, pears, and other fruits, grow in abundance.

4. The great lakes by which Michigan is surrounded, are

---

chief minerals? What is said of iron? 5. Describe Nashville. Knoxville. 6. Franklin, and other towns.

Michigan. Q. — 1. What does this state comprise? How are they situated? 2. What does the former contain? The latter? 3. What is said of the settled part? What are obtained? 4 How is Michigan

Perry's Victory.

navigable by vessels of the largest size, and even naval battles have been fought on them. Perry's victory was gained within the limits of this state, September, 1813.

5. Numerous steam-boats and other craft are constantly employed in the trade of the country, and in conveying emigrants from the east to the west.

6. Detroit, the capital, is on the river of the same name; it is admirably situated for commerce, of which its share is already extensive. The city is regularly laid out, and contains a number of handsome public buildings. The population is now four times greater than in 1830.

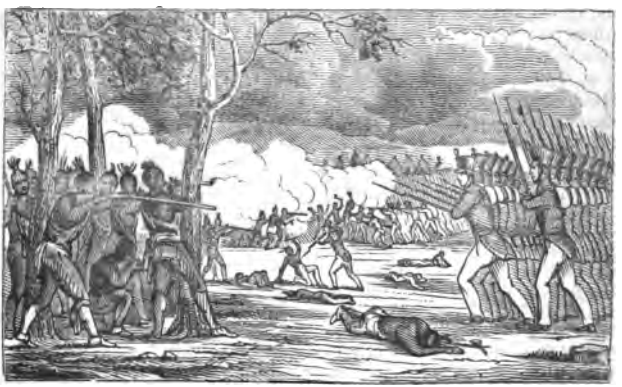
7. Monroe City, near the mouth of the River Raisin, is an important and thriving place; it is a great thoroughfare for emigrants going to the interior of the state. Mackinaw, on an island at the entrance to Lake Michigan, and St. Mary's, at Fort Brady, are the most northern settlements in the state; the former was long noted for its fur trade, which of late years has been on the decline. Mount Clemens, Tecumseh, and Ann-Arbour, in the eastern, and Niles and St. Joseph, in the western section of Michigan, are all flourishing towns.

Map No. 4. — What lake bounds Michigan on the north? Sr. — On the east? Hn. — West? Mn. — What states on the south? Ia., Oo. — What rivers separate Michigan from Wisconsin? Ml., Me. — What country east of Michigan? U.-Ca. — What territory on the west? Wn. — Where is Mackinaw? Fort Brady?

---

surrounded? What has taken place on them? 5. What is said of steamboats, &c.? 6. Describe Detroit. 7. Monroe city. Mackinaw &c. Mount Clemens, and other towns.

Map No. 7. — What lake lies between Lakes Huron and Erie? S.-Cr. — What river unites it to Lake Huron? S.-Cr. — Which to Lake Erie? Dt. — What is the population of Detroit? Monroe? Niles? To what place on the St. Joseph's river do steam-boats ascend? How far from the sea is it? On what river is Grand Haven? Palmer? Saginaw?



Battle of Tippecanoe.

INDIANA.

1. INDIANA is the smallest in extent of the Western States; it is similar to Ohio in soil and surface, but contains a larger proportion of prairie land.

2. The labour of the farmer is here amply repaid with luxuriant crops of wheat, Indian corn, rye, and oats, which, with beef, pork, &c., are the chief articles of exportation.

3. The mineral resources of Indiana have been but little attended to; but coal, iron, lime, and salt, are known to abound, and Epsom salts are found in a cave near Corydon.

4. An extensive system of canals and rail-roads has been adopted by this state, which, when completed, will be of immense advantage to the inhabitants.

5. The people of Indiana were greatly harassed by the Indians un-

Indiana. Q. — 1. What is Indiana? In what is it similar to Ohio? 2. How is the farmer repaid? 3. What are the minerals? 4. What of canals and rail-roads? 5. By whom were the people harassed?

til the year 1811, when General Harrison defeated the Shawanese Prophet, after a gallant contest, near the mouth of the Tippecanoe river.

6. Indianapolis, the capital of the state, stands on a fine plain near the White river, and is laid out with much taste and regularity. It contains several handsome public buildings.

7. New Albany, on the Ohio river, is the largest town in the state; it carries on a considerable trade. Madison and Jeffersonville, also on the Ohio, are flourishing towns. Vevay is settled by a colony of industrious Swiss, who cultivate extensive vineyards, and make considerable quantities of excellent wine.

8. Vincennes is the oldest town in Indiana. New Harmony, Terre Haute, Lafayette, and Logansport, on the Wabash river, are all thriving towns. Michigan City, at the head of Lake Michigan, South Bend, on the St. Joseph's, and Fort Wayne, on the Maumee river, are the principal places in the north part of the state.

Map No. 9. — What state on the north? Mn. — On the south? Ky. — East? Oo. — West? Is. — Which river on the south? Oo. — On the west? Wh. — What river flows into Lake Erie? Me. — What rivers flow into the Wabash? El., Se., My., Te., We. — How long are the foregoing rivers? How far from the sea do steam-boats navigate the Wabash? East fork of White river? What is the population of New Albany? Madison? Rushville? Indianapolis? Vincennes? Terre Haute? Lafayette? Logansport? In what counties are all these towns? Fd., Jn., Rh., Mn., Kx., Vo., Te., Cs. — When was the battle of Tippecanoe fought? On what rivers are the chief towns?

— 120 —

ILLINOIS.

1. Illinois is one of the most fertile states in the Union. It has advanced in population and importance with uncommon rapidity, and has, of late, excited great attention.

2. It consists chiefly of rich and extensive prairies, and is watered by a number of beautiful streams, of which, the Illinois, and some others, are navigated by steam-boats.

3. Agriculture is the chief and most profitable employment. The principal products are corn, wheat, rye, hemp, and tobacco. Cattle, horses, and swine, abound, and are raised on the fertile prairies with but little trouble.

---

6. Describe Indianapolis. 7. New Albany. Madison. 8. Vincennes, and the other towns.

Illinois. Q. — 1. What is Illinois? 2. Of what does it consist? 3. What is said of agriculture? Cattle, &c.? 4. Of minerals? The

Illinois College in the distance.

4. The minerals are coal, iron, and lead. The last is the most abundant. The lead-mines around Galena, with those of the adjoining Territory of Wisconsin, are among the richest in the world, and cover a region of country hundreds of square miles in extent.

5. The canal to connect Lake Michigan with the Illinois river is nearly completed. Several rail-roads to intersect the state in various directions are in progress.

6. The city of Chicago, near the head of Lake Michigan, is the most important place in Illinois. It has become, within a few years, the centre of a large and growing trade. Numerous steam-boats, ships, brigs, and other vessels, are constantly arriving at, and departing from, its wharves.

7. Springfield, the capital, is very near the centre of the state, and not far from the southern bank of the Sangamon river. It is a flourishing town, and is situated in one of the most fertile districts of Illinois.

8. Peoria, Beardstown, and Naples, on the Illinois river, Quincy and Alton, on the Mississippi, Galena, in the northern part of the state, and Jacksonville, near its centre, are thriving places. In the vicinity of the latter is Illinois College, the principal literary institution in the state. Nauvoo, the Mormon city, is on the east bank of the Mississippi river, 200 miles above St. Louis.

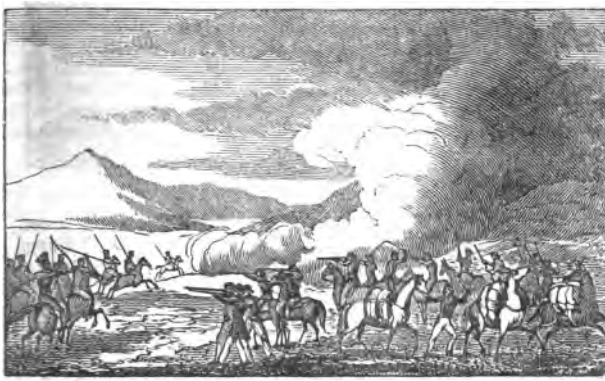
Map No. 9. — What bounds Illinois on the north? W.-Ty. — On the south? Ky. — East? Ia. — West? Mi., I.-Ty. — What river on the west? Mi. — On the south? Oo. — On the east? Wh. —

---

lead-mines? 5. Canals? Rail-roads? 6. Describe Chicago. 7 Springfield. 8. Peoria, Beardstown, &c. Quincy, Alton, Galena, &c

What rivers flow into the Mississippi? Rk., Is., Ka. — What rivers into the Illinois? Ke., D.-Ps., Fx., Vn., Mw., Sn., Sn. — What rivers flow into the Wabash? Vn., Es., L.-Wh. — How long is each of the foregoing rivers? What lake on the north-east? Mn. — How many inhabitants has Chicago? Galena? Peoria? Quincy? Springfield? Jacksonville? Alton? In what counties are these towns? Ck., Js., Pa., As., Sn., Mn. Mn. — How far from the sea do steam-boats ascend the Illinois? Rock? and Sangamon rivers? On what lake is Chicago?

— 121 —



Indians attacking Missouri Traders.

MISSOURI.*

1. Missouri is, next to Virginia, the largest state in the Union. The face of the country is diversified with hills, plains, and prairies, of which the latter predominate.

2. Wheat, Indian-corn, hemp, and tobacco, are largely cultivated, with some cotton in the southern part of the state. This is an admirable grazing country, and vast herds of horses, cattle, and hogs, are raised in it.

3. Missouri is rich in minerals: the lead-mines have been worked for more than 100 years, and produce at present several million pounds of lead annually.

4. The Pilot Knob and the Iron Mountain are immense masses of

Missouri. Q. — 1. What is Missouri? What is said of the country? 2. What are cultivated? Raised? 3. What of the minerals? 4. De.

* *Missouri.* Mis-su'-re.

nearly pure iron, and surpass every thing of the kind found elsewhere Copper, zinc, and coal, also abound, and salt is made to some extent.

5. There is a considerable trade carried on between this state and Santa Fé, in New Mexico. The traders form caravans of numerous individuals, with many horses and wagons. They carry various articles of merchandise, and being frequently attacked by Indians, defend themselves with their rifles.

6. Jefferson city, the capital, is on the south side of the Missouri river, 150 miles from its mouth; it contains the State House and Penitentiary.

7. St. Louis is on the west bank of the Mississippi, 1300 miles from the sea, and is the largest place west of that river. It is favourably situated for trade, and has an extensive commerce. Numerous steamboats are constantly departing for, and arriving from, nearly all parts of the Mississippi valley. Among the public buildings are the Cathedral, a number of churches, the Hospital, Orphan Asylum, Convent of the Sacred Heart, City Hall, Theatre, &c. Jefferson barracks, 5 miles below St. Louis, is the head quarters of the western division of the United States army.

8. St. Charles, 20 miles from the Mississippi, is the largest town on the Missouri river. Franklin, Booneville,* Lexington, and Independence, are small towns on the latter stream. From the last-named town the Santa Fé traders take their departure for their journey across the prairies. Herculaneum, New Madrid, St. Genevieve, and Cape Girardeau, are on the Mississippi. At Herculaneum large quantities of shot are made.

Map No. 9. — What territory on the north? I.-Ty. — On the west? I.-Ty. — What states on the east? Is., Ky. — South? As. — What river on the east? Mi. — On the west, and in the centre? Mi. — What rivers flow into the Missouri? L.-Pe., Gd., Cn., Oe., Ge. — Into the Mississippi? St., Mi., Mc. — What rivers flow into Arkansas? W.-Wr. B.-Bk., Ct., We. — What mountains in the south-west? Ok. — How high are they? What mines in Washington county? Ld. — What mountains? In., P.-Kb. — How many inhabitants has St. Louis? St. Charles? Palmyra? In what counties are these towns? In which is Jefferson city? Ce. — Booneville? Cr. — Lexington? Le. — Liberty? Cy. — On what rivers are the other principal towns?

122

ARKANSAS.

1. ARKANSAS is one of the latest formed of the American states, having been admitted into the Union in 1836. The eastern part of the country along the Mississippi is low and marshy; but the interior is elevated, healthy, and pleasant.

scribe Pilot Knob and the Iron Mountain. 5. What trade, &c.? What do the traders form? 6. Describe Jefferson City 7. St. Louis. 8. St Charles, and the other towns.

Arkansas Q. — 1. What is said of Arkansas? Of the country?

* *Booneville*, Boon'-vil.

2. The land bordering on the rivers is generally fertile, and produces abundant crops of cotton and corn. Wheat and grain grow well in the upper country, while peaches, plums, and other fruits, are raised in abundance.

3. This state has considerable advantages for commerce. Nearly every part of it is intersected by streams that flow into the Mississippi river. Steam-boats ascend the Arkansas during high water nearly 600 miles above its mouth, and the Red, White, St. Francis, and Washita rivers, are all more or less navigable.

4. The hot springs, about fifty miles west of Little Rock, are among the chief curiosities of the country; the water of some of them is sufficiently hot to boil an egg in fifteen minutes. They are very numerous, and much resorted to by invalids, who generally find the use of the water beneficial to their health.

5. Little Rock, the capital of the state, situated on the Arkansas river, about 300 miles above its mouth, is the most important town. The chief of the others are, Arkansas, Batesville, Helena, Fulton, and Fayetteville. These are all of limited population.

Map No. 8. — What bounds Arkansas on the north? Mi. — On the south? La. — East? Te., Mi. — West? In. Ty. — What river separates Arkansas from Tennessee and Mississippi? Mi. — What three rivers flow into the Mississippi? As., We., S.-Fs. — What are the two principal rivers that flow into Louisiana? Rd., Wa. — Tell the lengths of the foregoing rivers. How far are the Arkansas, White, Washita, and Red rivers, navigable for steam-boats? Name the places where the navigation ends. F.-Gn., Be., E.-Fe., Jo. — In what county is Little Rock? Pi. — Fort Smith? Cd. — Fulton? Hd. — Fayetteville? Wn. — Batesville? Ie. — On what rivers are the chief towns?

— 123 —

WISCONSIN TERRITORY.

1. Wisconsin formed, until the year 1836, the western division of Michigan Territory. A large portion of it is but little known; and it is, for the most part, still in the occupancy of the Indians.

2. It is yet but thinly settled by a white population; but its

---

2. Productions? 3. Commerce? Steam-boats? 4. Hot springs? 5. Describe Little Rock, and other towns.

Wisconsin Territory. Q. — 1. What did Wisconsin form? What is said of it? 2. How is it settled? What are attracting emigrants?

great mineral resources and fertile soil are attracting numerous emigrants from the eastern part of the Union.

3. This country is rich in mineral products. Lead is found in great quantities, and copper and iron also abound. The principal trade of Wisconsin consists in the exporting of lead and other products, to the various markets on the Mississippi and Ohio rivers.

4. Madison, the capital of Wisconsin, is on a branch of Rock river and about half way between the Mississippi river and Lake Michigan. Though but lately laid out, a number of buildings have been erected. Milwaukee, Racine, Navarino, Mineral Point, Prairie du Chien,* and Cassville, are the other principal towns.

Chippeway Bark Lodge.

Birch Bark Canoe.

5. The chief Indian tribes in this territory are the Chippeways and the Mennomonies. The former subsist mostly on the wild rice with which the numerous lakes abound. They make lodges and canoes of birch bark, but have not much mechanical ingenuity. The Mennomonies are superior in skill to the Chippeways; they prepare belts, moccasins, sheaths, &c. very neatly, and ornament them with beads and porcupine quills.

Map No. 4. — What bounds Wisconsin on the north? B.-Aa. — South? Is.—East? Mn.—West? I.-Ty.—What river forms nearly the whole of the western boundary? Mi. — What rivers flow into Lake Superior? S.-Ls., Ml. — Into Green Bay? Me. — Into the Mississippi river? Wn., Rm. — What lakes in Wisconsin? Rd., St., Pn., Wo. — What lakes on the east? Sr., Mn. — What lakes form part of the north and eastern boundary? Ws., Ry., Sr., Mn. — How far from the sea can steam-boats ascend the Mississippi river?

Map No. 9. — In what county is the capital? De. — Milwaukie? Me. — Cassville? Gt. — Prairie du Chien? Cd. — How far from the sea do steam-boats ascend the Wisconsin? Rock River?

---

3. What is said of the mineral products? Of the trade? 4. Describe Madison city, Milwaukie, and the other towns. 5. Which are the chief Indian tribes? Describe the Chippeways. The Mennomonies.

---

* *Prairie du Chien*, Pray'-re-du-Sheen'

— 124 —

IOWA TERRITORY.

1. Iowa Territory was organized by Congress in 1838. During the two preceding years it formed the western division of Wisconsin.

2. The country, so far as it has been explored, is beautiful in appearance, and of uncommon fertility of soil. Most luxuriant crops of corn, wheat, and oats, are produced.

3. Lead is the principal mineral. It is found in great abundance; and the finest lead-mines in the United States are those worked in the vicinity of Dubuque.* Coal, iron, and limestone, also abound.

4. The towns, being all of recent formation, are yet small, though most of them are thriving and flourishing. Iowa City, the capital, is on Iowa river, 70 miles from its mouth; it was commenced in 1839, and in less than a year afterwards contained 100 buildings. Burlington, the late capital, was laid out in 1833, on the west bank of the Mississippi river. It has considerable trade.

5. Dubuque is in the centre of the mining district of Iowa, and contains a number of stores and taverns, with several handsome public buildings. Fort Madison, Bloomington, Davenport, Montrose, and Salem, are among the principal of the other towns.

Sioux Chief and his Son.

Indian Skin Lodge.

6. The Sioux, Winnebagoes, Iowas, and Sacs and Foxes, are the Indian tribes now resident in this Territory. The Sioux are one of the most powerful tribes within the limits of the United States. They live chiefly on the prairies, making lodges of Buffalo skins, and employing

Iowa Territory. Q. — 1. When was Iowa Territory organized? 2. What is said of the country? 3. What is the principal mineral? 4. What is said of the towns? 5. Which is the principal town? 6. What

* *Dubuque*, Du-book'.

dogs to carry burdens. The flesh of these animals is considered by them a great delicacy; and a feast of dogs' meat is the greatest mark of attention they can pay a stranger.

Map No. 4. — What bounds Iowa on the north? B.-Aa. — South? Mi. — East? Wn. — West? M.-Ty., I.-Ty. — What river forms the east boundary? Mi. — The west? Mi. — What rivers flow north? Rd., Me. — Into the Missouri river? Js., Sx. — Which flows into the Mississippi? S.-Ps., Ia., Ds. — How long are the Missouri, Mississippi, Red, St. Peter's, Iowa, and Des Moines rivers? From what lake does the Mississippi river flow? Ia. — What Indian tribes in this Territory? Ms., As., Sx., Ws., Ps., Ss., and Fs.

Map No. 9.—On what river is Iowa City? The other chief towns? To what distance from the sea do steam-boats ascend the Des Moines river?

Emigrant Indians landing at Fort Gibson.

INDIAN TERRITORY.

1. The Indian Territory is the country assigned by the United States' government for the future residence of those Indians who have from time to time emigrated from the eastern parts of the Union.

2. The population numbers about 70,000, of whom two-

Indian tribes reside in Iowa? Describe the Sioux, (pronounced Soos) What is considered by them a great delicacy?

Indian Territory. Q. — 1. What is the Indian Territory? 2. What

thirds have emigrated from the states east of the Mississippi river; the remainder appertain to tribes long resident in this region.

3. The Choctaws, Creeks, Cherokees, and Shawnees are the most advanced towards civilization of any of the Indian tribes in this quarter. They have generally good houses, well-tilled fields, and own horses and cattle to some extent. They have also native mechanics and merchants among them.

4. The Aboriginal Indians consist, for the most part, of Pawnees, Osages, Kanzas, Omahas, &c. They still retain their original savage habits unchanged, and live mostly by hunting.

5. In several of the tribes of this territory, a number of missionaries reside, who have improved the moral and spiritual condition of these people. Among the Shawnees, the Baptists have established a printing-office, from which have been issued school-books, and collections of sacred poetry, in several Indian languages. A monthly journal, and annual register, are also printed here.

Map No. 4.—How is the Indian Territory bounded on the north? M.-Ty.—South? Ts., N.-Mo.—East? I.-Ty., Mi., As.—West? Mo. What are the principal rivers that flow through it? Pe., Ks., As., Cn., Rd.—How long are these rivers? What United States' forts are in this territory? Lh., Gn., Tn.—On what river is the Council Bluffs? Mi.—What desert in the western part of the territory? G.-An.—What mountains form part of its western boundary? Ry.—Where is Long's Peak? James Peak? How high are they? Name the Indian tribes wholly resident in the Indian Territory. Os., Os., Ks., Ds., Ss., Ks., Os., Cs., Cs., Cs.—Name those that are partly so. Of the latter there are three tribes. Ps., Ks., P.-Ps.

126

MISSOURI TERRITORY.

1. Missouri Territory is a vast wilderness, thinly inhabited only by different tribes of Indians. It consists of extensive prairies, over which roam countless droves of buffalo, elk, deer, and wild horses.

---

is the number of the population, &c. 3. Name the tribes most advanced towards civilization. Describe their condition. 4. What do the Aboriginal Indians consist of? What do they still retain? 5. What have the missionaries done? What have the Baptists established? What has been issued from it?

Missouri Territory Q.—1. What is Missouri territory? Of what

White traders bartering with the Indians.

2. On the western frontier the Rocky Mountains rise up to a great height, and have their tops covered with perpetual snow. Among these the grizzly bear is found: he is the largest and fiercest animal of his kind, and is peculiar to North America.

Grizzly Bear.

3. This region is visited by the white traders, who barter with the Indians for the skins of buffaloes, bears, beavers, &c., taken by them in hunting. There are also many white trappers and hunters, who live like the Indians, and are absent from the settlements frequently for three or four years at a time.

4. The principal native tribes are the Pawnees, Sioux, Riccarees

---

does it consist? 2. What is said of the Rocky Mountains? Grizzly bear? 3. Of the white traders? White trappers and hunters? 4. Native tribes? What of their habits, &c.

Crow, and Black Feet Indians.* Most of them are roving in their habits, and being in possession of an ample store of horses, roam from place to place, in quest of buffalo and other game.

Map No. 4. — What bounds this territory on the north? B.-Aa — South? I.-Ty. — East? I.-Ty. — West? O.-Ty. — What mountains separate it from Oregon territory? Ry. — What river from Iowa territory? Mi. — From the Indian territory? Pe. — How long is the Missouri? Platte? Yellow Stone? Big Horn? Tongue? and Running-Water rivers? What hills west of the Missouri river? Bk. — What tribes inhabit this territory? B.-Ft., Cw., Ms., Rs., Ss., Ss., Ps., As., Ps. — How many miles from the sea have steam-boats ascended in this territory?

127

Missionary preaching to the Indians.

OREGON TERRITORY.

1. Oregon Territory is the most western part of th United States. It extends from the Rocky Mountains to th acific Ocean, and contains an area greater than that of th hole of the Southern States.

Oregon Territory. Q. — 1. What is Oregon Territory? How far does

* For several years past the small-pox has fearfully desolated this region: some of the most powerful of the native tribes have lost, by its ravages, thousands of their population, and have become almost extinct. The Mandan nation were in a short time reduced from 1,600 to 31 individuals; these have incorporated themselves with the Riccarees, and their race has ceased to exist as a distinct tribe.

2. The climate is said to be more mild than in the same latitude on the eastern side of the continent. In many parts the soil is fertile, and well adapted to farming. Wheat, corn, fruits, and vegetables, are raised of excellent quality. Pine trees of enormous bulk grow on the banks of the Columbia iver, and many of them attain a height of 250 feet.

3. Though claimed by the United States, the territory is at resent actually in possession of Great Britain. The traders f the "Hudson's Bay Company" have established forts at various points, and exercise an almost unlimited control over the natives. Forts Vancouver, Wallah-Wallah, and Colville, on the Columbia river, are the chief trading stations.

4. At Fort Vancouver is a village containing fifty houses, with 800 inhabitants. From this place a direct trade is carried on with the Sandwich Islands and Great Britain, which employs several vessels, besides a steam-boat. About 3000 acres of land are under cultivation at this settlement.

5. The inhabitants of the territory are reckoned to amount to 80,000. They consist of a number of small Indian tribes, with the few white traders and hunters attached to the "Hudson's Bay Company." There are also several American missionaries in the territory, endeavouring to spread the light of the gospel among the Indians.

6. Animals of various kinds abound, whose skins and furs form the chief articles of export. The sea-otter is found on the coast, and the hair-seal in the Columbia river. Salmon and sturgeon are the fish mostly used for food. They exist in great abundance in all the principal streams.

Map No. 3. — What bounds this territory on the north? B.-Aa. — South? Mo. — East? B.-Aa., and the Missouri Territory. — What bounds it on the west? P.-On. — What mountains on the east? Ry. — Tell the highest of these. Bn., Hr. — Their heights. What country in the northern part of the territory? N.-Ca. — The principal islands? Q.-Cs., Vs. — How long are they? The chief rivers? Ca., Ls., Cs., Fs. Their lengths?

Map No. 4. — What are the seven chief Indian tribes in Oregon Territory? Cs., Ss., Ss., Fs., Ns., Ch., Ss. — What mountains in the western part? Os., Jn., Hd., Rr. — How high are the two last?

---

it extend? What does it contain? 2. What is said of the climate? Soil? Pine trees? 3. In whose possession is it? What is said of the Hudson's Bay Company? Which are the chief trading stations? 4. What of Fort Vancouver? What does the trade employ? 5. What is said of the inhabitants? Of what do they consist? What of the missionaries? 6. Of the animals? Salmon, &c.?

— 128 —

View on the Prairies of Texas—Catching wild horses.

REPUBLIC OF TEXAS.

1. Texas formed, in conjunction with Coahuila, one of the Mexican States. In 1836, the people declared themselves independent, and adopted a form of government similar to that of the United States. It extends from the Gulf of Mexico to the Red river, and from the Rio del Norte to the Sabine.

2. The climate is mild and healthful. The face of the country consists chiefly of vast prairies, the soil of which is exceedingly fertile, and produces in abundance cotton, tobacco, sugar, rice, wheat, &c.

3. Texas is one of the finest countries in the world for raising cattle. Pasturage being very plentiful, they increase rapidly, and great numbers of them are driven every year nto the United States, for sale.

4. Vast herds of buffalo, deer, and mustangs or wild horses, roam over the unsettled prairies of the interior. Numbers of the latter are taken with a leather thong or rope, with a running noose at the end of it, and being properly broke are rendered serviceable, either as draught or saddle horses.

Texas. Q. — 1. What did Texas form? In what year did the people declare their independence? What have they adopted? 2. What is said of the climate? Face of the country? Soil? 3 What is Texas? 4. What

5. The inhabitants of Texas are nearly all Anglo-Americans, emigrants from the United States. There are also some Mexicans, Negro slaves, and Indians. The whole amounts, probably, to 150,000; of which the first named constitute about four-fifths of the number.

6. Austin, the capital of Texas, is on the Colorado river, about 200 miles from the sea. The other principal towns are Houston, Brazoria, Matagorda, San Felipe, Nacogdoches, San Augustine, and Galveston. The latter is on Galveston Island. It is the chief sea-port of Texas.

7. The commerce of Texas already employs a number of trading vessels between the principal towns and New Orleans; and foreign vessels carry the products of the republic to various European ports.

Map No. 3. — What bounds Texas on the north? U. Ss. — South? G. Mo. — East? U. S. — West? Mo. — What river forms the north boundary? Rd. — East? Se. — West? Ne.

Map No. 4. — Which are the chief rivers in Texas? Co., Bs., Ty., Ns. — How long are they? From what lake does the Brazos river flow? Ss. — On what river is Austin? Co. — Into what bay does it flow? Ma. — How far do steam-boats ascend the Brazos river? In what year was the battle of San Jacinto fought? Point out the Cross Timbers. This is a remarkable forest in the midst of the prairies: it extends northward from the Brazos river for a distance of a hundred miles.

129

MEXICO.

1. Mexico is an extensive territory, comprising a number of divisions called states or departments. Previous to the year 1835, it was a Federal government, somewhat similar to that of the United States; but it is now a central or consolidated republic.

2. Most of the surface of the country is elevated; a great part of it forming a high table-land of from 6000 to 8000 feet in height. From this elevated plain, a few volcanic peaks shoot up to a still greater height. The chief of these are Popocatapetl, Orizava, Toluca, &c.

3. Mexico is famous for the variety of its vegetable products; comprising, according to the elevation at which they

---

is said of Buffalo, &c.? How are they taken? 5. What are the inhabitants? 6. What is said of the towns in Texas? 7. Of the commerce?

Mexico. Q. — 1. What is Mexico? What of its government? 2. What is said of the surface? Of the volcanic peaks? 3. For what is

Pyramid of Cholula. Indians. Creoles. Maguey Plant.

are planted, the principal grains and fruits of torrid and temperate climates.

4. Indian-corn is the staple article; of which, two and sometimes three crops are gathered in the course of the year. Wheat, rice, and barley, are also cultivated; and sugar, coffee, tobacco, vanilla, cochineal, &c., are raised chiefly for internal consumption.

5. The American Aloe, or Maguey plant, is extensively cultivated for the sake of its juice, of which the liquor called pulque, the favourite drink of the lower order of Mexicans, is made.

6. The manufactures of Mexico are in a rude state, and are chiefly confined to coarse pottery, with glass-ware, and cotton and woollen goods. Silver plate and jewellery are, however, well and skilfully made.

7. The commerce has never corresponded with the extent and resources of the country. The mines of gold and silver have always been the chief object of attention.

8. Many of these are at present in a ruinous state, and those that are worked do not yield more than half their former amount. From 20 to 25 millions of dollars were once obtained from the mines of Mexico annually, which is now reduced to 10 or 12 millions.

Mexico famous? 4. What is said of Indian-corn? Wheat, &c.? 5. The American aloe? 6. The manufactures? 7. Commerce? Mines? 8. In what state are they? 9. Of the inhabitants? What do the

9. There are three classes of inhabitants in Mexico: the *Whites* or *Creoles*, the Indians, and the mixed races. The latter comprise *Mestizoes*, or the descendants of whites and Indians; *Mulattoes*, of whites and negroes; and *Zamboes*, of Indians and negroes. These races were once as distinct from each other as if they had belonged to different nations—but the Revolution has placed all classes on an equal footing, and men of all complexions are alike free.

10. The Catholic religion is established by law, and is the only system tolerated in Mexico. The clergy, including all belonging to the church, amount to about 14,000 persons. The amusements of the people are chiefly those of Old Spain: bull-fights, and religious processions.

11. At the time of the discovery of America, Mexico formed the most powerful of the native empires. Being conquered by Spain, it remained for 300 years the most important colony belonging to that crown. In the year 1821, the Mexicans abolished the authority of Spain, and established a republican form of government. In 1841, the people of Yucatan declared themselves independent of Mexico, and have taken measures to maintain their freedom by force of arms. Merida is the capital of this new state.

City of Mexico.

12. The city of Mexico is situated in a delightful valley, which is elevated 7000 feet above the sea; it is about half way between the Pacific Ocean and the Gulf of Mexico. This city is distinguished for the beauty of its architecture, the regularity of its streets, and the extent of the squares and public places. The market is well supplied with all the animal and vegetable productions of the country; many of the latter are raised on floating gardens in the neighbouring lakes.

13. La Puebla is next to the capital in importance, and is noted for its manufactures of glass and earthenware. Guanaxuato, Zacatecas, and San Luis Potosi, are all connected with rich silver mines. Near the first are the great mines of Valenciana, which in 37 years yielded 165 millions of dollars.

---

mixed races comprise? 10. What is said of religion? 11. What did Mexico form? How long did it remain a colony? What took place in 1821? In 1841? 12. Describe Mexico. How is it distinguished? What ot the markets? 13. La Puebla, and other towns?

130

14. The pyramid of Cholula is a work which approaches in magnitude to the pyramids of Egypt. It is of brick, about one-third as high as the Great Pyramid, but is nearly double the length. The ruins of the ancient city of Calhuacan, near Palenque, attest the civilization of its former inhabitants. They have of late excited much attention, and have been frequently visited.

15. The chief sea-ports are, Vera Cruz and Tampico, on the Gulf of Mexico; Acapulco and San-Blas, on the west coast; and Guaymas, on the Gulf of California. Monterey is the principal place in Upper California, and is often visited by American whale-ships. Santa Fé, in New Mexico, is the centre of the trade with Missouri.

16. BALIZE SETTLEMENT.—ON the east side of the Peninsula of Yucatan is the Balize Settlement, which, though within the limits of Mexico, belongs to Great Britain.

17. It extends along the Bay of Honduras about 150 miles; and was founded for the purpose of cutting logwood and mahogany, which form its chief products. The inhabitants are mostly Indians and Negroes, with a few whites. The town of Balize, the capital, is situated on the river of the same name. The exports from this place in 1830, were of the value of a million and a half of dollars.

Map No. 3. — What bounds Mexico on the north? U.-S. — On the south and west? P.-On. — What two Republics on the east? U.-S. Ts. — What sea and gulf on the east? Cn., Mo. — What peninsula? Yn. — What gulf on the west? Ca. — What peninsula? Ca. — What bay west of Yucatan? Ce. — East? Hs.

Map No. 4. — What rivers flow into the Gulf of Mexico? R.-Ne., Ns. — The Gulf of California? Co., Yi. — The Pacific ocean? Ge. — What lakes are in Mexico? Yu., Ba., Te., Cn., Ca. — What mountains? M.-Ca., Sy. — What desert in the north-west? G.-Sy. — What states border on the Gulf of Mexico? Ts., Vz., To., Yn. — On the Pacific ocean? U.-Ca., O.-Ca., Jo., Mn., Mo., La., Oa. — How far is it from California to Birmah? From Mexico to the Sandwich Islands? To Cochin China? What is the population of the city of Mexico? What cities have a population of 30,000 and upwards? Zs., S.-L.-Pi., Qo., Go., Ga., La., Oa. — How many between 12,000 and 30,000? Ca., My., Do., Vd., Ja.

What bay bounds the Balize settlement on the east? Hs. — What state on the west? Yn.

---

14. What is said of Cholula, and its pyramid? Ruins of Calhuacan
15. Chief sea-ports? Monterey, &c.?

Balize. Q. — 16. To what power does the Balize settlement belong? 17. What is its extent? For what purpose was it founded? What town is its capital?

— 131 —

GUATIMALA, OR CENTRAL AMERICA.

1. GUATIMALA occupies the narrow tract between the northern and southern divisions of the Western Continent; and has, in consequence of its position, assumed the title of the United States of Central America.

2. It became independent in 1824, and adopted a form of government modelled after that of the United States; but instead of acquiring the order and prosperity of that republic, it is the seat of anarchy and civil war.

3. The country is traversed on the western coast by lofty ranges of mountains, which contain many volcanoes, one of which, the Water Volcano, is remarkable for throwing out vast quantities of water; while the eruptions of another, the volcano of Cosiguina, were, in 1834, heard 1000 miles distant, and the ashes thrown by it were carried to Jamaica, 800 miles.

4. The soil of this region is prolific, and yields, in perfection, all the most valuable tropical products. Its indigo and cacao are of superior quality. Mines of silver are numerous, but few of them are at present productive.

5. One-half of the population of Guatimala is composed of Indians, one-fifth whites, and the remainder of the mixed races. The Catholic is the established religion, no other being tolerated.

6. Part of the east coast of this republic is called the Mosquito shore. It is covered with vast forests, and peopled by independent Indians; of whom, some of the tribes have long been in alliance with the English.

7. St. Salvador, the capital, is situated nearly half way between the northern and southern extremities of Guatimala. Its inhabitants are chiefly employed in the indigo trade. Old Guatimala, formerly the capital, was destroyed by an eruption of water from the Water Volcano, but is now reviving.

8. New Guatimala is the most populous place in the country, and is a handsome city. Leon and Cartago are considerable towns. Omoa and Truxillo, on the bay of Honduras, are the chief sea-ports.

Guatimala. Q. — 1. What does Guatimala occupy? What has it assumed? 2. When did it become independent? What is said of the government? 3. Of the country? Water Volcano? Cosiguina? 4. Of the soil? Mines? 5. What is said of the population? Of the Catholic religion? 6. Of the east coast? 7. Describe St. Salvador. Old Guatimala. 8. New Guatimala, &c.

Map No. 3. — What bounds Guatimala on the north? Mo., Be. — East? C.-Sa. — West and south? P.-On. — What bay on the north? Hs. — On the east? Ga. — What lake in the south? Na. — How long is it? What river connects it with the sea? S.-Jn. — Which is the most populous city? N.-Ga. — The four next in population? Ln., Co., S.-Sr., O.-Ga. — What is the population of these places?

Map No. 5. — Guatimala comprises five states. Point them out? Ga., Hs., S.-Sr., Na., C.-Ra. — What is the capital of each? N.-Ga Ca., S.-Sr., Ln.. Co. — In what state is the Water Volcano situated Ga. — Volcano of Cosiguina? Na. — Lake Nicaragua? Na.

— 132 —

Slaves cultivating the Sugar-cane.

WEST INDIES.

1. The West Indies consist of a large collection of islands situated between North and South America. They are all, with the exception of Hayti, subject to different European powers.

2. These Islands comprise four great divisions: the Bahama Islands, the Great Antilles, the Little Antilles, and the Caribbee Islands. The latter are divided into two groups, the Windward and Leeward Islands.

3. The climate is mild and pleasant in winter, which lasts

West Indies. Q. — 1. Of what do the West Indies consist? 2. What do they comprise? 3. What is said of the climate? What sometimes

from December to May; but the remainder of the year is hot and unhealthy for strangers. Between August and October, tremendous hurricanes or storms sometimes occur, which often do great injury to towns, houses, and shipping.

4. The West Indies abound in nearly all the productions of warm climates, and are rich in a variety of articles of great importance in commerce; while the forests furnish mahogany and several other woods useful in the arts.

5. The principal fruits are, oranges, lemons, pine-apples, papaws, bananas, plantains, &c. The two last afford a supply of excellent food, with but little attention to their cultivation. A great variety of birds is found in the West Indies, nearly all of which are, however, common to the neighbouring continents.

Green Turtle.

Guana Lizard.

6. The green turtle and guana lizard are both highly prized, as affording delicious food. The former are sent in considerable numbers to Europe and the United States. They come on shore in the night, when the fishermen turn them on their backs, and collect them at leisure. The guana is from four to five feet long; it is very nimble, and is hunted with dogs. The flesh is tender, sweet, and delicate.

7. Commerce is carried on from the West India Islands with great activity, and to a larger amount than in any other country of the same extent and population.

8. The chief articles of export are, coffee, sugar, rum, cotton, cocoa, pimento, mahogany, logwood, &c. The imports are, manufactured goods of all kinds from Europe, with flour, lumber, fish, and salted provisions from the United States and British America.

9. The islands of the West Indies are under the control of Governors,

---

occur? 4. In what do the West Indies abound? 5. What are the principal fruits? What is said of birds? 6. Of the green turtle, &c.? 7. What is said of commerce? 8. What are the chief articles of export? Imports? 9. What control are the islands under? How are

appointed by the powers to which they respectively belong. The white inhabitants of the British Islands are represented in the Houses of Assembly, which exercise some of the functions of the British Parliament. Hayti forms an independent republic.

10. The inhabitants of the West Indies consist of whites, free blacks, and slaves, of whom not more than 500,000 are whites. The remainder are of Negro origin; and, except in Hayti and the British Islands, the principal part are in a state of slavery.

11.

	Population.		Population.
Spanish Islands	1,050,000	French Islands	256,000
Hayti	800,000	Danish, Dutch, &c.	119,000
British Islands	745,000	Total	2,970,000

133

SPANISH WEST INDIES.

12. The western colonies of Spain, which formerly comprised the greater part of the American Continent, are now limited to the two islands of Cuba and Porto Rico.

13. Cuba, the largest of the West India Islands, is nearly equal in extent to all the rest of the islands taken together. Porto Rico contains about one-tenth the area of Cuba. They are both fertile islands, and carry on an extensive trade, chiefly with the United States.

14. Havana, the capital of Cuba, is the largest and most flourishing place in the West Indies. Matanzas, Puerto Principe, and St. Jago de Cuba, are, after the capital, the most important towns. St. John's is the chief town in Porto Rico. It has a safe and capacious harbour, and is strongly fortified.

BRITISH WEST INDIES.

15. Jamaica is the largest and most valuable of the British islands. The towns of Jamaica, and the other islands, are all sea-ports, and supported by commerce.

16. Kingston is the largest town in the British West Indies, and contains about 30,000 inhabitants. The chief of the other towns are, Bridgetown in Barbadoes, with 20,000 inhabitants; St. John's, in Antigua, with 15,000; and Basseterre, in St. Christopher's, with 7000 inhabitants.

---

the white inhabitants of the British islands represented? 10. Of what do the inhabitants consist? How many are whites? 11. What is the population of the different islands?

12. What are the colonies of Spain? 13. What is said of Cuba? Porto Rico? 14. Havana? Other towns? St. John's? 15. Jamaica? 16. Kings-

BRITISH ISLANDS.

17.	Inhabitants.	Capital.
Jamaica	375,000	Kingston.
Barbadoes	102,000	Bridgetown.
Trinidad	45,000	Port Spain.
Antigua	36,000	St. John's.
Grenada	29,000	St. George.
St. Vincent	26,000	Kingston.
St. Kitt's	24,000	Basseterre.
ominica	20,000	Roseau.
St. Lucia	18,000	Carenage.
Tobago	14,000	Scarborough.
Nevis	12,000	Charlestown.
Montserrat	8,000	Plymouth.
Tortola	7,000	Road Harbour.
Anguilla	3,000	
Bahamas	18,000	Nassau.
Bermudas	10,000	Georgetown.

18. The Bahamas comprise about 650 islands, of which only fourteen are of considerable size. The soil is arid and rocky, and these islands are, in consequence, not fruitful in the usual products of the West Indies.

19. The Bermudas lie to the eastward of the United States, and are a collection of rocks and small islands, of which only eight possess any importance. They enjoy an almost perpetual spring, and are clothed in constant verdure.

20. FRENCH ISLANDS.		
Guadaloupe	124,000	Basseterre.
Martinico	119,000	St. Pierre.
Mariegalante	11,500	Basseterre.
Deseada	1,500	
21. DANISH.		
Santa Cruz	34,000	Christianstadt.
St. Thomas	15,000	St. Thomas.
St. John's	3,000	
22. DUTCH.		
St. Eustatia	20,000	The Bay.
Curaçoa	12,000	Williamstadt.
St. Martin's, &c.	11,000	
23. SWEDISH.		
St. Bartholomew	8,000	Gustavia.
24. VENEZUELA.		
Margarita	16,000	Pampatar.

25. Hayti was formerly called Hispaniola, and also St. Domingo. It is one of the finest of the West India Islands, and once belonged jointly to France and Spain. The French portion was uncommonly flourishing, and the exports were nearly equal to that of all the other West India Islands united.

In 1791, an insurrection of the negroes broke out in the French part of the island. In 1793, the slaves were emancipated by a decree of the French National Assembly. In 1801, the independence of Hayti was declared; and in 1822, the Spaniards were expelled from the island: since which time, it has been entirely under the control of the coloured population.

---

ton, and the other towns? 17. Which is the most populous of the British islands? Ja. — The next? Bs. — The least? Aa. — What do the Bahamas comprise? What is said of the soil? 19. Of the Bermudas? What do they enjoy? 20. Which is the most populous of the French islands? Ge. — 21. Of the Danish? S.-Cr. — 22. Dutch? S.-Ea. — 23. What islands belong to Sweden? S.-Bw. — 24. To Venezuela? Ma. 25. What is said of Hayti? The French portion? 26. Of the

27. The government of Hayti is professedly republican, but is, in fact, a military despotism. The President holds his office for life. The army amounts to 40,000 men; there is also a large militia force.

28. The annual exports are in value about 4 million dollars, or one-sixth the amount of those sent from the French part of the island only previous to the year 1791. In 1842, a dreadful earthquake destroyed Cape Haytien, and several other towns, besides many of the inhabitants

29. The principal towns are Port au Prince, the capital, St. Domingo eremie, and Aux Cayes, [Au-kay'.]

Map No. 3. — Which is the largest of the West India Islands? Ca. — The second in size? Hi. — Third? Ja. — Fourth? P.-Ro. — How long is Cuba? Hayti? Jamaica? Porto Rico? These are called the Great Antilles. What sea between the Great Antilles and South America? Cn. — What islands lie north of Cuba? Bs. — Which are the principal of the Bahamas? N.-Pe. Ao., Ia., Ts., Lg., Gi. — Who discovered Guanahani? In what year? What is the name of the eastern range of the West India Islands? Ce. — What six islands on the coast of South America? Oa., Ca., B.-Ae., Oa., Ta., Ma. — These are called the Little Antilles. The Bermudas islands are about the same distance from Charleston, from Halifax, and from St. John's, Porto Rico. How many miles is it by the scale? How far are the Bermudas from Madeira?

135

SOUTH AMERICA.

1. South America, the southern part of the New World is smaller in extent than the northern division of the continent by almost one million of square miles: it is thinly settled, and for the most part uncultivated.

2. Like North America, it is noted for the grandeur and extent of its mountains, rivers, and plains: it is also unrivalled for the number and richness of its mines of gold, silver, mercury, and precious stones.

3. The climate of South America possesses every variety which vast extent and great diversity of surface can give. Its

---

slaves? 27. Government? President? Army? 28. Exports? 29. The principal towns?

South America. Q. — 1. How much smaller is South America than North America? 2. For what is it noted? For what unrivalled? 3. What

South American Scenery.

vegetable productions are numerous and valuable, and comprise the chief articles raised in tropical and temperate regions.

4. The principal mountains are the Andes, which range along the whole extent of the western shores of the continent, from north to south. The highest peak, Mount Sorata, is almost five miles high. The mountains of Brazil extend along a great part of the eastern coast, and are in height from 3,000 to 6,000 feet.

5. The Andes contain numerous volcanoes, many of which are constantly burning: the most considerable of these, Cotopaxi, near Quito, is one of the loftiest volcanoes in the world; the noise of its eruptions has been heard six hundred miles, and the flames from its mouth have been known to ascend more than half a mile high.

6. The principal rivers are the Amazon, Rio de la Plata, and Orinoco. The first, though not the longest, is the largest river in the world: it is said to drain, with its tributaries, an extent of country nearly equal to the whole of Europe; and its chief branches rival the largest rivers of the eastern continent.

---

is said of the climate? Productions? 4. Which are the principal mountains? The highest peak? 5. What is said of volcanoes? 6. Of the

South American Forest.

7. The forests of many parts of South America exhibit a luxuriance and diversity of aspect different from those of most other parts of the world. They are enlivened by a great variety of birds of singular forms and superb plumage, which flutter through the branches; and troops of monkeys and squirrels, that leap from bough to bough; while the occasional appearance of the alligator, with numerous serpents and lizards, presents a singular and varied scene.

Lama.

Tapir.

8. Among the most remarkable animals of this continent, are the aguar, puma and ocelot, the lama or South American camel, the tapir, eccary, sloth, ant-eater, armadillo, and chinchilla. The horse, ox, ass, and hog, were all strangers to the New World, and were brought from Europe by the first settlers: these have increased prodigiously, and have in some instances regained their original wild state.

9. The birds are numerous and of various kinds; the largest are the rhea or American ostrich, and the condor or vulture of the Andes, which is the largest bird of flight known. There are also toucans, orioles or

---

principal rivers? 7. Forests? 8. The most remarkable animals? 9. The

Red-billed Toucan.

Oriole Nests.

hanging-birds, with the blacksmith or bell-birds, and humming-birds of a hundred different species, from the size of a wren to that of a humble-bee.

10. The inhabitants of South America amount to about 14 millions, and consist of nearly the same classes as those of the northern division of the continent—Whites, Indians, Negroes, and the mixed races: the latter comprise Mulattoes, Mestizoes, and Zamboes.

11. The whites are chiefly Spaniards and Portuguese, and their descendants: of these, many of the wealthy classes are well educated and intelligent; but the great majority of the people are ignorant, indolent, and often vicious in their habits.

12. Considerable attention has been lately paid in some of the South American States to education. Schools and universities have been established in several places, and knowledge is beginning to dispel part of the ignorance which prevailed.

13. Nearly the whole of South America was, for three hundred years, subject to Spain and Portugal: it is now, with the exception of Guiana, entirely independent of European control. The Spanish part is divided into a number of distinct republics, whose governments are similar to that of the United States; while Brazil, the part settled by the Portuguese, is a limited monarchy.

14. The Catholic is the established religion in all the South American States; but persons of other persuasions are allowed to reside without molestation. In British and Dutch Guiana the Protestant faith prevails.

---

birds? 10. What is said of the inhabitants? 11. Of the whites? 12. Education, &c.? 13. How long was South America subject, &c.? What is said of the Spanish part? Portuguese? 14. Which is the established religion?

— 136 —

Map No. 10. — What ocean bounds South America on the east? Ac. — On the west? Pc. — What sea on the north? Cn.

How is New Grenada bounded? Its capital?

Venezuela—bounded? Capital?	Brazil—bounded? Capital?
Ecuador—bounded? Capital?	Chili—bounded? Capital?
Guiana—bounded? Capital?	Buenos Ayres—bounded? Capital?
North Peru—bounded? Capital?	Paraguay—bounded? Capital?
South Peru—bounded? Capital?	Uruguay—bounded? Capital?
Bolivia—bounded? Capital?	Patagonia—bounded? Capital?

On what side of South America are the Andes? Wt. — What number of miles do they extend? Between what two states do they form the entire boundary? Ci., B.-As. — Between what two do they form the boundary in part? Ba., S.-Pu. — What is the next greatest range of mountains? Bn. — What number of miles do they extend? In what state are they almost wholly? Bl.

What are the three largest rivers? An., Pa., Oo. — How long is each of these? How wide are the mouths of the two largest? Where is the Magdalena? Into what sea does it empty? Cn. — Which are the four principal branches of the Amazon on the north side? Ta., Po., Ca., No. — What are the chief branches of the Amazon on the south side? Ue., Ja., Pa., Ma., Ts., Xu. — How long are each of the foregoing rivers? What two rivers form the Amazon? Ue., Ta. — Which rivers form the Rio de la Plata? Pa., Uy. — Into what ocean do the Orinoco, Amazon, St. Francisco, and the Rio de la Plata, flow? A.-On. — What rivers are south of the Rio de la Plata? Co., No., Ca., P.-De.

Where is the Gulf of Darien? N.-Ga. — G. of Venezuela? Va. — G. of Guayaquil? Er. — G. of Penas? Pa. — Where is the Bay of Panama? N.-Ga. — Talcahuana B.? Ci. — B. of St. George? St. Mathias B.? Pa. — B. of All Saints? Bl.

Where is Puno Island? Er. — Islands of St. Felix? Is. of Juan Fernandez? Chiloe I.? Ci. — Wellington I.? Pa. — I. of Terra del Fuego? Where are the Falkland Is.? Pa. — I. of St. Catharina? Itamaraca I.? Joannes I.? Bl. — Between what two rivers is the latter situated? An., Pa.

Where is the Strait of Magellan? What regions does it separate? Pa. and T.-Fo. — Where is the Strait of Le Maire? What does it separate? T.-Fo. and S.-Ld.

Which is the largest city of South America? R.-Jo. — The next largest? Ba. — What three cities number 70,000 inhabitants each? Qo., La., B.-As. — Which are the most northerly and the most southerly capes? Gs., Hn. — The most easterly and the most westerly? S.-Re., Bo.

What proportion of South America lies north of the Tropic of Capricorn? The largest or smallest? Lt. — In what zone, then, is it

mostly? Td. — In what zone is the remainder? S.-Te. — In what hemisphere is South America wholly? Wn. — In what hemisphere is it partly? Sn. — South America contains about 12° of north, and 55° of south latitude. In what latitude is it then? Sh. — It extends from 35° to 81° of longitude, west from Greenwich. In what longitude then is it reckoned? Wt.

How many miles is it from Guiana to Newfoundland? Brazil to Greenland? Guiana to Liberia? New Grenada to Borneo? Ecuador to the Gallapagos Is.? Peru to Otaheite? Chili to New South Wales? Chili to New Zealand? Brazil to the west coast of Africa? Uruguay to the Cape of Good Hope? Patagonia to Van Diemen's Land? Patagonia to Kerguelen's Land.

— 137 —

COLOMBIA.

1. The late Republic of Colombia occupied an extensive region stretching from the Pacific to the Atlantic Ocean. It was the most powerful of the South American States that threw off the yoke of Spain, and was divided in the year 1831 into the republics of New Grenada, Venezuela, and Ecuador, or Quito.

2. The western part of this territory is traversed by some of the loftiest ranges of the Andes. In the east it consists of extensive plains (called llanos by the inhabitants) which form a part of the vast level region that spreads from north to south over the whole interior part of the continent.

3. The climate changes according to the elevation; hence the vegetable productions are various. On the high table-lands, among the mountains, are raised the wheat, rye, barley, oats, and fruits of temperate climates, while the low country is prolific in the most valuable products of the Torrid Zone.

4. Manufactures are but little attended to in Colombia, but commerce is carried on to some extent, chiefly with the United States and Great Britain. The exports are mostly in the tropical productions of the country, and consist of sugar, coffee, cacao, indigo, hides, sarsaparilla, &c.

5. The mines of New Grenada yield in gold and silver about two

---

Colombia. Q. — 1. What did the Republic of Colombia occupy? What was it? When and how was it divided? 2. What is said of the western part? In the east? 3. How does the climate change? What of the vegetable productions? 4. Manufactures? Exports? 5. Mines? Pearl fishery?

millions of dollars annually. There are also mines of copper, lead, and tin; and diamonds, emeralds, and other precious stones, are found. The Pearl fishery amounts in value to about $100,000 every year.

Rope bridge. Silleros carrying travellers.

NEW GRENADA.

6. New Grenada is the most powerful and populous of the Colombian States. Its coast is washed on the west side by the Pacific Ocean, and on the north by the Caribbean sea. Part of this territory extends into North America westward from the Isthmus of Darien.

7. Roads hardly exist in the mountainous districts of New Grenada and the other parts of Colombia. Travellers are often carried in a kind of chair, placed on the backs of persons called silleros, hired for the purpose.

8. The bridges across the rapid torrents of the Andes are frequently formed of a single rope, and a hammock or basket made to run from one end to the other, in which the Colombian passes secure.

9. Bogota, the capital of New Grenada, is situated a few miles east of the Magdalena river, on a fertile plain, 8000 feet above the sea. It contains a number of handsome churches and convents, and a university. The surrounding country yields two crops of grain annually.

10. Carthagena, on the coast of the Caribbean sea, is the principal port of this republic; its trade with the United States and Great Britain

---

New Grenada. Q. — 6. What is said of New Grenada? 7. Of roads? How are travellers carried? 8. What is said of bridges? 9. Describe Bogota. The surrounding country? 10. Carthagena? Popayan, &c.?

is extensive. Popayan and Pasto, in the southern part of New Grenada, and Panama, on the south side of the Isthmus of Darien, are all places of some importance.

Map No. 10. — What bounds New Grenada on the north? C.-Sa.— South? Er. — East? Va. — West? P.-On. — What Isthmus connects it with North America? Dn. — Which are the principal rivers? Ma., Ca., Ca., Us., No., Ge., Ma. — What is the length of each? How far do sloops navigate the Magdalena? Meta? What is the population of Bogota? Popayan? Carthagena? Mompox? Honda? What mountains extend along the west coast? As. — What mountains east of the Magdalena? Ans. The north east range of the Andes.

— 138 —

VENEZUELA.

1. VENEZUELA comprises the most eastern part of Colombia. A range of mountains, the north-east branch of the Andes, extends along nearly the whole of the northern coast. The remainder of the republic consists of a vast plain, forming part of the great Llanos of Colombia.

2. Like the Pampas of Buenos Ayres, and the Sertam of Brazil, it is covered with tall herbage, on which graze vast herds of horses, oxen, and mules. Of these, many of the inhabitants possess from 10,000 to 20,000 head.

3. The people of the plains are called Llaneros. They are all excellent horsemen; and particularly distinguished themselves, in the contest with Spain, for their patriotism and bravery.

4. Caraccas, the capital, is situated about 12 miles from the coast. Previous to 1812 it was a large city with more than 40,000 inhabitants. In that year it was destroyed by one of the most dreadful earthquakes on record, and 10,000 persons perished on the spot. The city is reviving, and now contains about one-half of its former population.

5. La Guavra is the chief port of this republic. Maracaybo, Com, and Valencia, are all considerable towns. The island of Margarita, one of the lesser Antilles, belongs to Venezuela.

Venezuela. Q. — 1. What does Venezuela comprise? Of what does the remainder consist? 2. With what is it covered? What graze there? 3. What are the people of the plains called? How did they distinguish themselves? 4. Describe Caraccas. When was it destroyed? How many persons perished? 5. Describe La Guayra, Maracaybo, &c. Margarita.

ECUADOR, OR QUITO.*

6. The Republic of Ecuador, or Quito, lies on both sides of the equator. The civilized part of the population is confined to the western coast and the valleys of the Andes; while the eastern portion of the territory is occupied by independent tribes of Indians.

7. The climate, especially of Quito, is that of perpetual spring. Vegetation never ceases, and the trees and meadows are crowned with constant verdure. The country is delightful, and is called the evergreen Quito. It is, however, subject to dreadful earthquakes and violent tempests.

8. The Gallapagos, or Turtle Islands are claimed by the Republic of Ecuador. They lie on both sides of the equator, about 650 miles westward from South America. These islands, which enjoy a delightful climate, and a fertile soil, are occupied by a colony from Guayaquil.

9. Quito, the capital, is situated on Mt. Pichincha, 9,000 feet above the sea. It contains handsome streets and squares, and many churches and convents, built with magnificence and taste. It has two universities, which are well attended.

10. Guayaquil,† on a gulf of the same name, is the sea-port of this republic. It is one of the most flourishing commercial towns of South America. Cuenca, Riobamba, and Otabala, are important towns.

Map No. 10. — What bounds Venezuela on the north? C.-Sa. — South? Bl. — East? Ga. — West? N.-Ga. — Which is the chief river? Oo. — How long is it? How far is it navigable for ships? For sloops? What river connects the Orinoco and the Rio Negro? Ce. — What lake is in the north-west part of Venezuela? Mo. — How long is it? From what lake does the Orinoco flow? Ia. — What Indians are in this territory? Gs., Cs., Os. — How many inhabitants has Caraccas? Coro? Valencia? Cumana? What island belongs to Venezuela? Ma.

What bounds Ecuador on the north? N.-Ga. — South? N.-Pu. — East? Bl. — West? P.-On. — What range of mountains is in the western part? As. — What two large rivers in the south? Ta., Ue. — These form the Amazon river. How far is it navigable for ships?

Ecuador. Q. — 6. How does the Republic of Ecuador lie? What is said of the civilized part? Of the population? The western portion? 7. Of the climate? 8. The Gallapagos islands? 9. What is said of Quito? What does it contain? 10. Describe Guayaquil.

---

* *Quito*, Kee'-to. † *Guayaquil*, Gwai'-a-keel.

For sloops? How many inhabitants has Quito? What three cities number 20,000 each? Ra., Gl., Ca. — What mountain south of Quito? Co. — This was formerly considered the highest in South America.

— 139 —

GUIANA *

1. GUIANA extends from the Orinoco to the Oyapock river, a distance of seven hundred miles. Along the sea-shore the country presents the appearance of a low extensive plain; but in the interior, near the sources of the rivers, it is elevated and mountainous.

2. The soil is exceedingly fertile, producing sugar, coffee, cayenne pepper, and cloves, with a great variety of tropical fruits, in abundance.

3. This region is divided between the British, Dutch, and French. British Guiana comprises the colonies of Essequibo,† Demarara, and Berbice. The capital is Georgetown, on Demarara river; it is a place of considerable trade. Dutch Guiana, or Surinam, has for its capital Paramaribo, on Surinam river, and the most important place in this quarter. French Guiana, or Cayenne,‡ has a capital of the same name. The latter is on an island which is 18 miles long, and 10 wide, and called also Cayenne.

4. The mass of the population of Guiana is composed of negroes Those in the British colonies have been lately set at liberty; but in Surinam and Cayenne, they are still held as slaves. The interior of the country is inhabited by Maroons, or runaway negroes, and independent tribes of Indians.

PERU.

5. PERU comprises the states lately called North Peru and South Peru. When first discovered by the Spaniards, it was inhabited by a race of Indians much more civilized than any of the other nations of South America.

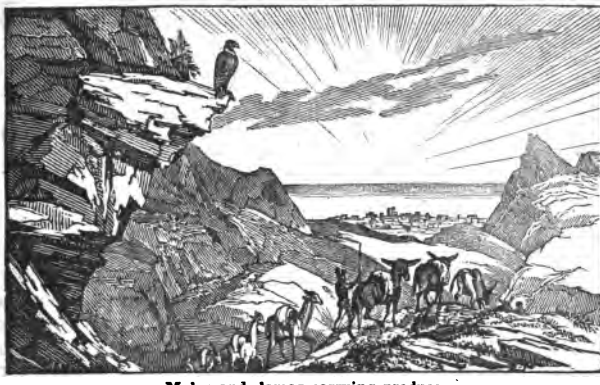
6. This country has been always proverbial for the great wealth furnished by its mines of gold, silver, and mercury.

Guiana. Q. — 1. What does Guiana comprise? What is said of the country? 2. Of the soil? 3. How is Guiana divided? 4. What is said of the population? How is the interior inhabited?

Peru. Q. — 5. What does Peru comprise? When first discovered how was it inhabited? 6. For what is it proverbial? What was

---

* *Guiana,* Ghe-a'-na. † *Essequibo,* Es-se-ke'-bo. ‡ *Cayenne,* Ki-an'.



Mules and lamas carrying produce.

It was long the most valuable of the South American colonies, and the last territory in the western continent from which the Spaniards were driven.

7. The Andes range through the whole extent of Peru. On the coast the climate is hot. Rain seldom falls, and much of the surface is sandy and arid. On the high table-land, between the ridges of the mountains, the climate is various, and the products of the soil are chiefly those of temperate regions.

8. Along the sea-coast the agriculture is confined to the banks of the various streams which descend from the Andes. Where the soil can be watered, the vegetation is most luxuriant, and surprises the traveller by the pleasing change from the sterility of the desert to the bright verdure that prevails.

9. The chief products are Indian-corn, sugar-cane, and cotton, with the fruits of almost every climate. Some valuable dye-woods and medicinal plants are also produced, particularly the Peruvian bark or Cascarilla. Wine and brandy are made to some extent, but wheat and flour are imported from Chili.

10. The silver-mines of Cerro Pasco are the most important now orked in Peru. There are also some valuable mines of gold and mercury. The commerce consists, for the most part, in the interchange of the precious metals for foreign products and manufactures, of which considerable quantities are imported.

Peru? 7. What is said of the Andes? The climate and products? 8. Of the agriculture? The soil? 9. Chief products? 10. The

11. There is a great want of good roads and bridges in Peru; and in the intercourse between the sea-ports and the interior of the country, almost every article of trade is carried on the backs of mules and lamas.

Map No. 10. — What bounds Guiana on the north? A.-Op. — The west? Va. — The south and east? Bl. — The principal rivers? Eo., Sm., Mi., Ok. — How long are the three first? How many inhabitants has Georgetown? Paramaribo? New Amsterdam? Cayenne? Wha Indians inhabit the south-east part of Guiana? As.

140

1. At the time of the Spanish conquest, Peru comprised a territory of much greater dimensions than the modern state of the same name. Its kings were a dynasty of princes called Incas; they were held to be a sacred race, to be descended from the sun, and were adored by the people.

2. The ancient Peruvians were partially civilized, and cultivated the land with much care. They also built temples and palaces of stone of great size and solidity; were skilful in the art of making vessels of gold and silver, and constructed numerous and excellent roads.

3. Forty years after the discovery of America, Pizarro, a brave but cruel chief, invaded Peru, at the head of a small Spanish army. He put the reigning Inca to death, took possession of the country, and established the dominion of his sovereign.

4. Peru, with the other American provinces of Spain, was long governed by viceroys appointed by the kings of that country; but in the year 1821, the people established a government of their own, and, with the assistance of the Colombians, achieved their independence in 1824, by the defeat of the last Spanish army at Ayacucho.

5. In the year 1836, Peru was divided into the states of North Per and South Peru, which, with Bolivia, were formed in the Peru-Bolivia Confederation, under a chief magistrate, styled the Supreme Protector Three years afterwards, the army of the Confederation was defeated b the Chilians at Yungay, and the Republic was dissolved.

---

mines? Commerce? 11. Of what is there a want? How are the articles of trade carried?

Q. — 1. What did Peru comprise? What is said of its kings? 2. Of the ancient Peruvians? 3. Of Pizarro? 4. Of Peru and the other provinces? When was independence declared? What was achieved at Ayacucho? 5. What took place in 1836? Three years afterwards?

6. Lima, the capital of Peru, is on the small river Rimac, 7 miles from the sea, and is, next to Mexico, the finest city built by the Spaniards in the New World. It is regularly laid out, and contains many handsome public buildings. The churches and convents, though robbed of a great part of their wealth during the revolution, still present a handsome appearance. In walking abroad, the ladies of Lima use a peculiar dress in which they may disguise themselves, so as to remain unknown to their most intimate friends.

Ladies of Lima.

7. Cuzco, the second city in Peru, is situated far in the interior, on one of the head branches of the Amazon river; though much decayed, it is still a handsome place. At the time of the Spanish conquest, it was the metropolis of the ancient empire of Peru. Arequipa is the chief place of trade in the southern part of the Republic. Ilay, its sea-port, is a small village.

8. Callao, the sea-port of Lima, is strongly fortified. It was the last place held by the Spaniards in South America. At Cerro Pasco, among the Andes, are the richest mines now worked in Peru: the town is elevated 13,000 feet above the level of the sea. Truxillo is a handsome town; Piura is famous for its fine breed of mules; Caxamarca, Huaura, and Caxatambo, all in the interior, are places of some note. Payta, one of the most northern ports, is much frequented by American whale-ships.

9. Guamanga contains a university richly endowed, and Guancavelica is celebrated for its mines of mercury or quicksilver. Puno and Tacna are important towns. Arica is the port through which the chief part of the trade of Bolivia is carried on. The other sea-ports, called the Intermedios, have some commerce. At Ayacucho and Yungay, important battles were fought.

Map No. 10. — What bounds Peru on the north? Er. — South? Ba. — East? Bl., Ba. — West? P.-On. — What mountains extend along the coast? As. — What desert in the south? Aa. — What lake forms part of the eastern boundary? Ta. — Which is the head branch of the Amazon? Ue. — In what lake does it rise? Rs. — How far does sloop navigation extend on it from the sea? What is the population of Lima? Cuzco? Arequipa? Guamanga? Puno? Cerro Pasco? Truxillo? Tacna? What are the ports from Ocono to Iquique called? Is. — When was the battle of Ayacucho fought? Of Yungay?

---

6. Describe Lima. What is said of the ladies? 7. Describe Cuzco, &c. 8. Callao, Cerro Pasco, Truxillo, &c. 9. What is said of Guamanga, and the other towns? What took place at Ayacucho and Yungay?

— 141 —

BOLIVIA.

1. Bolivia, formerly called Upper Peru, is the most populous and important of the South American states that threw off the yoke of Spain. It established its independence in 1825, and was named after General Bolivar, the liberator of South America.

2. It lies chiefly in the interior, and consists, for the most part, of a high fertile plain on the east side of the Andes, elevated from 8,000 to 14,000 feet above the level of the ocean.

3. This lofty territory yields copious harvests of Indian-corn, rye, barley, and potatoes, and, also, some wheat. It has cities above the region of the clouds, and cottages situated as high as the top of Mont Blanc.

Condor.

4. Lake Titicaca forms part of the western boundary of Bolivia. It has no visible outlet to the sea, above which it is elevated 12,500 feet. This lake is navigated chiefly by boats made of rushes plaited together; the mast and rudder alone are of wood, which, owing to its scarcity in this region, forms the most valuable part of the vessel.

5. The condor, the largest of the vulture kind, is found in Bolivia and other parts of the continent. Inhabiting the loftiest summits of the Andes, he descends to the lower country only in pursuit of prey. He feeds chiefly on carrion; but also attacks deer and other quadrupeds The condor is about 3½ feet long from the beak to the end of the tail, and the wings measure in extent from 9 to 13 feet.

Bolivia. Q. — 1. What was Bolivia formerly called? What is it? When did it establish its independence? After whom was it named? 2. Of what does it consist? 3. What does it yield? What of its cities and cottages? 4. Describe Lake Titicaca. 5 What is said of

6. Chuquisaca,* or La Plata, the capital, contains a university, well attended, and a public library, said to be the best in South America. La Paz is the largest city in Bolivia, and, though situated in a deep valley, stands at the height of 12,400 feet above the ocean. It contains a cathedral, and several convents and churches.

7. Potosi, the best known city in Bolivia, is elevated 13,000 feet above the sea. It is but indifferently built, and is not so flourishing as it once was. The mountain on which it is situated is one huge silver mine. It yielded in 258 years the vast sum of sixteen hundred millions of dollars; but is now less productive than formerly.

8. Cochabamba† lies in a fertile and well-cultivated district, and the city carries on a considerable trade in grain, fruits, and vegetables. Cobija, or Puerto de la Mar, is the only sea-port Bolivia possesses. It is a small village, and being situated in a desert country, is of but little importance.

Map No. 10. — What bounds Bolivia on the north? N.-Pu., Bl. — South? B.-As. — East? Bl., Py. — West? S.-Pu. — On what ocean is the south-west part situated? Pc. — Which are the principal rivers? Me., Bo., Ge., Py., Po., Vo. — How long is each of these? The largest lake? Ta. — How long is it? What two mountains east of Lake Titicaca? Sa., Ii. — These are the highest in South America. How many inhabitants has the capital? La Paz? Cochabamba? Potosi? Oruro? What desert occupies the coast of Bolivia? Aa. — What tribes of Indians are in Bolivia? Ms., Cs., As.

142

CHILI.‡

1. CHILI consists of a long, narrow tract of country, situated between the Andes and the Pacific Ocean. The climate is remarkably fine and healthy, and many parts of the country present such romantic scenes, that Chili has been called the Italy, and from its fertility, the garden of South America.

2. Its chief misfortune is that earthquakes are common, and often lay the cities and towns in ruins. Volcanoes are also numerous: among the Andes, fourteen are said to be constantly burning.

3. The soil, except in some of the mining districts, is mostly very

---

the condor? 6. The capital? La Paz? 7. Potosi? 8. Cochabamba? Which is the sea-port of Bolivia?

Chili. Q. — 1. Of what does Chili consist? What is said of the climate? What has Chili been called? 2. What is said of earthquakes and volcanoes? 3. Of the soil? Products? Agriculture, &c.?

---

* *Chuquisaca*, Chu-ke-sa'-ka. † *Cochabamba*, Co-ka-bam'-ba. ‡ *Chili*, Chee'-le

fertile, and produces the finest wheat and other grains, besides fruits of various kinds, in abundance. Wine is made to some extent, and agriculture and the raising of cattle are actively pursued.

4. The Chilese are a courteous and polite people, and appear to be more industrious and enterprising than most of the other inhabitants of South America. Mines of gold, silver, and copper, are numerous. The latter are the most abundant and profitable.

Route over the Andes.

5. Chili exports to Europe and the United States gold, silver, and copper, and to Peru grain and flour. A considerable trade is carried on with Buenos Ayres across the Andes by troops of mules, which convey merchandise, money, &c., to a considerable amount. In traversing these stupendous heights, the animals, and even their drivers, often slip from the narrow, steep roads, which wind among the mountains, and are dashed to pieces on the rocks beneath.

6. The southern part of this territory is inhabited by the Aricaunian Indians, a brave and warlike race, who have defended their liberties against the encroachments of the Spaniards ever since their first entrance into the country.

7. Chiloe and the islands in its vicinity belong to this state; also the Juan Fernandez islands. The most eastern of these is noted for being the solitary residence for several years of Alexander Selkirk, a Scotch sailor, whose adventures gave rise to the well-known story of Robinson Crusoe.

8. Santiago, the capital of Chili, is situated ninety miles from the coast, in a country that abounds in the most sublime and beautiful prospects. The houses are mostly of one story, and surrounded with gardens. The streets are regularly laid out, and many of the public buildings are handsome.

9. Valparaiso is the chief sea-port; it has an excellent harbour, and carries on considerable commerce. Valdivia, Concepcion, and Coquimba, have all some trade.

---

4. Of the Chilese? Mines? 5. Exports? Trade with Buenos Ayres? 6. Of the southern part of the territory? 7. Chiloe? F. what is Juan Fernandez noted? 8. Describe Santiago? 9. Valparaiso, and the other towns?

Map No. 10. — What bounds Chili on the north? Ba. — South? Pa. — East? B.-As. — West? P.-On. — What mountains separate Chili from Buenos Ayres? As. — What island lies south of Chili? Ce. — How long is it? What islands lie west of Valparaiso? J.-Fz. — What island was the residence of Alexander Selkirk? M.-Ta. — What islands lie north of Juan Fernandez? S.-Fx. — What is the population of Santiago? Valparaiso? Concepcion? * Quillota Santa Rosa? S. Felipe? Valdivia? Copiapo?

— 143 —

BRAZIL.

Brazil is the only portion of the new world ever governed by an European sovereign in person; the King of Portugal having reigned here, under the title of Emperor, from the year 1808 until the year 1821, at which time the country was declared independent of Portugal.

2. This is an extensive region, being twenty-five times the size of the British Islands; rather larger than the whole of the United States, and comprising almost one-half the area of South America.

3. Brazil is one of the finest countries in the world, and enjoys great natural advantages, in the fertility of its soil, the variety of its vegetable productions, and the value of its minerals.

Crossing a Brazilian River.

Brazil. *Q.* — 1. What king reigned here from 1808 until 1821? When was Brazil declared independent? 2. How does it compare with the British Islands and the United States? 3. What is Brazil?

* *Quillota*, Ke-lo-ta'.

4. The interior is very thinly settled, and much of it is yet covered with dense forests. Roads are rare; and the numerous streams are destitute of bridges, and, in many cases, of ferry-boats. The rivers are generally crossed on rafts, moved by poles; while the horse, held by the head, is made to swim.

5. The mass of the people are very ignorant and indolent. Nearly all the labour is performed by Negro slaves, who constitute about three-fifths of the whole population.

6. Agriculture is in a backward state. Manufacture scarcely exist; but commerce is actively carried on. Sugar cotton, coffee, hides, and other products of the country, are exported chiefly to the United States, Great Britain, and Portugal.

7. Brazil is rich in gold and precious stones. The diamond mines are worked on account of the government, and furnish nearly all the diamonds of commerce.

8. Cattle multiply to an immense extent, especially in the region called the Sertam; and in the extensive plains in the south, near Rio Grande, some of the large farms have from 20,000 to 40,000 head.

9. The western part of Brazil is called Amazonia; although not a political division, the name has been long in use, and originated from the reports of the early explorers of a nation of Amazons, or female warriors, residing on the banks of the Amazon river.

10. Rio Janeiro, on the bay of the same name, is the capital of Brazil, and the most populous city in South America. Its harbour is visited

Palace of San Christovao.

What does it enjoy? 4. What is said of the interior? How are the rivers crossed? 5. What are the mass of the people? 6. Of agriculture? Manufactures? Commerce? 7. In what is Brazil rich? 8. What is said of cattle? 9. Of the western part of Brazil? How did the name, Amazon, originate? 10. Describe Rio Janeiro.

by the vessels of almost every commercial nation. The city is tolerably built, much in the European style, though the streets are rather narrow.

The country palace of the Emperor, near the city, called San Christovao, being of a light and rural style of architecture, has a very pleasing effect.

11. Bahia, Pernambuco, Maranham, Para, and Rio Grande, are all important sea-ports. Tejuco, in the interior, is the chief town, and centre of the diamond district. Villa Rica, Villa Boa, and Cuyaba, are each surrounded by mining districts.

Map No. 10. — What bounds Brazil on the north? Va., Ga., A.-On. — East? A.-On. — West? Va., Er., N.-Pu., Ba., Py., Uy. — Which are the principal rivers that flow into the Atlantic ocean? An., Pa., Pa., S.-Fo. — How long are they? How wide is the Amazon river at its mouth? Which are the chief branches of the Amazon? Xu., Ts., Ma., No., Ca. — How long are they? How far is the Amazon navigable for ships? For sloops? How far can sloops ascend the Madeira from the sea? What mountains extend along the coast? Bn. — How long are they? What are the chief Indian tribes that inhabit Brazil? Ts., Ms., Bs., Gs., Cs., Xs., Cs., Bs. — What island at the mouth of the Amazon? Js. — How long is it? What land was first seen by Cabral, the discoverer of Brazil, in the year 1500? What is the population of Rio Janeiro? Bahia? Pernambuco? Cuyaba? Sergippe del Rey? What towns have 20,000 inhabitants each? Pa., Mm., Ai., S.-Pl., V.-Ba. — What district east of the St. Francisco river? Dd.

144

BUENOS AYRES.

1. The states comprising the Republic of Buenos Ayres were the first in South America that threw off the yoke of Spain. At their declaration of independence, in 1816, they were, including the Banda Oriental, called the United Provinces of the Rio de la Plata; afterwards the Argentine Republic, and, finally, the present name was adopted.

2. The surface of the country consists of vast plains, called pampas, which stretch from the Atlantic ocean to the Andes, and from north to south through the whole extent of the territory.

---

11. Which are important sea-ports? What is said of Tejuco, Villa Rica, &c.?

Buenos Ayres. Q. — 1. What states first threw off the yoke of Spain? When did they declare their independence? What were they first called? What afterwards? 2. How far do the pampas stretch? 3.

Gauchos catching Cattle with the Lasso.

3. They are chiefly destitute of trees, and covered with high grass. Numerous herds of horses, mules, and cattle, graze and range over them. The rhea, or American ostrich, with the jaguar, and several kinds of deer, also, abound on these plains.

4. The Gauchos, or inhabitants of the pampas, lead a life of rude independence. They have no care in rearing or feeding cattle; but have only to catch them with the lasso, or long leather noose, to kill, or drive them to Buenos Ayres; and, in the case of horses, to break and mark them, that they may be afterwards known.

5. Beef is the principal food used on the pampas; neither grain nor vegetables are cultivated; nor is the cow often made to give milk. Horses are so numerous and cheap, that every one rides; even the beggar begs on horseback.

6. Wheat and barley are raised in the immediate vicinity of Buenos Ayres, Mendoza, and some other towns, but in a very slovenly manner the grain being threshed by making cattle gallop over it. Fuel is so scarce, that the people make their fires with dried thistles; also, with the bones, fat, and dung of animals.

7. Buenos Ayres, the capital, is situated on the south bank of the

---

Of what are they destitute? What graze on them? What also abounds? 4. What of the Gauchos? How do they catch cattle? 5. What food is used on the pampas? What is said of horses? 6. Of wheat and barley? Of fuel? 7. Describe Buenos Ayres. 8. Cordova, and Mendoza.

Buenos Ayres.

Rio de la Plata, about 200 miles from the sea. It is the centre of trade for this part of South America, and carries on an extensive commerce with the United States and Great Britain, exporting thither great quantities of hides, horns, and tallow.

8. Cordova and Mendoza, in the interior, are noted, the first for its university, the only one in this region, and the last for its wine and brandy, and its trade with Chili, which is carried on across the Andes by means of vast droves of mules.

Map No. 10. — What country lies north of Buenos Ayres? Ba. — East? Py., Uy. — West? Ci. — South? Pa. — What mountains separate Buenos Ayres from Chili? As. — What river from Patagonia? R.-No. — From Uruguay? R.-Pa., Uy. — From Paraguay? Py., Pa. — What is the length of the Rio de la Plata? Parana? Paraguay? Colorado? Rio Negro? Saladillo? Salado, and Vermejo rivers? How wide is the Rio de la Plata at its mouth? How far is it navigable for ships? How far is the Paraguay, for sloops? What is the population of Buenos Ayres? Of Cordova? San Juan? Mendoza?

145

PARAGUAY.

1. PARAGUAY is a fine fertile district, situated between the Paraguay and Parana rivers. The population is composed chiefly of Indians and Mestizoes, not more than one-twentieth part being whites. Vast herds of cattle and horses feed on its rich plains.

Paraguay. Q. — 1. What is Paraguay? What is said of the popu

2. This state declared its independence in 1813, and shortly afterwards fell under the control of Dr. Francia, a native Creole, who assumed the powers of a Dictator, and ruled the people according to his own will. He died in the year 1840.

3. This singular man lived without pomp or parade, and, though he sometimes acted with severity, maintained his power unimpaired to the last. All the inhabitants of Paraguay are taught reading, writing, and arithmetic. Every one is obliged to work at some occupation, and idleness and beggary are unknown.

4. Maté, or Paraguay tea, is the most celebrated production of this region, and has been long used in a manner somewhat similar to the tea of China over a great part of South America.

5. Assumpcion, the capital, is an irregularly built town, on the east bank of the Paraguay river, 1000 miles from the sea. Itapua, Curuguaty, and Villa Rica, appear to be the next important towns.

URUGUAY.

6. The Republic of Uruguay was formerly called the Banda Oriental, and attached to the United Provinces of the Rio de la Plata. It was afterwards, for a time, claimed by Brazil; but in 1828, at the close of a bloody war between the Brazilians and the Buenos Ayreans, the two parties agreed to its becoming an independent state.

7. Montevideo,* the capital, stands on the north bank of the Rio de la Plata, and has the best harbour on that river. It exports great quantities of hides, &c. The country around this city is fertile, though but poorly cultivated. Maldonado and Colonia are small towns on the Rio de la Plata.

8. On the upper part of the Uruguay river are the remains of the Missions formed by the Jesuits. These contained at one time thirty towns, and 100,000 Indians, who were converted from idolatry, instructed in farming and some of the useful arts, and disciplined as soldiers after the European manner. But the towns are now decayed, and the inhabitants reduced to less than one-tenth of their former numbers.

---

lation? 2. Of the state? Dr. Francia? 3. Of the inhabitants? 4. What is the most celebrated production? 5. Describe Assumpcion and the other towns.

Uruguay. Q. — 6. What was Uruguay formerly called? To what was it attached? By what power was it claimed? What occurred in 1828? 7. Describe the capital. The other towns. 8. By whom were

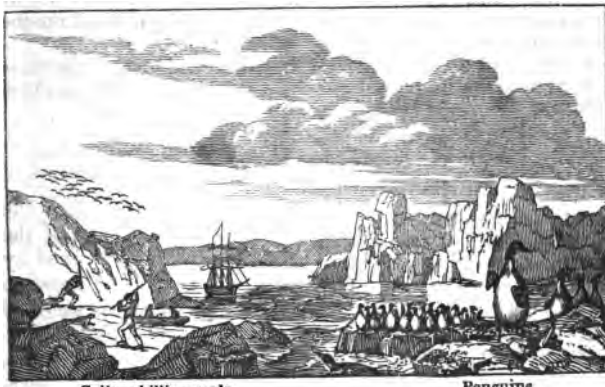
---

* *Montevideo*, Mon-te-ve'-de-o.

Map No. 10. — What river forms the east and south boundary of Paraguay? Pa. — The west boundary? Py. — What tropic extends nearly through the middle of Paraguay? Cn. — How many inhabitants has the capital? The other towns? How far is the Parana navigable?

What bounds Uruaguay on the north? Py. — On the south? R.-Pa. — West? Uy.-R. — East? Bl. — How long is the Uruguay river? R. — Negro? What is the population of the capital? Of Maldonado? How far is it from Uruguay to the Cape of Good Hope?

146



Sailors killing seals. Penguins.

PATAGONIA.

1. PATAGONIA, the southern division of South America, has never been explored except along the coast. The chief part of it appears to be a cold, barren, and desert region.

2. It is very thinly inhabited by various tribes of Indians, who are said to be excellent horsemen, and are usually described as a nation of giants. They hunt the Rhea, or American Ostrich, which abounds in the northern part of their country.

3. Terra del Fuego, lying south of Patagonia, is peopled by a race of miserable savages, in the lowest state of wretchedness.

---

the Missions formed? The Jesuits were an order of Catholic Priests, who established Missions in various parts of the world. What is said of the Indians? The towns?

Patagonia. Q. — 1. What is Patagonia? What does the chief part appear to be? 2. By whom is it inhabited? What is said of them? 3. By whom is Terra del Fuego peopled?

SOUTH AMERICAN ISLANDS.

4. SOUTH-EAST from Patagonia are several groups of islands, scattered at various distances from the continent. They comprise the Falkland Islands, South Georgia, and Sandwich Land.

5. The climate of these islands is cold and severe, and their shores are rugged and barren. They are very seldom visited, and, except the Falkland group, are uninhabited. The latter contains many good harbours, which afford shelter to the whale and seal ships, which navigate the southern seas. They are claimed both by Great Britain and Buenos Ayres. There is a small settlement on the eastern island.

6. Farther to the south, are the islands of South Shetland, South Orkney, Palmer's Land, and Graham's Land. These have all been discovered since the year 1819.

7. They are desolate, sterile regions, covered even in mid-summer with ice and snow, and are untenanted by a single human being. Their shores abound with the fur-seal, sea-elephant, and vast numbers of penguins.

8. Vessels from Stonington and other ports in New England frequent these islands for the purpose of procuring seals, the furs of which are very fine and valuable.

Map No. 10. — How is Patagonia bounded? Which are its chief rivers? Cs., P.-De. — What tribes inhabit it? Ps., Ms. — What islands lie to the eastward? Fd. — What straits separate this region from Terra del Fuego? Mn. — What island on the west coast? Wn. — What island east of Terra del Fuego? S.-Ld. — What celebrated Cape south of Terra del Fuego? Hn. — This cape is the southern extremity of Hermit's Island.

Map No. 1. — Western hemisphere. — Which is the most northern, Graham's Land, or the Falkland Isles? F.-Is. — The most southern? G.-Ld. — Which are the most eastern islands? S.-Ld. — Which is the most distant from Patagonia? S.-Ld.

South American Isles. Q. — 4. What do these islands comprise? 5. What is said of the climate? What do the Falkland Islands contain? By what powers are they claimed? 6. What is farther to the south? 7. What are they covered with? In what do their shores abound? 8. What is said of vessels from Stonington?

EUROPE.

1. EUROPE, though the smallest of the three great divisions of the eastern continent, is the first in importance, the most thickly peopled, and the best cultivated.

2. In modern times it has been the point from which civilization and knowledge have been extended to other nations, and its emigrants have peopled all the civilized countries of the other parts of the world.

3. Europe is deeply penetrated by large inland seas, and numerous gulfs, which afford great natural advantages for commercial pursuits. Its interior regions are well watered, though none of the rivers are of the first magnitude. The principal of them are the Volga, Don, Dnieper, Danube, Tagus, Loire, Rhine, Rhone, Elbe, and Vistula.

4. Though the surface of Europe is greatly diversified, yet the mountains are inferior in extent and elevation to those of Asia and America. The principal ranges are the Dofrafields, Alps, Carpathians, Apennines, and Pyrenees.

Europe. Q. — 1. What is Europe? 2. What has it been in modern times? 3. How is it penetrated? What is said of its interior regions? Which are the principal rivers? 4. What is said of the mountains?

Wild Scottish Ox.

Wild Musmon Sheep.

5. The native animals of Europe are less in number than those of some of the other quarters of the earth. The horse, ass, dog, and cat, came originally from Asia; but the ox and the sheep are, probably, of native origin. A few of the wild Scottish oxen are still preserved in parks in the north of England; and the musmon, or wild sheep, is found in Sardinia and Corsica.

Bearded Vulture.

Golden Eagle.

6. The birds of Europe comprise a number of different kinds, many of which also abound in the neighbouring regions. The bearded vulture is the largest of the European birds of prey. It is found among the highest summits of the Alps, and destroys sheep, lambs, goats, and other animals. The golden eagle frequents the British isles, and the adjacent parts; while the bustard, crane, stork, flamingo, spoonbill, and pelican, are met with in various quarters. The turkey was brought from America, the peacock and common fowl from Asia, and the guinea-fowl from Africa.

7. The cultivation of the soil has been carried, in many parts of Europe, to great perfection, and has been rendered highly productive in all the necessaries, and most of the

5. Of the animals? 6. Birds? 7. Of cultivation? 8. Manufactures?

luxuries of life. Grain of various kinds is raised in all quarters, except in the extreme northern; while the vine, olive, mulberry, and orange, flourish in the southern parts of the continent.

8. The amount and variety of the manufactures of the European nations are unrivalled; and by means of the extensive commerce carried on by the maritime states, they are distributed over almost every quarter of the globe.

148

9. Though Europe was the latest portion of the eastern continent that received the light of civilization, yet it must now be considered as the centre of refinement and learning. The most useful inventions, the finest productions of genius, and the improvement of all the sciences, belong to the people of this region.

10. Universities and colleges are numerous in almost all European countries. These provide for the higher branches of learning, and are generally on a larger scale than any in America. Some of them are endowed with extensive funds, valuable libraries, and botanic gardens; and attract many students from various quarters, of whom, some are from our own country, and other parts of the new world.

11. In several parts of Europe, the common branches of school education are much neglected, and the lower orders of the people are not so well instructed as in the United States. Numbers of them are unable to read or write; and in some countries they are extremely ignorant and bigoted.

12. Schools for instructing the poorer classes are most numerous in Prussia, Switzerland, Holland, Belgium, and Scotland. In the latter country, more of the people receive learned education than elsewhere. England, Germany, nd France, excel in literature and science.

13. In almost every part of Europe, great distinctions of rank prevail between the upper and lower classes of society Orders of nobility are established everywhere, except in Turkey and Norway. Nearly all the individuals belonging

9. What is said of Europe? 10. Of universities and colleges? 11. Common branches of education? 12. Where are schools most numer-

to these reside in splendid mansions, and enjoy every luxury which money can procure; whilst the poorer classes lodge in mean cottages, and earn a very scanty subsistence by the labour of their hands.

14. The religion of Europe is almost entirely Christian, except in Turkey, where the Mahomedan system is established. The Christian church comprises three great divisions; the Catholic, the Protestant, and the Greek church. The adherents of the first-named amount, probably, to about 121½ millions, the second to 54 millions, and the last 50 millions. There are also about 5½ millions of Mahomedans, and 2½ millions of Jews.

15. Europe comprises 61 independent states. Of these, three are styled Empires, 16 Kingdoms, 7 Grand Duchies, 1 Electorate, 11 Duchies, 1 Landgraviate, 11 Principalities, 1 Lordship, 1 Ecclesiastical State, and 9 Republics. The population of the whole is estimated at 230 millions.

16. The states which rank highest in the scale of national importance are, Great Britain, France, Russia, Austria, and Prussia. These are called the five Great Powers. They direct and control the affairs of the whole continent, and, more or less, influence the destinies of every civilized nation.

149

Map No. 11.—How is Europe bounded? Which is its largest city and river?

Norway	... Bounded?—Capital?	France	..... Bounded?—Capital?
Sweden	... Bounded?—Capital?	Spain	..... Bounded?—Capital?
Russia	.... Bounded?—Capital?	Portugal	.... Bounded?—Capital?
Denmark	.. Bounded?—Capital?	Austria	..... Bounded?—Capital?
Holland	... Bounded?—Capital?	Prussia	..... Bounded?—Capital?
Belgium	... Bounded?—Capital?	Switzerland	. Bounded?—Capital?
England	... Bounded?—Capital?	Italy	..... Bounded?—Capital?
Scotland	... Bounded?—Capital?	Turkey	..... Bounded?—Capital?
Ireland	.... Bounded?—Capital?	Greece	..... Bounded?—Capital?

Where is the White sea? Baltic sea? North sea? Irish sea Mediterranean sea? Black sea? Sea of Azov? Sea of Marmora How long is each of these seas? Where is the Archipelago?

Where is the gulf of Bothnia? G. of Finland? G. of Venice? How long are each of these? Where is the gulf of Dantzick? G. of Lyons? G. of Genoa? G. of Taranto? Where is the bay of Biscay? Where is the channel called the Cattegat? The Skager Rack?

---

ous? 13. What is said of the distinctions of rank? 14. Of religion? How is it divided? 15. What does Europe comprise? 16. Which states rank highest?

St. George's Channel? English Ch.? North Ch.? Channel of Constantinople?

Where is the strait of Dover? S. of Otranto? S. of the Dardanelles? S. of Enikale? S. of Gibraltar? How many miles wide is the last?

Where is the Petchora river? The Dwina? Onega? Tornea? Dal? Duna? Niemen? Vistula? Oder? Elbe? Weser? Rhine? Thames? Shannon? Seine? Loire? Garonne? Douro? Tagus? Guadiana? Guadalquivir? Ebro? Rhone? Po? Danube? Dniester? Bog? Dnieper? Don? Volga? How long is each of these rivers?

Where is the lake Onega? Ladoga? Piepus? Wener? Wetter? Geneva? How long is each of these lakes?

Where is the peninsula of Jutland? Of the Morea? The Crimea? What large peninsula lies south of the Bay of Biscay? Sn., Pl.— What peninsula lies west of the Gulf of Venice? Iy.

Where is cape Sviatoi? North C.? The Naze? C. Clear? Land's End? C. Finisterre? C. St. Vincent? C. de Gatt? C. Teulada? C. Passaro? C. Matapan?

Where is Iceland? The Loffoden islands? Faroe isles? Shetland? Orkney? Hebrides, or Western isles? British isles? Isle of Man? Anglesea? Scilly islands? Balearic Is.? Majorca? Minorca? Ivica? Corsica? Sardinia? Elba? Lipari Is.? Sicily? Malta? Ionian isles? Corfu? Cephalonia? Zante? Cerigo? Candia? Milo? Naxio? Negropont? Lemnos? Where is Aland? Dago? Oesel? Gothland? Oland? Rugen? Zealand? Funen?

Where are the Dofrafield mountains? Ural mountains? Pyrenees? Cevennes? Auvergne? Cantabrian? Sierra Morena? Sierra Nevada? Alps? Apennines? Carpathian? Balkan mountains? Tell the length of the range, and the heights of those mountains that have figures attached to them.

What race of people are in the northern part of Russia? Ss.— What three races are partly in Europe, and partly in Asia? Bs., Ks., Cs.

How many miles is it from Iceland to Norway? From Norway to Greenland? Scotland to Labrador? Ireland to Labrador? England to Newfoundland? France to Canada? France to Nova Scotia? Oporto to New York?

150

SWEDEN AND NORWAY.

1. SWEDEN and NORWAY are now united into one kingdom, and are under the control of the same sovereign. The government is a limited monarchy. Each state has its particular constitution, its own laws, and a national legislature.

Sweden and Norway. Q.—1. What are Sweden and Norway?

2. This region forms a vast peninsula, bounded on the one side by the Atlantic ocean, and on the other by the Baltic sea. The climate, though severe in winter, is healthful; and many of the inhabitants, especially of Norway, live to a great age.

Extensive forests cover a large part of the country, and but a small portion of it is suited to agriculture.

3. Grain is seldom raised in sufficient quantities to supply the wants of the people; and in the northern districts, pine bark or moss, is often mixed with flour, to make bread. The southern sections are the most fertile, and produce potatoes, barley, oats, rye, and some tobacco.

4. Sweden has but few manufactures, and Norway still less. The working of the mines, ship-building, the cutting of timber, and the fisheries, form the chief branches of industry. The commerce is active and extensive. The chief exports are iron, steel, copper, timber, and fish.

5. The habits, manners, and characters of the Swedes and Norwegians have much resemblance. They are lively and cheerful in disposition, polite and hospitable to strangers, and are strongly attached to their respective countries.

6. The religion of both nations is the Lutheran. Education is general, and the chief part of the lower orders of the people are able to read and write. Amongst the peasantry, every man is his own carpenter, shoemaker, blacksmith, &c.

NORWAY.

7. NORWAY was united to Denmark in 1380, and continued to form part of the Danish monarchy until 1814, when it was annexed to Sweden. It is one of the most mountainous countries in Europe; and abounds in sublime and romantic scenery.

8. Near the Loffoden islands there is a terrific whirlpool, called the Malstrom, which sometimes draws in ships, as well as whales and other animals, and dashes them on the rocks beneath.

9. Christiania, which stands at the head of Christiania firth or gulf, 25 miles from the sea, is the capital of Norway, and the seat of the storthig, or national legislature. It contains a university, a cathedral, a palace,

---

What is the government? 2. What does this region form? What is said of forests? 3. Grain, &c.? 4. Of manufactures? What are the chief branches of industry? Of the commerce? 5. The habits, manners, &c.? 6. Religion?

7. When was Norway united to Denmark? Annexed to Sweden? 8. Describe the Malstrom. 9. Christiania, Bergen, &c.

several churches, and other public buildings. Its trade is chiefly in timber, tar, and the produce of the mines. Bergen and Drontheim are the next important towns. Hammerfest, on the island of Qualoe, is the most northern town in Europe.

Christiania.

Map No. 11. — What bounds Norway on the north? A.-On. — South? S.-Rk. — East? Sn. — West? A.-On. — What mountains on the east? Dd. — How long and high are they? What islands north of the Arctic circle? Ln. — Which is the chief river? Gn. — How long is it? What is the population of Bergen? Christiania? Drontheim? Kongsberg? Which extends farthest north, Norway or Sweden? Ny.

151

SWEDEN.

1. SWEDEN, though enclosed by high mountains on the north and west, is, in general, a flat country, much diversified by lakes and rivers. The northern part of the kingdom is barren, and very thinly peopled; while the southern is much more fertile, containing some thickly settled and well-cultivated districts.

2. In science, the Swedes have attained considerable distinction. They have cultivated, with great ardour, botany, chemistry, and mineralogy; and their learned men are particularly well versed in the languages of other nations. They have also, at different periods, been noted for their martial spirit, and, under some of their kings, have acquired great military renown.

3. Stockholm, the capital, is built on several small islands and peninsulas, near the entrance of Lake Malar into the Baltic sea. It has a

Sweden. Q. — 1. What is said of Sweden? 2. Of science, &c.? 3. Describe Stockholm 4. Gottenburg, &c. Islands in the Baltic, &c.

safe and commodious harbour, and an extensive trade. The city contains the royal palace, and a number of other public buildings. The hangar, or great iron warehouse, is remarkable for the immense quantity of that article deposited in it.

Stockholm.

4. Gottenburg is the second town in Sweden, in trade and population. Carlscrona is the station of the Swedish navy. Upsal is noted for its university, and Fahlun for its copper-mines. Several islands in the Baltic sea belong to Sweden, as does also the island of St. Bartholomew in the West Indies.

Laplanders Travelling.

LAPLAND.

5. Lapland is a cold, desolate region, lying to the north of the Arctic circle. It belongs, nominally, to Sweden and Russia; but such are the sterility of the soil and the poverty of the people, that they are left to themselves, and are not under the cognizance of any general government.

6. The Laplanders are of short stature, being generally under five feet in height. They are a simple, harmless people; greatly attached to their native country, and are never known to leave it. War is their aversion, and no instance has ever occurred of any of them becoming soldiers.

---

5. What is said of Lapland? What is said of the soil, and people?

the swift-footed reindeer, which they train to draw them in sledges over the snow, form their riches. The flesh and milk of these animals comprise their food, and the skins their furniture and clothing. The Laplanders move about from place to place, with their herds of reindeer, and seldom reside in towns.

8. In summer, they live in tents, and in winter, in low, rude huts, formed of stones and earth, and covered with turf. The few villages found in this country are very small, seldom containing more than one or two hundred inhabitants; and the whole nation, though occupying a country nearly equal in extent to France, is supposed not to exceed 30,000 individuals.

Laplander's Tent.

9. These people have been nearly all converted to Christianity, and are, generally, attached to its duties. Among them, great crimes are unknown. They never use profane language; and observe the sabbath very strictly.

Map No. 11. — What bounds Sweden on the north and west? D.-Ms. — East? G.-Ba., B.-Sa. — South? B.-Sa. — Which are the principal rivers of Sweden? Ta., Kx., La., Sa., Il., La., Dl., Ca. — Tell the length of each of these. The chief lakes? Mr., Wr., Wr. — How long are the two last? What is the population of Stockholm? Gottenburg? Gefle? Carlscrona? Calmar? Upsal? and Fahlun?

152

RUSSIAN EMPIRE.

1. THE Russian Empire comprises nearly one-half of Europe and Asia, and part of North America. It reaches half-way round the globe, and embraces one-seventh part of the habitable world.

2. This state has been much increased within the last

---

6. Describe the Laplanders. 7. What is said of the reindeer? 8. How do the Laplanders live in summer? In winter? What is said of the villages? Of the whole nation? 9. To what have the people been converted?

Russian Empire. Q. — 1. What does the Russian Empire comprise? How far does it reach? 2. What is said of its increase? Of its

Russian Army.

seventy years, by the annexation of Finland, a great part of Poland, and various districts of Turkey and Persia. Its population, which, 100 years ago, was estimated at only 15 millions, now numbers four times that amount.

3. The inhabitants consist of a greater variety of different nations, than is to be found under any other government in the world. The chief races in European Russia are Russians, Poles, Finns, Tartars, and Cossacks. The latter form, in time of war, a most efficient part of the Russian army.

4. The established religion is that of the Greek church, but all others are tolerated; and there are to be found in Russia, Catholics, Protestants, Mahomedans, Jews, and Pagans, of various kinds.

The government is an absolute monarchy. The Emperor is the head of church and state, and is styled the Autocrat of all the Russias. All power emanates from him, and he is considered to derive his authority from God alone.

5. The military force of this empire is the largest in Europe, and is a source of anxiety to the neighbouring states. The regular army amounts to 700,000 men. The naval force, on the Black and Baltic seas, consists of between 200

population 100 years ago? 3. Of what do the inhabitants consist? Name the chief races. 4. What is said of the religion? Government? The Emperor? 5. Military force? Army? Navy? 6. The com-

and 300 vessels of various kinds, and is considered to be, at present, in a very efficient condition.

6. The commerce is extensive, and is annually increasing, having doubled in amount in about twenty-five years. The exports are tallow, hemp, sail-cloth, iron, timber, and grain. The manufactures have hitherto been rude, and chiefly confined to fabrics of hemp and flax; but of late years, cotton, silk, and woollen goods of various kinds, have been made to some extent, as well as glass-ware, porcelain, paper, &c.

7. Great fairs are held in different places, which attract vast crowds of merchants and traders from all parts. The inland commerce is much facilitated by the numerous rivers, canals, and lakes; and by the snow, in the winter season, over which sleighs travel with great rapidity. The chief internal trade is with China, Persia, Tartary, Turkey, &c.

8. The seal and sturgeon fisheries of the river Volga, and of the Caspian and Black seas, are extensive and very productive. Upwards of 10,000 fishing-boats are employed on the Volga alone. A Steam Navigation Company has been formed, for the purpose of introducing steam-vessels upon the various seas, lakes, and rivers of this empire.

9. The great body of the Russian people is divided into two classes, nobles and slaves. The former are often enormously wealthy and live in great luxury and splendour; the latter are the property of the nobles, who reckon the value of their estates, not by the number of acres, but of slaves.

10. The slaves, or boors, are, generally, in a state of abject poverty and ignorance. They are rude in their manners, filthy in their habits, and much addicted to intoxication. Yet some of them possess great facility of imitation, and have been found capable of copying some of the finest works of art.

11. The condition of Russia, as to education and refinement, though greatly behind the rest of Europe, is believed to be advancing. Considerable exertions have been made by the government, to introduce schools, and instruct the lower orders of the people. There are seven universities, and numerous seminaries of the higher class.

---

merce? Manufactures? 7. Of fairs? Inland commerce? 8. Fisheries, &c.? 9. How is the nation divided? What is said of the nobles? Of the slaves? 10. Describe the slaves. 11. Of education, &c.?

— 153 —

Russians leaving Moscow.

RUSSIA IN EUROPE.

1. This is the most extensive region in Europe. It comprises more than one-half of the area of that division of the continent, and stretches from the Baltic sea to the Ural mountains. The surface is generally level; its chief features being vast plains and large rivers, with numerous lakes in the north-western quarter.

2. In the northern parts of the country, it is intensely cold in winter, and mostly barren; while in the southern districts the climate is mild and pleasant, and the soil is, in general, fertile and highly productive, yielding large crops of wheat, rye, oats, &c.

3. The cold and dreary islands of Nova Zembla and Spitsbergen, belong to Russia; they lie to the northward of the Arctic circle, and are not inhabited by man. These islands abound with white bears, reindeer, seals, whales, &c., and are resorted to by hunters and fishermen. The islands of Aland, Dago, and Oesel, in the Baltic sea, also form part of this empire.

Russia, in Europe. Q.—1. What is said of this country? Of the surface? 2. The northern parts? Southern? 3. Of Nova Zembla

4. Vast forests abound in various parts of European Russia. These furnish Riga and Memel with large supplies of timber, pitch, tar, &c. which are sent to other parts of the continent.

Russian Village.

The habitations of the lower orders of the people, especially in the villages, are formed of the rough trunks of trees, the interstices between which are filled with moss and clay, and the light admitted by square openings. They thus resemble piles of logs, rather than human habitations.

5. St. Petersburg, the capital of Russia, is situated at the confluence of the river Neva with the Gulf of Finland. It was founded in 1703, by Peter the Great, and is now a magnificent city, with numerous palaces, churches, and other edifices. It is the principal place of commerce for the empire, and the seat of its learning and science.

6. Moscow, the old capital, was one of the largest cities in Europe. It was deserted by the whole population in 1812, and almost destroyed by fire, to prevent its affording an asylum to the army of the emperor Napoleon, who had invaded the country. It is now nearly rebuilt. One of the curiosities of Moscow is the great bell, the largest in the world; it is 67 feet in circumference, 19 feet high, and weighs nearly 200 tons. Among the numerous public buildings, the church of St. Basil is remarkable for the peculiar style of its architecture.

Church of St. Basil.

7. Cronstadt is on an island in the Gulf of Finland, 22 miles from the capital; it is the chief station of the Russian navy, and is noted for its extensive fortifications, docks, arsenals, &c. Riga, on the Baltic, Archangel, on the White sea, and Odessa, on the Black sea, are important sea-ports. The latter carries on a great trade in wheat.

---

and Spitsbergen? What of Aland, &c.? 4. What is said of the forests? Of the habitations, &c.? 5. Describe St. Petersburg. 6. Moscow. Describe the great bell. 7. Describe Cronstadt, and the other towns.

Map No. 11. — What bounds Russia on the north? A.-On. -- What seas on the south? Bk., Av. — What sea and gulf on the west? Bc., Ba. — What mountains on the east? Ul. — What rivers form the south-east boundary? Va., Dn. — What rivers flow into the White sea? Me., Da., Oa. — Into the gulf of Riga? Da. — The gulf of Dantzick? Va. — The sea of Azov? Dn. — The Black sea? Dr. Bg., Dr. — Tell the length of all these rivers. Which are the three principal lakes? Oa., La., Ps. — How long is each of these? What is the population of St. Petersburg? Moscow? Kazan? Cronstadt? Odessa? Riga? Wilna? Orel? Warsaw? Cracow? Lublin? On what gulf is St. Petersburg? Cronstadt? and Revel? Fd. — How long is it? How long is the gulf of Bothnia? The White sea? The Black sea? On what river is Moscow? The other chief cities?

— 154 —

POLAND.

1. POLAND, once an important state, was conquered and divided, in the year 1795, between Russia, Prussia, and Austria. In 1815, part of ancient Poland was erected into a kingdom, subject to the control of the Emperor of Russia, who, in consequence, added to his title, that of King of Poland.

2. The tyranny of the Russians proving insupportable to the Poles, they, in the year 1830, attempted a revolution; but, after defeating their oppressors in several bloody battles, were at length overpowered by superior numbers, and forced to submit. Poland is now incorporated with Russia, and no longer exists as a separate state.

3. Many of the Polish patriots, preferring exile and poverty abroad, to oppression at home, have emigrated to other parts of the world, and some of them now reside in the United States. During the war of the American Revolution, two Polish generals of distinction, Kosciusko and Pulaski, came to this country, and took part with the Americans in the contest with Great Britain.

4. The people, as in Russia, are divided into two great classes, nobles and slaves. The nobles, who are more numerous than in any other country in Europe, have always, in the eye of the world, formed the people of Poland. They are brave, frank, and hospitable, and so gay

---

Poland. Q. — 1. What was Poland? What took place in 1815? 2. In 1830? 3. What is said of the Polish patriots? What officers came to this country? 4. How are the people divided? 5. Of the

and lively in their manners, that they have been compared to the French.

5. Some of the nobles possess vast estates, and live in great splendour; while the peasants inhabit wretched hovels, and are ignorant, bigoted, and extremely dirty. The Jews are more numerous in this country than in any other part of the continent. They are industrious, but crafty, and carry on all the trade and commerce of the country. These people enjoy more political freedom here, than in any of the neighbouring states.

6. The climate of Poland is cool and moist, yet the soil is so productive in grain, that the annual export has been estimated at sixteen million bushels. Cattle, hemp, flax, wax, and honey, are also exported.

7. Warsaw was the capital of Poland. It has suffered greatly from the sieges and bombardments it has sustained. This place presents the same contrast, common in the cities of Poland and Russia, of splendid palaces and mean hovels, adjoining each other. Lublin is noted for its fairs, to which traders resort from all quarters.

8. Republic of Cracow. — This little republic was formed in 1815, and consists of the city of Cracow. with a small surrounding territory, of about 500 square miles, and 124,000 inhabitants. Though the freedom it enjoys is only by sufferance, yet it has sufficed to render its soil more fertile, and better cultivated, than that of any other part of Poland. Cracow is on the Vistula river, about 500 miles from the sea.

9. The city of Cracow was once the capital of Poland. It has a cathedral noted for its 50 altars and 16 chapels, and, also, a number of churches, monasteries, and convents. The city contains a remarkable monument, erected to the memory of the patriotic Kosciusko, 300 feet in height, and 275 feet in diameter at the base.

— 155 —

DENMARK.

1. Denmark was formerly a powerful state, and exercised an extensive control over the adjacent countries; but it is now reduced in wealth and population, and ranks only as a third or fourth-rate kingdom. It comprises the peninsula of Jutland, the duchy of Sleswick, and several islands lying in the entrance of the Baltic sea, with the duchies of Holstein and Lauenburg, in Germany.

2. The climate is temperate, and, though moist, is healthy

nobles? What do they possess, &c. Of the Jews? 6. What is said of the climate, soil, &c.? 7. Describe Warsaw. 8. The republic of Cracow. 9. The city, &c.

Denmark. Q.—1. What was Denmark formerly? What is it now?

Copenhagen.

The soil is generally fertile, and well adapted to the raising of grain and cattle. Manufactures are not much attended to; but commerce and the fisheries are carried on with some activity.

3. The Danes are an honest, industrious people, but are not remarkable for enterprise or improvement. Literature and science are on a respectable footing, being patronized by the government. There are universities at Copenhagen and Kiel, and common schools are numerous in almost all parts of the kingdom.

4. The established religion of this country is the Lutheran, but all other sects are tolerated. The government is an absolute monarchy, but it is administered with, perhaps, more mildness, than any similar government in Europe. The king of Denmark is a member of the German Confederation, as sovereign of Holstein and Lauenberg.

5. The foreign possessions of this kingdom are Greenland, Iceland, and the Faroe isles, the islands of St. Thomas and Santa Cruz, in the West Indies, some factories on the gold coast of Africa, with Tranquebar and Serampore, in Hindoostan.

6. Iceland is a cold and dreary region, inhabited by a simple, moral, and industrious race, who are better educated than the common people of almost any other country in Europe. It is celebrated for its volcano, its caldrons of boiling mud, and its hot-springs, called geysers, which spout up boiling water to the height of 100 feet.

7. Copenhagen, the capital of Denmark, is one of the most handsome cities of northern Europe. It has a good harbour, with considerable commerce, and is noted for its vast docks, and extensive fortifications.

8. Elsinore, situated at the narrowest part of the sound, or entrance to the Baltic, is the place where all ships which trade to that sea are

---

2. What does it comprise? What is said of the climate? 3. Of the Danes? Of literature and science? 4. Established religion? Government, &c.? 5. Foreign possessions? 6. Describe Iceland. For what is it celebrated? 7. Describe Copenhagen. 8. Elsinore, &c.

obliged to pay a heavy toll. The money received here pays a large portion of the expenses of the Danish government. Altona, on the Elbe, two miles from Hamburg, is, next to Copenhagen, the most important place in Denmark. Its inhabitants, 28,000 in number, are engaged chiefly in commerce. Flensburg and Sleswick are important towns.

Map No. 11. — What bounds Denmark on the north? S.-Rk. — South? Hr. — East? Ct. — West? N.-Sa. — What peninsula forms the chief part of Denmark? Jd. — What two islands lie east of Jutland? Fn., Zd. — On what island is Copenhagen? Zd. — What is the population of Copenhagen? Flensburg? Sleswick? Elsinore? In what direction from Denmark are the Faroe isles? Iceland? How far from Jutland to Scotland? Which is the principal of the Faroe isles? The population? How long and wide is Iceland? What towns in Iceland? Rg., St. — Capes? Nh.-Cy. — Bays? Be., Fe. — The principal Danish islands are Zealand, Funen, Laaland, Falster, and Bornholm. (*See Map No.* 13.)

— 156 —

THE NETHERLANDS.

1. THE late kingdom of the Netherlands, comprising Holland and Belgium, was formed in 1814, and abolished in 1830, by a revolt of the people of the latter state, and the erection of their country into a separate kingdom.

HOLLAND.

2. HOLLAND is the most level country in Europe, and much of its surface is below the level of the sea, which is prevented from overflowing the land by extensive dikes, or embankments.

3. The climate is cool, moist, and unfavourable to agriculture; yet the industry of the inhabitants has converted their marshy soil into one of the richest spots in Europe. The cattle, butter, and cheese, are excellent; and the gardens and orchards are cultivated with uncommon care.

4. In commerce, manufactures, and the fisheries, the Dutch formerly excelled all other European nations. These branches are still considerable, but are now much surpassed by those of Great Britain. Canals are more numerous in this country, than in any other part of the world. In summer, all the travelling is performed in canal-boats; and in winter, when frozen, the canals are travelled over by sleighs, and by the people on skates.

The Netherlands. Q. — 1. What did the Netherlands comprise, &c.? 2. What is said of Holland? 3. Of the climate? The cattle, &c.?

Peasantry in Holland.

5. The Dutch are remarkable for their industry, frugality, and neatness. Smoking tobacco is a practice almost universal amongst them and a Hollander hardly ever see without a pipe in his mouth. The dress and appearance of the peasantry, in some parts of Holland, are peculiar, and have not varied in a long series of years. The prevailing religion is the Presbyterian, but all others are tolerated, and the ministers of all sects are supported by the government.

6. Amsterdam, the principal city of the kingdom, is on the river Amstel, an arm of the Zuyder Zee. It is still a place of great commerce, although much declined from its former wealth and importance. The city is intersected by numerous canals, over which there are near 300 bridges. The houses and streets are kept remarkably clean.

7. The Stadt-House is the most splendid building in Amsterdam. It rests upon a foundation of 13,659 piles, or long timbers, driven into the ground. It is built of freestone, with a front of 282 feet, and cost nine million dollars. Rotterdam is next to Amsterdam in commerce. It is on the Maese, or lower part of the Rhine.

View of the Hague.

8. The Hague, the capital of Holland, is 33 miles S. W. from Amsterdam, and about three miles from the sea. It is one of the best-built cities in Europe, and contains many handsome buildings. This city is intersected by numerous canals, which are bordered by rows of trees.

9. Leyden and Utrecht are famous for their universities. The former is noted for a siege that it sustained in 1573, against the Spaniards,

---

4. The commerce, &c.? What is said of canals? 5. For what are the Dutch remarkable? Of religion? 6. Describe Amsterdam. 7. The Stadt-House. 8. The Hague. 9. Leyden, &c.

when the women performed all the duties of soldiers. Leyden contains 30,000 inhabitants, and Utrecht about 45,000.

Map No. 11. — What bounds Holland on the north and west? N.-Sa. — On the south? Bm. — East? Hr., Pa. — What river flows through this country? Re. — How long is it? What bay lies north of Amsterdam? Z.-Ze. — What country lies due west from Holland? Ed. — How many miles is it by the scale? What sea separates Holland and England? Nh. — How many inhabitants has Amsterdam? Rotterdam? roningen? Leyden and Utrecht are on one of the lower branches of e Rhine. (*See Map No.* 13.)

157

Brussels.

BELGIUM.

1. Belgium, or Flanders, is, in proportion to its extent, the most thickly-peopled kingdom in Europe. It is filled with populous cities, and covered with places remarkable in history, as the scenes of great victories and defeats, among which are Waterloo, Charleroi, Fleurus, &c.

2. The country is extremely beautiful, being mostly level with a fertile soil, and so highly cultivated, that it has been called the garden of Europe. The productions are grain, flax, madder, hops, tobacco, &c. The canals in Belgium are spacious and commodious, connecting all the great cities, hough they are not so numerous as in Holland.

3. The Belgians, formerly called Flemings, have long excelled in manufactures and the arts. They are no less industrious and persevering than the Dutch, but are more lively in their manners, and approach nearer the French, whom they prefer.

4. They are principally Catholics; but free toleration is allowed to

Belgium. Q. — 1. What is Belgium? With what is it filled? 2. What is said of the country? The productions? Of the Belgians?

all other denominations. There are a few Protestants in Belgium, and their ministers, as well as those of the other sects, are all paid out of the public treasury.

5. The universities of Brussels, Louvain, Liege, and Ghent, are all in a flourishing condition. The provision made for general instruction in this country is extensive; there are schools in every village, and the lower orders are among the best educated in Europe.

6. Brussels, the capital, is on the river Senne, a branch of the Scheld 90 miles from the sea. It is one of the finest cities in Europe, and distinguished for its public walks and fountains, as well as for its extensive manufactures of carpets and lace. Ten miles south of this city is Waterloo, celebrated for the important battle fought there in 1815.

Antwerp.

7. Antwerp is the most commercial city in Belgium, and, in the height of its prosperity, was one of the most wealthy and flourishing cities in Europe. Its commerce has greatly declined, and the population, once 200,000 in number, is not at present more than one-third that amount; the city is surrounded by a wall, with carriage roads on the top, planted with rows of trees: the Cathedral is one of the finest Gothic structures in the world; its spire is 441 feet high.

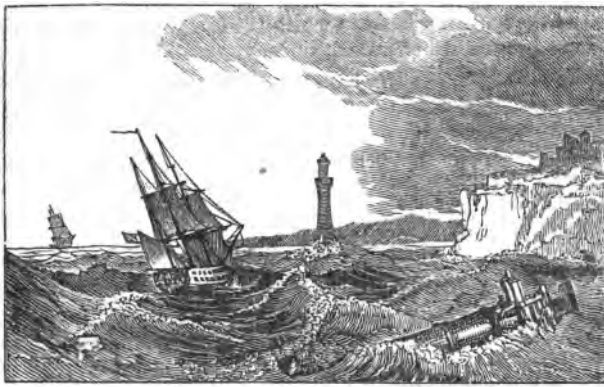
8. Ghent and Liege have both considerable manufactures. At the former city, the treaty of peace between the United States and Great Britain, was signed in 1814. Bruges was once famous for its commerce, but has greatly declined. Tournay is noted for its manufactures of carpets and porcelain; Mons for its coal-mines; Louvain for its university, and Namur for its fire-arms and cutlery.

Map No. 11. — What bounds Belgium on the north? Hd., N.-Sa. — South? Fe. — East? Pa. — Which is the principal river of Belgium? Ans. — The Meuse: the city of Liege is on its west bank: the river is 400 miles long. How many inhabitants has Brussels? Ghent? Antwerp? Liege? Antwerp and Ghent are on the river Scheldt.

---

4. What are they generally? 5. What is said of the universities? 6. Describe Brussels. 7. Antwerp. 8. Ghent. Liege, &c.

158



GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND.

1. The united kingdom of Great Britain and Ireland comprises the kingdoms of England, Scotland, and Ireland, with the principality of Wales. It consists of the islands of Great Britain and Ireland, commonly called the British Isles.

2. The possessions of this kingdom embrace colonies in Asia, Africa, America, and Oceanica, which, with the European part, form the British Empire. The population of the whole is estimated at more than 150 millions of people, comprising, with the exception of China, the greatest number of subjects under the control of any one sovereign in the world.

3. Great Britain is one of the most influential states in he world, and surpasses every other for the extent and variety of its manufactures, and for its commercial and naval importance. The intelligence, enterprise, and industry of its inhabitants are no where equalled, except in the United States.

4. The government is a limited hereditary monarchy,

Great Britain and Ireland. Q. — 1. What does the united kingdom comprise? Of what does it consist? 2. What do its possessions embrace? What is said of the population? 3. Of Great Britain? The

The sovereign power is vested in a king or queen, lords, and commons. The two last form the parliament, or great council of the nation, a body to which the Congress of the United States bears a strong resemblance.

5. The nation is divided into three great classes, the nobility, gentry, and commonalty. The first comprises dukes, marquises, earls, viscounts, and barons. The gentry includes all those who are distinguished for wealth, education, talents, or office; and the commonalty comprises tradesmen, artificers, and labourers.

6. The principal national force is the navy, which, in time of war, has numbered 1000 vessels, manned by 170,000 sailors and marines. The army amounted, at the same time, to upwards of 300,000 men, but is now reduced to about one-third that amount. The present naval force, in actual service, is near 200 sail. The national debt, contracted in about 150 years, is 3,500 million dollars, to pay the interest of which, requires three-fifths of the annual income of the state.

7. The manufactures of this country are immense, and have raised Great Britain to a decided superiority over all other nations. Cotton, woollen and silk goods, with the manufacture of metals of various kinds, are the most important. The produce of the fisheries and the mines is very great; and the coal trade, alone, is estimated to employ 160,000 persons.

8. The commerce of Great Britain is superior to that of any other nation, and extends to all quarters of the world. The merchant-vessels, including those of the colonies, amount to upwards of 27,000 in number, and are navigated by 180,000 men. One-sixth of the shipping belongs to the port of London, and two-thirds of the commerce is carried on at that city. From 35,000 to 38,000 vessels enter and depart from the ports of Great Britain every year.

9. *Population of the British Empire and Colonies.*

Great Britain and Ireland*	27,000,000
North America	1,580,000
West Indies and South America	845,000
Africa	300,000
East India Company's territories	123,000,000
Ceylon, Provinces in Chin-India, &c.	1,400,000
Oceanica—British 186,000; aborigines 389,000	575,000
Total,	154,700,000

inhabitants? 4. Government? 5. How is the nation divided? 6. What is said of the national force? Debt? 7. Manufactures? Fisheries and mines? 8. Commerce? What belongs to London, &c.? 9. What part of the British empire has the most inhabitants? What part has the next greater number? How many subjects has Great Britain in America?

*England, 14,995,000; Wales, 911,000; Scotland, 2,998,000; Ireland, 8,466,000.

— 159 —

Windsor Castle.

ENGLAND.

1. England embraces the southern part of Great Britain, and is the largest and most populous division of the island. It has great variety of surface, but is chiefly level or gently undulating, and abounds in beautiful and interesting scenery.

2. The climate, though moist and cool, is healthful, and less subject to the extremes of heat and cold than most other countries in the same latitudes.

3. The soil of England is not naturally rich, yet the agriculture is superior to that of any other country in Europe. The chief products are wheat, barley, oats, hops, &c.

4. In no part of the world, perhaps, is wealth more unequally distributed than in England, and seldom do the cottages of the poor contrast so strongly with the mansions of the rich. Costly and splendid buildings are spread over various parts of the kingdom, and many of the parks and country-seats of the nobility and gentry, display a princely magnificence.

5. Though luxury and corruption exist to a considerable extent in certain portions of English society, yet the great mass of the people is distinguished by sound morals. Benevolence may be considered a striking feature in the national character; and in no country are there

---

England. Q. — 1. What does England embrace? What is said of the surface, &c. 2. Of the climate? 3. Soil? Products? 4. What is said of wealth? 5. Luxury &c. Benevolence? 6. Literary i-

so many associations for charitable, benevolent, and religious purposes.

6. The literary institutions, and learned men of this country, are highly distinguished; and no language excels the English, in all the treasures of poetry, eloquence, philosophy, and science. Great exertions are made by various religious associations, to spread the Christian religion and civilization among the heathen; and numerous missionaries have been sent to various parts of the earth, for that purpose.

7. No general provision has been devised for the education of the poorer classes, but special efforts are now making for that purpose. Many of the people are extremely ignorant, and numbers are wholly dependent on Sunday schools for instruction. The higher seminaries of learning are very numerous, and furnish great facilities for obtaining a superior education.

8. The Episcopal is the established religion, and the sovereign is the supreme head of the church, which is governed by two archbishops and twenty-five bishops. The members of other churches are called dissenters: they comprise Methodists, Baptists, Presbyterians, &c., and, with the Roman Catholics, constitute about one half of the population.

9. This country is noted for its excellent roads and substantial bridges. Canals are numerous, and cross the island in every direction, and, with well-constructed rail-roads, greatly facilitate the vast inland trade of the kingdom. The former are near 300 in number, and extend about 2800 miles in length. The most important rail-roads are those which connect London with Liverpool, Bristol, and Southampton, and Liverpool with Manchester.

160

10. London, the capital of the British Empire, is built on both sides of the river Thames, 60 miles from the sea. It covers a vast extent of ground, being about 8 miles in length, and from 3 to 5 in breadth. It is admirably situated for trade, and is the richest, most populous, and most commercial city in the world.

11. It contains a great number of public buildings, of which St. Paul's Cathedral, the Tower, Westminster Abbey, and the Bank of England, are the chief. The bridges of London attract attention, by their beauty and utility: they are six in number, all built of stone, except one, which is constructed of iron.

12. London presents a striking contrast of wealth, intelligence, and morality, with ignorance, poverty, and vice. No city in the world has so great a number of learned societies, and literary and scientific estab-

---

stitutions, &c. 7. Education? Highest seminaries of learning, &c.? 8. Religion? Dissenters? 9. Roads, &c.? Canals? Rail-roads?

England. Q. — 10. Describe London. 11. What does it contain?

New London Bridge.

lishments; and none can compare with it in its charities for the poor, the sick, and the ignorant.

13. Five miles below London, on the Thames, is Greenwich, famous for its naval hospital for infirm seamen, and its observatory, from which longitude is reckoned. Above London is Chelsea, containing the great national asylum for invalid soldiers. Windsor, 22 miles from London, is celebrated for its castle, which has been the summer residence of the sovereigns of England, for upwards of 700 years.

14. Liverpool, on the river Mersey, near its mouth, is next to London in commerce. It is the principal seat of the trade with America. Bristol is the third commercial town in England. Hull is noted for its trade to the Baltic and the whale fishery. New Castle, Sunderland, and Whitby, are largely engaged in the exportation of coals. Portsmouth and Plymouth are great naval stations.

15. Manchester is the second place in England in population, and is famous for its extensive cotton manufactures; Leeds, Bradford, and Norwich, for woollen goods; Birmingham, for hardware; Sheffield, for cutlery; Kidderminster, for carpets; Worcester, for porcelain; Coventry, for watches and ribbons; and Gloucester, for pins.

16. Oxford and Cambridge are celebrated for their universities: Eton and Winchester, for their colleges. Bath and Cheltenham are noted for mineral waters, and are much visited by persons in quest of health or pleasure. Tunbridge, Scarborough, &c., are well-known watering

---

12. What does London present? 13. Describe Greenwich. Chelsea Windsor. 14. What is said of Liverpool, Bristol, &c.? 15. Manchester, Leeds, &c.? Sheffield, &c.? 16. Oxford, Cambridge, &c.? 17

places, and Brighton, Margate, &c., are much resorted to for sea-bathing.

17. Hastings is renowned for a great victory gained by William the Conqueror. At Bosworth, Richard the Third was defeated and killed. The battles of North Allerton, Durham or St. Nevil's Cross, Otterburn and Flodden Field, were fought between the English and Scots. At Newbury, Edge Hill, Marston Moor, Naseby, and Worcester, important actions took place between the forces of the king and the parliament. At the three last, Cromwell gained decisive victories.

Menai Bridge.

WALES.

18. Wales is a mountainous and rugged region, situated to the westward of England. The soil is less fertile and cultivated than in that kingdom, but the products are the same.

19. The manufactures are chiefly of flannel, in which the Welsh excel. The minerals are abundant, and consist of iron, lead, copper, and coal. Vast quantities of iron, chiefly for rail-roads, are imported into the United States from Wales.

20. This country, previous to the year 1283, was governed by its own kings; but since that time it has been united to England, and the oldest son of the King of England is styled Prince of Wales.

21. The Strait, which separates Wales from the island of Anglesea, is crossed by the Menai bridge, one of the most remarkable works of the kind in the world: it consists of immense iron chains, which connect arches of masonry, 560 feet apart; thus forming a safe and useful structure.

22. Merthyr Tydvil is the largest town in Wales. It is situated in the midst of numerous iron founderies and furnaces. Swansea is a noted resort for sea-bathing. Caermarthen, and Caernarvon, are both places of importance. The chief ornament of the latter is its castle, once a stately edifice, but now in ruins.

Hastings, Bosworth, &c.? 18. What is said of Wales? 19. Manufactures? Minerals, &c.? 20. When was Wales governed by its own kings, &c.? 21. What is said of the Menai bridge, &c.? 22. Merthyr Tydvil, Swansea, &c.?

— 161 —

Map, No. 11. — What bounds England on the north? Sd. South? E.-Cl. East? N.-Sa. West? Ws., L.-Sa. What strait separates it from France? Dr. What channel? Eh. What channel between England and Wales? Bl. What islands in the south part of the English Channel? Jy., Gy. These, with Alderney and Sark, though on the coast of France, belong to England: they are often called the Norman Isles.

Map, No. 12. — What rivers form part of the boundary between England and Scotland? Td., Ek. What hills? Ct. What firth separates the north-west and south-west parts of England and Scotland? Sy. Which is the most northern town in England? Bk. The most eastern? Le. What is the most southern extremity of England? L.-Pt. The most western? L.-Ed. What small islands lie south-west of the Land's End? Sy.

What are the three chief rivers of England? Hr., Ts., Sn. What two rivers form the Humber? Oe., Tt. How long are each of these? The Thames? The Severn? What rivers flow into the North Sea? Into the Wash? The English Channel? The Bristol Channel? Sn. How long is the latter? What are its chief branches? What rivers flow into the Irish Sea?

What islands lie at the mouth of the Thames? Sy., Tt. In the English Channel? Wt. In the Irish Sea? Mn. What is the population of the two last? Which is the chief lake in England? We. How long is it? (*Mere*, or *meer*, signifies a lake.) The chief mountains? Hn., Sw. How high are they?

What is the population of *London*? Manchester? *Liverpool*? Birmingham? *Leeds*? *Bristol*? Plymouth? *Norwich*? *Sheffield*? *Hull*? *Nottingham*? Portsmouth? *New Castle*? *Sunderland*? *Bath*? *Cambridge*? *Oxford*? *Worcester*? *Shrewsbury*? *Chester*? *York*? *Carlisle*? On what rivers are the towns printed in Italics situated? In what years did the battles that are marked on the Map take place? What light-house is near Plymouth Sound? Ee.

How far is it from England to Denmark? To Russia? To Holland? To the island of Jersey? To Guernsey? To Spain? To Newfoundland? To Cape Clear? How wide is the Strait of Dover? How long and wide is the Irish Sea?

What bounds Wales on the north? L.-Sa. South? B.-Cl. East? Ed. West? S.-G.-Cl. What bay on the west coast? Cn. On the south? S.-Bs., Cn. What island lies north of Wales? Aa. What is its population? What strait separates it from Wales? Mi.

What rivers are wholly in Wales? Cy., Dy., Tf., Ty. What rivers rise in Wales, but flow into England? De., Sn., Te., We. What are the three chief mountains in Wales? Sn., C.-Is., Pn. How high are the two first? How many miles is it from St. David's Head to Carnsore Point? What is the population of Merthyr Tydvil? Swansea? Caermarthen? Mold? Holywell? Caernarvon? Holyhead?

— 162 —

SCOTLAND.

1. SCOTLAND is situated to the north of England, and is celebrated for the grandeur and wildness of its scenery. It is divided by the Grampian hills into two sections, the Highands and the Lowlands.

2. The Highlands is a cold, hilly region, well adapted for pasturage; but the Lowlands is an agreeably diversified country, with a tolerable soil, which is well cultivated, and produces oats, wheat, rye, barley, potatoes, and flax, to a considerable extent.

3. The manufactures are flourishing and important, especially those of cotton. The principal minerals are coal, iron, and lead, of which the two first are very abundant. The commerce and the fisheries are valuable, and give employment to a great number of the inhabitants.

4. The Scotch, as a nation, are grave, serious, and reflecting; but, at the same time, enterprising. They are, in general, better instructed, and more moral and religious in their habits, than any other people in Europe. Many of the natives of this country have distinguished themselves in various branches of literature, and some of them have been amongst the most celebrated philosophers, historians, and poets, of Great Britain.

5. The Hebrides, Orkney, and Shetland isles, belong to Scotland. These are the resort of an immense number of sea-fowl, which the islanders catch by swinging with ropes from the high perpendicular cliffs to which they resort.

6. Edinburg is the metropolis of Scotland, and has long been distinguished as the seat of science and literature. Its university is particularly noted, and contains a greater number of students than any other in Europe. The city has few manufactures; it carries on, however, a considerable trade through Leith, which, though formerly about two miles distant, is now connected with it by continuous ranges of buildings. This city is near the Firth of Forth, 396 miles from London.

7. Glasgow is the largest city in Scotland, and owes its prosperity chiefly to manufactures. It contains a large number of handsome buildings, mostly of modern construction. Its university is celebrated, and the cathedral is the best-preserved specimen of Gothic architecture in Scotland. Glasgow is on the river Clyde, 28 miles from its mouth.

Scotland. Q. — 1. How is Scotland situated? Divided? 2. Describe the Highlands. Lowlands. Products. 3. The manufactures. Minerals. Commerce, &c. 4. Describe the Scotch. 5. The Hebrides, &c. 6. Describe Edinburg. Its universities. 7. Glasgow. 8. Pais-

Edinburgh.

8. Paisley, Perth and Dunfermline are noted for their cotton and linen manufactures, Kilmarnock for carpets, and Carron, near Falkirk, for its immense iron-works. Greenock, Leith, Dundee, Montrose and Aberdeen are the principal sea-ports.

9. Stirling is celebrated for its castle, Melrose and Kelso for their ancient abbeys, Ayr as the scene of some of the exploits of the famous Bruce and Wallace, and Gretna Green for the marriages of fugitive lovers from England.

10. Bannockburn is famed for the decisive victory gained by king Robert Bruce over Edward II. of England, and Dunbar for that achieved by Oliver Cromwell over the Covenanters. At Preston Pans and Falkirk the Pretender routed the royal army, and at Culloden Moor his adherents were totally overthrown.

——— 163 ———

Map 12. — What bounds Scotland on the north and west? A.-Oc. East? N.-Sa. South? Ed., I.-Sa. What separates Scotland from Ireland? N.-Cl. How wide is it? Which is the most northern part of Scotland? D.-Hd. Southern? M.-Gy. Eastern? B.-Ns. Western? A.-Pt.

Firth or Frith is used in Scotland for Bay and Strait. Where is Dornoch Firth? Cromarty F.? Murray F.? F. of Tay? F. of Forth? Solway F.? F. of Clyde? Wigton Bay? Glenluce B.? Sound of Jura? The Minch? Little Minch?

Where is Cape Wrath? Dunnet Head? Duncansby H.? Kennaird's H.? Tarbet Ness? Buchan N.? Mull of Galloway? M. of Cantire? Ardnamurchan Point? (Ness and Mull are the same as Cape, Head, or Point.)

What islands lie west of Scotland? Hs. or W.-Is. What islands

---

ley, Perth, Greenock, &c. 9. What is said of Stirling, &c.? 10. Bannockburn, Dunbar, &c.?

lie north? Oy. What Firth separates them? Pd. How wide is it? What islands lie north-east from the Orkneys? Sd. What is the population of the Shetland Is.? Orkney Is.? Hebrides? Which is the chief town of the Hebrides? Sy. Orkneys? Kl. Shetland Is.? Lk

Where is Staffa? Iona? Staffa contains the magnificent natural curiosity called Fingal's Cave. Iona was long ago celebrated for its religious institutions, schools, and learned men.

Lakes and inlets are called Lochs in Scotland. Where is Loch Shin? L. Mare? L. Ness? L. Rannoch? L. Tay? L. Lomond? L. Leven? On an island in the latter are the ruins of the castle in which the celebrated Mary, Queen of Scots, was imprisoned. How long is L. Ness? L. Lomond? Where is Loch Assynt? L. Broom? L. Sunart? L. Linnhe? L. Awe? L. Fine?

What rivers flow into Murray Firth? Sy., Dn. The North Sea? Yn., Dn., De., N.-Ek., S.-Ek., Td. The F. of Tay? Ty., En. The F. of Forth? Fh. Solway F.? Ek., Nh., De. The F. of Clyde? Dn., Ar., Ce. Where is the Caledonian Canal? This work connects Murray Firth and L. Linnhe. The Firths of Clyde and Forth are united by the Forth and Clyde Canal. On what rivers are the chief cities?

Where are the Grampian Hills? Cheviot Hills? Ben Nevis? Cairngorm Mt.? Ben Lawers? How high are the three last? Ben Nevis is the highest mountain in Great Britain. (Ben signifies Mountain.)

What is the population of Glasgow? Edinburg? Aberdeen? Paisley? Dundee? Leith? Greenock? Kilmarnock? Dunfermline? Where is John O'Groat's House? This was long ago noted as the most northerly dwelling in Scotland: it is now in ruins.

How far is it from the Clyde to the West Indies? Scotland to Labrador? To Iceland? From the Faroe to the Orkney Is.? From Greenland to the Shetland Is.? To the Faroe Is. from Shetland? To Norway? From Scotland to Norway? To Sweden?

164

IRELAND.

1. IRELAND is a fine fertile island, lying west of Great Britain. The climate is mild and moist, which produces a beautiful and continued verdure, and has led to its poetical appellations of the Emerald Isle, and Green Erin.

2. The surface of the country is moderately uneven, with few mountains. There are many peat bogs, which supply fuel, but are useless for other purposes.

3. Agriculture is in a less improved state than in England or Scotland. Barley, oats, wheat, and flax, are exten-

Ireland. Q. — 1. What is Ireland? What is said of the climate? 2. The surface, &c.? 3. Agriculture? Chief products? 4. Grazing

sively cultivated, but potatoes are the chief product, and form the principal food of the poor.

4. Grazing, and the dairy, are the best-managed parts of Irish husbandry, and produce the best beef, and butter, in Europe. Linen is manufactured to some extent, and forms, with the products of the soil, the chief exports of the country.

5. The people of Ireland are generous, quick-witted, and hospitable; they are, however, easily offended, and prone to resentment. Though the Episcopal is the established religion, yet four-fifths of the inhabitants are Roman Catholics. Many of them are ignorant of the English tongue, and use the Irish only, a language similar to that spoken by the Scotch Highlanders.

6. The great mass of the peasantry live in a state of abject poverty and wretchedness. They are degraded by the oppression of the great landlords, and their agents. The payment of church tithes, and numerous taxes, swallows up their earnings, and discourages the spirit of industry. Beggars are numerous, and, notwithstanding the natural fertility of Ireland, many of the poor have perished with hunger.

7. The Giant's Causeway, which is situated on the north coast of the island, is an astonishing work of nature. It consists of vast numbers of perpendicular columns of basaltic rock, rising from 200 to 400 feet above the surface of the water.

8. Dublin is the chief city of Ireland: some of its streets are truly magnificent, and its public edifices are numerous and beautiful. Among the latter, St. Patrick's Cathedral, the Bank of Ireland, the Exchange, and the Four Courts, are conspicuous. The chief parts of the suburbs, and some streets in the city, are the abodes of thousands who live in wretchedness and distress: indeed, few places exhibit a greater contrast between wealth and poverty. Dublin is connected with the Shannon river by the Royal and Grand Canals.

Four Courts, Dublin.

9. Cork is the second city in Ireland. Its harbour, called the Cove, is capacious and strongly fortified. The trade of this place in salted provisions, &c., is very great. Limerick is famous for the sieges it has sustained: it exports vast quantities of grain. Belfast has an extensive commerce: its trade is principally in linen and provisions. Kilkenny

---

&c.? Linen. 5 Describe the people. Religion. 6. What is said of the peasantry? Beggars? 7. Describe the Giant's Causeway? 8.

is noted for its quarries of beautiful white and black marble. Killarney is much resorted to by those who visit the adjacent lake.

10. Waterford has an extensive intercourse with England and Wales. Galway, Sligo, Drogheda, Dundalk, Newry, and Londonderry, are all considerable sea-port towns. The last is celebrated for its siege by the forces of James II., in 1691. Near Drogheda on the river Boyne, and also at Aghrim, William III. defeated the army of James II.

——— 165 ———

Map, No. 12. — What bounds Ireland on the north, south, and west? A.-On. On the east? I.-Sa. What separates it from England? I.-Sa. How long and wide is the Irish Sea? What separates Ireland from Scotland? N.-Cl. How wide is it? What separates Ireland from Wales? S. G.-Cl. How wide is it? Which is the most northern part of Ireland? M.-Hd. The most southern? M.-Hd. The most western? C.-Sl. Where is Rathlin I.? Tory I.? North Isles of Arran? Achil I.? Clare I.? Enisture I.? S. Isles of Arran? Blasket I.? Valentia I.? C. Clear I.?

Where is Carlingford Bay? Dundalk B.? Dublin B.? Bantry B.? Kenmare B.? Dingle B.? Galway B.? Killala B.? Donegal B.? Wexford Harbour? Waterford H.? Cork H.? Malin Head? Fair H.? Kinsale H.? Mizen H.? Loop H.? Urris H.? Teillen H.?

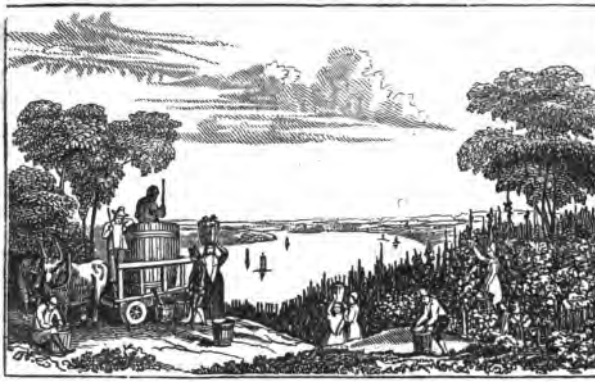
Where is Lough Swilly? (The term Lough is used in Ireland for lakes and inlets of the sea.) Where is Lough Foyle? Belfast L.? L. Strangford? L. Neagh? L. Erne? L. Allen? L. Ree? L. Deirgart? Of what river do the three last named loughs form a part? Sa. Where is L. Mask? L. Corrib? Lake of Killarney? This lake is celebrated for the beauty and grandeur of its scenery. How long is Lough Neagh? This is the largest lake in Ireland.

Where is the Bann River? Foyle? Boyne? Liffey? Avoca, or Ovoca? Slaney? Barrow? Suire? Blackwater? Lee? Shannon? How long is the Shannon? What river flows into L. Neagh? Br. — Where is the Ghurane Tuel Mt.? How high is it? This is the highest mountain in Ireland. When were the battles of Aghrim and the Boyne fought? On what river is Dublin? The other principal cities?

What is the population of Dublin? Cork? Limerick? Belfast? Galway? What three towns have from 20,000 to 28,000 inhabitants? Ly., Ky., Wd. What eight towns have from 10,000 to 18,000? A Ny., Dk., Bn., Ae., So., Cl., Da. How far is it from Ireland to Iceland? To Labrador? To Spain? From Cape Clear to Land's End?

In what part of Ireland is Ulster? Leinster? Munster? Connaught? (These are provinces which are subdivided into counties. they were in ancient times independent kingdoms.)

Dublin. 9. Cork, Limerick, Belfast, &c. 10. What is said of Waterford, Galway, &c Londonderry? Drogheda?



Making Wine. Gathering Grapes.

FRANCE.

1. FRANCE is a great and powerful kingdom, and has for ages been distinguished for the important part it has enacted in the affairs of Europe.

2. The country is beautiful and fertile, and the climate temperate, dry, and salubrious. The chief part of France is one widely extended plain, a large portion of which is well adapted to cultivation.

3. Agriculture is more advanced than in many other parts of Europe. The manufactures are various and productive; and the commerce, though not so extensive as that of Great Britain or the United States, is carried on with almost all parts of the globe.

4. The chief products of the soil are wheat, Indian-corn, grapes, olives, some tobacco, and the sugar-beet. The vineyards of France yield 250 different kinds of wine; they occupy 5 million acres of ground, and their annual produce is from 800 to 900 million gallons.

5. The French are a brave, active, and ingenious people, polite and gay in their manners, and fond of show and amusement. The chief part of the inhabitants of France are but imperfectly educated, not more than one-half being able to read and write; yet no country presents greater facilities for acquiring a knowledge of the higher branches of learning.

France. Q. — 1. What is France? 2. What is said of the country? 3. Of agriculture, &c.? 4. Products? Vineyards? 5. Describe the

6. Colleges, schools, and public libraries, are numerous, and the city of Paris contains the most celebrated scientific association in the world. There is no established religion in France, and the ministers of all the different sects are supported by the government. The chief part of the inhabitants, however, belong to the Catholic church.

7. France has long held a high rank, as a military power. Under the late Emperor Napoleon, the army amounted to a million of men, and was the terror of continental Europe. It now amounts to upwards of 400,000 men. The navy is on a respectable footing, and comprises 280 vessels of all classes, of which 55 are of the line, and 20 steam-vessels.

8. Paris, the capital of France, is the second city in Europe for size, and probably the first in splendour. The public buildings and palaces are numerous, and, generally, excel those of London. It is also noted for the beauty of its public gardens, fountains, and monuments, and for the value of its libraries and literary institutions. It is especially distinguished for the gaiety of its inhabitants, and the variety of its public amusements. Paris is on the river Seine, 112 miles from its mouth.

Lyons.

9. Lyons is on the river Rhone, at its junction with the Soane. It has long been noted for its silk manufactures, and its gold and silver stuffs. Marseilles is the principal sea-port in the Mediterranean Bordeaux is well known for its wines; Rouen for its manufactures of cotton, woollen, and linen and Strasburg for its cathedral, the steeple of which is the most lofty of any in Europe.

10. Rheims, Lille, Nantes, and Orleans, are important places. Toulon is the chief naval station on the Mediterranean; and Brest, on th Atlantic, is the principal naval depôt in the kingdom. Havre, at th mouth of the Seine, is the sea-port of Paris, and the chief seat of th trade of France with the United States.

11. The island of Corsica, in the Mediterranean sea, belongs to France. Its surface is mountainous, and its soil is stony and ill cultivated. It has some valuable iron-mines, and there are important fish

---

French. Of the chief part of the inhabitants? 6. Colleges, &c.? Religion? 7. What is said of military power? Army? Navy? 8. Describe Paris. 9. Lyons, &c. 10. Rheims. Lille, &c. 11. Corsica.

eries on the coast. Bastia is the chief town, and Ajaccio was the birthplace of Napoleon Bonaparte.

Map No. 11. — What bounds France on the north? E.-Cl., Bm. — South? Sn., M.-Sa. — East? Bn., Sd., Sa. — West? B.-By. — What river flows into the English channel? Se. — Into the Bay of Biscay? Le., Ge. — Into the Gulf of Lyons? Re. — How long is each of these rivers? What river forms the boundary between France and Baden? Re. — What lake does the Rhone flow from? Ga. — What mountains separate France from Spain? Ps. — From Sardinia? As. — What mountains between the Rhone and the Loire? Cs. — West of the *Loire? Ae. — What is the population of Paris? †Marseilles? Lyons? ‡Bordeaux? §Rouen? Nantes? ‖Lille? ¶Toulouse? Strasburg? Orleans? **Toulon? What island in the Mediterranean sea belongs to France? Ca. — How long and wide is it? How many inhabitants has Bastia? ††Ajaccio? How far is it from France to Canada? To Nova Scotia? On what river is Bordeaux? Rouen? Nantes? Tours? Orleans? Toulouse? Strasburg?

167

Madrid.

SPAIN.

1. SPAIN was once the most powerful and important kingdom in Europe, but it is now among the most feeble and least influential.

2. It is traversed by several chains of mountains, which cause the surface of the country to be greatly diversified with beautiful and romantic scenery. The soil is generally fertile; but agriculture is much neglected, and, owing to the

Spain. Q. — 1. What was Spain? 2. By what is it traversed?

Loire, Lwor. §*Rouen*, Roo-ong'. **Toulon*, Too-lo^ng'. †*Marseilles*, Mar-salze'. ‖*Lille*, Lele. ††*Ajaccio*, Ajat'-sho. ‡*Bordeaux*, Boor-do'. ¶*Toulouse*, Too-looz'

anarchy and civil wars which have long prevailed, manufactures and commerce are reduced to a deplorable state.

Merino Sheep.

3. The exports are wines, brandy, raisins, wool, silk, barilla, &c.: the imports are chiefly British manufactures and colonial produce. The rearing of Merino Sheep is an important branch of industry in Spain, and the fineness of the wool is well known: a few years ago, these animals were estimated at 18 millions, attended by 16,000 shepherds.

4. The government of Spain, once the most absolute in Europe, is now a limited monarchy. The constitution of 1837 guarantees the liberty of the press, and other essential principles of freedom. The Catholic is the national religion; and the maintenance of its worship and ministers is provided for by the new constitution. There are a number of universities in Spain; but the modes of instruction pursued in them are unsuited to the present times. Education is not general; and but few of the lower class learn to read and write.

5. Gravity of manner, with great pride of birth and rank, distinguish the higher class of Spaniards: but those of the lower order are cheerful, frugal, good-humoured, and courteous. The favourite amusements of the people are music, dancing, and bull-fights: the latter exhibitions are generally attended by thousands of both sexes and of all ranks, and are looked upon with enthusiastic delight.

6. Spain formerly possessed immense territories in North and South America; but of all her possessions, Cuba and Porto Rico alone remain. The other colonies consist of the Canary Islands in the Atlantic Ocean, and the Philippine, Caroline, and Ladrone Islands, in the Pacific.

7. Madrid, the capital of Spain, is on the Mazanares, a small branch of the river Tagus. It has neither commerce nor manufactures, and derives its importance solely from being the seat of government. It contains a number of churches and convents, and several splendid palaces. It is a handsome though gloomy city. Barcelona and Cadiz are the chief sea-ports: the latter is on the isle of Leon. Seville, Granada, Valencia, Cordova, and Saragossa, are among the principal cities.

8. Gibraltar, at the southern extremity of Spain, is the strongest

---

What is said of the soil, &c.? 3. Exports? Imports? Merino Sheep? 4. Of the Government? Religion? Universities, &c.? 5. What is said of the higher class? Lower orders? Amusements? 6. What did this country formerly possess? Of the colonies? 7. Describe Madrid. Barcelona, &c. 8. Gibraltar. Balearic isles. 9. Andorra.

fortification in the world. It was captured by the English in 1704, and has continued in their possession ever since.

The Balearic Isles comprise Majorca, Minorca, Ivica, and some smaller islands: they are inhabited by a peaceable and simple people. Port Mahon, in Minorca, is often resorted to by United States' ships of war.

9. ANDORRA.—This little republic, with a territory of 190 square miles, and a population of 15,000 inhabitants, occupies a valley on the southern side of the Pyrenees. Besides Andorra, the capital, a town of 2,000 inhabitants, it contains five small villages.

Map No. 11. — What bounds Spain on the north? Fe., B.-By. — South? M.-Sa., A.-On. — East? M.-Sa. — West? Pl. — Which are the chief rivers of Spain? Do., Ts., Ga., Gr., Eo. — How long are each of these? Which are the chief mountains? Ps., Cn., S.-Ma., S.-Na. — Which separate France from Spain? Ps. — What mountain lies west of Barcelona? Mt. — This is noted for its singular form and the monasteries built on it. What islands lie east of Spain? Bc. — What strait separates Spain from Africa? Gr. — How wide is it? What is the population of Madrid? Barcelona? Seville? Granada? Valencia? Cordova? Cadiz? Malaga? Saragossa?

168

Lisbon.

PORTUGAL.

1. THIS kingdom, like Spain, has declined from its forme greatness. Three centuries ago, it was celebrated for th alour of its soldiers, and the skill of its sailors. It took distinguished lead in modern discoveries, and was for a tim the first commercial nation in Europe.

2. The surface of the country is agreeably diversified with mountains, hills, and plains. The climate is mild, pleasant, and healthful; and the soil is rich in the fruits and products

---

Portugal. Q. — 1. What is said of Portugal? 2. The surface? Climate? Chief staples? 3. What is said of commerce? Manufac-

Portuguese Peasants.

peculiar to southern Europe. Wine, salt, oil, and wool, are the chief staples.

3. The commerce of Portugal, which, during the time of its prosperity, was very extensive, is now inferior to that of almost every other maritime nation in Europe. The manufactures are small in amount; and an imperfect knowledge of the commonest arts is observable among the people.

4. The agriculture is in a very backward state; and few of the improvements common in other countries are known here. Much of the produce of the soil is carried to market on the heads of female peasants.

5. The Catholic is the established religion of Portugal. The government was formerly an absolute monarchy, but it is now limited; a new constitution having been adopted in 1838. Literature and science are but little encouraged, and the education of the people is greatly neglected; the means for their instruction being imperfect and deficient.

6. The Portuguese and Spaniards are very similar in character and manners; yet a strong dislike exists between the two nations. The peasantry of this country are held by the nobles in a state little short of bondage. They have been usually represented as indolent, cowardly, and revengeful; but, on many occasions, during the late war with France, they displayed qualities not unworthy their gallant ancestors.

7. Lisbon, the capital, is a place of considerable commerce, and has one of the finest harbours in the world. It was destroyed by an earthquake in 1755, and 30,000 of the inhabitants perished. It is an ill-built and dirty place, but contains some handsome public buildings and squares.

8. Oporto, the second city in the kingdom, is famous for its port-wine, of which about 75,000 pipes are annually exported. St. Ubes is noted for its salt-works, at which about 100,000 tons of salt are made every year. Coimbra is celebrated for its university, which contains 40 professors, and about 800 students.

Map No. 11. — What bounds Portugal on the north and east? Sn. — West and south? A. On. — Which are the principal rivers? Ts., Do., Ga. — How long is each of these? On what river is Lisbon? Ts. — Oporto? Do. — Coimbra? Mo. — What is the population of Lisbon? Oporto? Coimbra? St. Ubes? Braga? Elvas? Evora?

---

tures? 4. The agriculture? 5. Religion? Government? Literature, &c.? 6. The Portuguese? 7. Describe Lisbon. 8. Oporto, St. Ubes, &c.

— 169 —

GERMANY.

1. GERMANY is an extensive country, situated in the centre of Europe. It once contained upwards of 300 separate divisions; but now comprises the Empire of Austria, the kingdoms of Prussia, Bavaria, Saxony, Hanover, and Wirtemburg, with 29 smaller states and four republics or free cities

2. These form the Union styled the Germanic Confedera tion; the object of which is to provide for mutual safety and defence. Each state is independent within its own territory, but for general purposes the whole is governed by the Diet of Germany, a body composed of plenipotentiaries and deputies from the different states.

3. This region is traversed by numerous rivers and extensive ranges of mountains. Agriculture is carried on with great diligence, and mining is one of the chief sources of wealth. The inland trade is very considerable, but the manufactures, though important and various, are not so flourishing as formerly.

Brown European Bear.

The Wolf.

4. Germany is well supplied with cattle, horses, hogs, and sheep: of he latter, those of Saxony and other districts are particularly noted for he fineness of their wool. The bear, wolf, and wild boar, are less common than formerly, but are still found in remote districts among the forests and mountains.

Germany. Q. — 1. What did it once contain? What does it comprise? 2. What do these form? What is said of each state? Of the Diet? 3. By what is this region traversed? What is said of agriculture? Mining? Trade? Manufactures? 4. What is Germany well supplied with? What is said of sheep? The bear, &c. 5. De-

5. The Germans are generally an honest, industrious and persevering race: to their ingenuity the world is indebted for the invention of printing, watches, and gunpowder; they are passionately fond of music, and their learned men are distinguished for their attainments in literature and science.

6. The public libraries of this country are 150 in number, with 5 million volumes, and there are not less than 10,000 uthors, producing every year from 4,000 to 5,000 books. The universities are highly celebrated, and much resorted to from other countries. Seminaries, styled gymnasia, are numerous, many of which rank as distinguished schools of learning.

7. In the means of education, the north of Germany far surpasses the south. In Saxony, Prussia, Bavaria, and some of the smaller divisions of the north, schools are numerous, and there is hardly any person to be found that cannot read; while in other quarters of the country the lower classes are still very ignorant and averse to improvement.

8. In religion, Germany is divided between the Catholic and Protestant churches: the former includes the majority of the people, numbering 20 millions, while the Protestants amount to about 16 millions: the latter comprise Lutherans and Calvinists principally: these have lately united in many places into one church, which takes the name of the Evangelical Church. There are also some Moravians, Mennonists, Jews, &c.

— 170 —

EMPIRE OF AUSTRIA.

1. AUSTRIA is one of the most important states in Europe: it comprises about one-third of Germany, with Hungary, Galicia, Dalmatia, and the kingdom of Lombardy and Venice n Italy.

The inhabitants are principally Catholics; but Protestants of various sects, and members of the Greek church, likewise abound; all religions being tolerated. The liberty of

---

scribe the Germans. What did they invent? What is said of music? Learned men? 6. Of the public libraries, &c.? Authors? Universities? Seminaries, &c.? 7. What is said of education? 8. Of religion? What do the Catholics number? The Protestants? Of the Lutherans, Calvinists, &c.

Austria. Q.—1. What is Austria? What does it comprise? 2. What is said of the inhabitants? 3. Of the sea-coast and com

the press, and the freedom of debate, are, however, much restricted.

3. Austria has but a small extent of sea-coast, and a limited commerce. It has no foreign colonies; but the Duchies of Tuscany, Parma, and Modena, in Italy, are dependent states. Gold, copper, iron, mercury, and salt, abound; the salt-mines of Wieliczca in Galicia, have been worked for 600 years, but still appear inexhaustible. Grain and wine are the chief products of the soil.

4. The Emperor of Austria is absolute in all parts of his dominions, except in Hungary and some other districts. In the former he is styled king only, and his authority is limited by a diet or assembly of the nobles and clergy. The inhabitants belong to several distinct nations, comprising Germans, Poles, Italians, Hungarians, Jews, Gypsies, &c.

5. The Austrian army is large, amounting to upwards of 270,000 men, and though respectable for its discipline has not generally ranked high for efficiency. The Empire possesses no advantages for a navy; yet a small force has been organized on the Gulf of Venice, and an armed flotilla is maintained on the Danube.

Square of Imperial Palace, Vienna.

6. Vienna, the capital of the Austrian Empire, is one of the finest cities in Europe. It contains a number of palaces, churches, and other public buildings, some of which are splendid structures. The citizens are described as a good-natured, hospitable people, much devoted to pleasure and luxurious living.

7. Prague, Gratz, Presburg, and Lemburg, are all places of some note. Buda and Pest, situated on opposite sides of the Danube, are joined together by a bridge of boats. These towns united, form the

---

merce? Of gold, &c.? 4. Of the Emperor? Describe the inhabitants. 5. What is said of the army? Navy? 6. Describe Vienna 7. Prague, &c. Trieste.

most important city in Hungary. Debretzin is also an important town. Trieste is the chief sea-port of Austria, and a considerable trade is carried on between this place, the United States, and other countries.

8. Brunn, Lintz, Salzburg, and Steyer, are manufacturing towns. Hallein and Halle are noted for their salt works, and Idria for its mines of quicksilver. Marienbad, Carlsbad, Toplitz, and Sedlitz, are much visited for their baths and mineral waters. At Olmutz, General Lafayette was imprisoned for a considerable time.

9. Sor, Losowitz, Reichenberg, Kolin, &c., are famous for importan battles fought between the Austrians and Prussians. At Austerlitz an Wagram, Napoleon Bonaparte gained decisive victories, and at Aspern ae was repulsed by the Archduke Charles.

171

Berlin.

PRUSSIA.

1. Prussia was erected into a kingdom in the year 1701, and from a small and weak state has become one of the most important and powerful nations of Europe.

2. It is in general a level country, with numerous rivers, lakes, and marshes. In some parts the soil is fertile, while in others there are large tracts unfit for cultivation. Grain and cattle are the chief productions.

3. Prussia has but little foreign commerce, but the inland trade is considerable. The manufactures are principally

---

8. What is said of Brunn, &c.? Hallein, &c.? Marienbad, &c.? Olmutz? 9. Sor, &c.? Austerlitz, &c.?

Prussia. Q. — 1. What is said of Prussia? 2. What is it? Its productions? 3. Commerce? Manufactures? What are the chief

linens, woollens, and articles of iron and steel. The chief part of the people are of the Protestant faith, and belong to the Evangelical or Lutheran Calvinistic Church; but all other sects are tolerated, and are on an equal footing.

4. The government is an absolute military monarchy. The army is famous for its discipline, and almost every man must serve in it for three years as a soldier. Education is more general, and schools more numerous here than in any country in Europe.

5. This kingdom comprises two detached sections. The western part, which is situated on the river Rhine, fell into the possession of Prussia in 1815. The eastern contains various provinces, some of which once belonged to Poland. Neufchatel in Switzerland, and some other small districts, also belong to this state.

6. Berlin, the capital of Prussia, is a handsome city, and is remarkable for its splendid edifices, its numerous literary institutions, and particularly for its university. Manufactures of printed cotton, woollen, linen, silk, and porcelain, are carried on to some extent.

7. Dantzick, Konigsberg, Stettin, and Stralsund, are the chief seaports. Breslau is noted for its fairs; Magdeburg for its sieges and strong fortifications; Halle for its university and salt-works; and Potsdam for its palace of Sans Souci and other splendid buildings. Halberstadt and Erfurt are important towns.

8. At Wittenburg, Luther commenced the Reformation. Cologne is famed for Cologne-water; Dusseldorf, Elberfelt, and Barmen, for manufactures of various kinds; Aix-la-Chapelle for its warm baths; and Treves for its cathedral. Coblentz is an important fortress.

9. At Rosbach, Lissa, Zorndorf, Liegnitz, &c., Frederick the Great gained important victories, and at Cunnersdorf he was defeated. The actions fought at Minden, Eylau, Friedland, Erfurt, and Lutzen, are all celebrated. At the first battle of Lutzen, in 1632, Gustavus Adolphus, the renowned king of Sweden, was killed.

172

BAVARIA, &c.

1. This kingdom is, next to Austria and Prussia, the most important state in Germany. It consists of two distinct territories, situated about 40 miles apart, and separated from each other by Wirtemberg and Baden.

---

part of the people? 4. What is said of the government? Army? Education? 5. What does this kingdom comprise? 6. Describe Berlin. 7. Dantzick and the other towns. 8. What is said of Wittenburg? Cologne, &c.? 9. Rosbach, Lissa, &c.? Minden, &c.? Erfurt, &c.?

Bavaria, &c. Q.—1. What is said of Bavaria? 2. Of the soil,

2. The soil is moderately fertile. Cattle and hogs are reared in considerable numbers. Wine, brandy, and beer, are made to some extent. Education has been of late years very generally diffused, and the institutions of learning are in a flourishing condition.

3. Munich, the capital, is one of the handsomest cities in Germany, and is noted for its university, theatre, library, and splendid galleries of sculpture and paintings. Nuremburg, Augsburg, Ratisbon, Wurtzburg, and Bamberg, are important places: watches and globes were invented in the first named city, and it has been long famous for its trade in children's toys.

4. Famous victories were gained at Blenheim by the Duke of Marlborough, at Hohenlinden by General Moreau, and at Eckmuhl and Ratisbon by the Emperor Napoleon.

HANOVER.

5. HANOVER, formerly an electorate, became a kingdom in 1815; and was under the control of a governor-general, appointed by the king of England. On the accession of queen Victoria to the British throne, her uncle, Ernest Augustus, became king of Hanover.

6. Agriculture and manufactures are not very flourishing; but the mines are important, and extensively wrought. Gold, silver, iron, lead, and copper, all abound.

7. Hanover is the capital of the kingdom, and derives its chief importance from that circumstance. Gottingen is celebrated for its university, which contains 900 students. Its library, observatory, and botanic gardens, are among the most valuable in Europe. Emden is the chief sea-port. Hildesheim, Luneburg, and Osnaburg, have considerable manufactures.

SAXONY.

8. This kingdom is one of the most populous and industrious of the German states. Commerce, manufactures, and mining, are carried on with great industry. Vast flocks of sheep are raised, the wool of which is largely exported, and is highly esteemed for its fineness.

9. Dresden, the capital, is one of the finest cities in the north of Germany. Its public buildings, libraries, and galleries of paintings, are remarkable. Leipsic is famous for its university; and for its great fairs, held twice a year, at which vast quantities of books and other articles are sold.

&c.? Education? 3. Describe Munich, &c. 4. What is said of Blenheim, &c.? 5. Of Hanover? 6. Agriculture, &c.? 7. Describe Hanover. Gottingen, &c. 8. What is said of Saxony? 9. Describe

10. Chemnitz is noted for its cotton manufactures, Meissen for porcelain, Freyburg for its mines and mining academy, Zittau for its extensive trade with Bohemia, and Herrnhut as the original seat of the Moravian brethren. Leipsic, Dresden, and Bautzen, were the scenes of important battles fought by the emperor Napoleon against the Allies.

WIRTEMBERG, OR WURTEMBURG.

11. This state was erected into a kingdom in 1806. It is one of the most fertile and best cultivated parts of Germany, and produces grain, wine, and fruits of various kinds. Cherries are extensively raised, from which is made the strong liquor called kirchwasser. Geese and snails are reared and fattened in surprising numbers, and sent to Vienna and Italy.

12. Stuttgard, the capital, is a well-built city. The royal library contains 200,000 volumes, and is remarkable for its collection of bibles, which comprises 8250 copies, in 68 different languages. Ulm is celebrated for its cathedral. Reutlingen and Tubingen are both important towns: the latter is noted for its university, Halle for its salt-works, and Heilbron for mineral springs.

— 173 —

THE SMALLER GERMAN STATES.

1. *The Grand Duchy of Baden* consists principally of a narrow but fertile plain on the east side of the Rhine. Grain and wine are the chief products. The manufacture of wooden clocks is a considerable branch of industry: they are sent in great numbers annually to every part of Europe, and also to America.

2. Carlsruhe, the capital, and Manheim, are amongst the finest cities in Germany. Heidelburg is famous for its enormous copper tun, which holds 600 hogsheads. Baden is noted for its warm baths, and Freiburg for a magnificent Gothic minster, the spire of which is 500 feet high.

3. The Hessian States comprise the *Electorate of Hesse Cassel*, the *Grand Duchy of Hesse Darmstadt*, and the *Landgraviate of Hesse Homburg*. Hesse Cassel lies chiefly on the river Fulda, southward of

---

Dresden. Leipsic. 10. Chemnitz and the other towns. 11. What is said of Wirtemberg? What is extensively raised? 12. Describe Stuttgard, Ulm, &c.

Smaller German States. Q.—1. Describe Baden. 2. Carlsruhe and the other towns. 3. What is said of the Hessian States? Hesse Cas-

Hanover and Prussia. It comprises also two small districts, situated, one 35 miles north, and the other 20 miles east, of the principal territory. The soldiers of this state are no longer hired to foreign powers.

4. *Hesse Darmstadt* consists of three separate districts, two of which are on the north and the other on the south side of the river Mayne. Hesse Homburg comprises two distinct sections, separated 50 miles from each other.

Mentz.

5. Cassel, Darmstadt, and Homburg, are the capitals. Hanau, Fulda, and Marburg, are important towns in Cassel; and Worms and Mentz in Darmstadt: the latter is strongly fortified, and is celebrated as the place where printing was invented. The house where Faust and Guttemburg made their first essays in that art is still shown.

6. The Saxon Duchies comprise the *Grand Duchy of Saxe Weimar* and the *Duchies of Saxe Coburg Gotha, Saxe Meiningen Hildburghausen,* and *Saxe Altenburg.* They are situated between Prussia and Bavaria, the kingdom of Saxony and the Hessian States.

7. Saxe Coburg Gotha contains also a small district situated 170 miles south-west from the residue of the state. Weimar, Gotha, Meiningen, and Altenburg, are the capitals of the Saxon Duchies.

8. Weimar enjoys a high reputation for learning. It has been the residence of some celebrated authors. Gotha, Altenburg, Eisenach, and Jena, are important towns. The last is noted for its university and the great victory gained by the French over the Prussians.

9. Mecklenburg comprises the *Grand Duchies of Mecklenburg Schwerin* and *Mecklenburg Strelitz.* The capitals are Schwerin and New Strelitz. The former is situated on a lake of the same name. Rostock and Wismar are important commercial towns. Gustrow is noted for its beer, and Ludwigslust for its magnificent palace.

10. *Oldenburg* is almost surrounded by the dominions of Hanover. Some small districts in Holstein and the south part of Prussia also

---

sel? 4. Hesse Darmstadt. Hesse Homburg? 5. Cassel, &c.? 6 The Saxon Duchies? 7. Saxe Coburg Gotha? 8. Weimar, &c.? 9 Mecklenburg, &c.? 10. Oldenburg, &c.? 11. Brunswick, &c.? 12

belong to this state. Oldenburg, the capital, is a well-built city, with a handsome ducal palace. The other towns are small and unimportant.

11. *Brunswick* consists of five distinct portions, surrounded by the territories of Prussia and Hanover. The city of Brunswick, the capital, is noted for its annual fairs. Wolfenbuttel, 7 miles south of Brunswick, contains one of the most valuable libraries in Europe.

——— 174 ———

12. The *Duchy of Nassau* is situated on the rivers Rhine and Mayne. It is famous for its wines and mineral waters. Wisbaden, the capital, is much visited on account of its warm springs. At Niederselters, two million bottles are filled annually with the celebrated Seltzer water.

13. *Anhalt Dessau*, *Anhalt Bernburg*, and *Anhalt Cothen*, form two detached portions, entirely enclosed by Prussia and Brunswick. The capitals are Dessau, Bernburg, and Cothen.

14. The Principalities of *Schwartzburg Rudolstadt* and *Schwartzburg Sondershausen* form separate territories, which lie about 25 miles apart. The capitals are Rudolstadt and Sondershausen

15. *Reuss Greitz* and *Reuss Schleitz* consist of two distinct sections, separated but a short distance from each other. Greitz and Lobenstein are the capitals. Gera is the chief town.

16. *Lippe Detmold* and *Lippe Schauenburg* are situated, the latter on the north and the other on the south side of the Weser river, and about 10 miles apart. Buckeburg and Detmold are the capitals.

17. *Hohenzollern Hechingen* and *Hohenzollern Sigmaringen* form a connected domain. They lie in the southern part of the kingdom of Wirtemburg. Hechingen and Sigmaringen are the capitals.

18. *Waldeck* consists of two detached sections about 30 miles from each other. Pyrmont, the largest town, is noted for its mineral waters, and is annually visited by many strangers. Arolsen is the capital.

19. *Lichstenstein*, the smallest of the principalities, is situated on the upper part of the river Rhine, between Austria and Switzerland. Vadutz is the capital.

20. The Lordship of *Kniphausen* is the smallest of the German States. It is situated within the territories of Oldenburg. The capital is the castle of Kniphausen, with a small adjoining village containing only 50 inhabitants.

21. The FREE CITIES OF GERMANY are *Hamburg*, *Lubec*, *Bremen*, and *Frankfort*. These are all that remain of the famous Hanseatic League,

---

Describe Nassau, &c. 13. Anhalt Detmold, &c. 14. Schwartzburg Rudolstadt, &c. 15. Reuss Greitz, &c. 16. Lippe Detmold, &c. 17. Hohenzollern Hechingen, &c. 18. Waldeck. 19. Lichtenstein. 20.

that once comprised 85 of the most commercial European towns, and ruled, by their wealth and arms, a great part of northern Europe.

22. Hamburg is the chief commercial city in Germany. It is the seat of extensive manufactures, and the ships of almost all nations visit its port.* Lubec and Bremen are important commercial towns. At Frankfort, the Germanic Diet, or Congress of the German princes, holds its meetings. This city is celebrated for its semi-annual fairs, which attract merchants from all parts of Europe.

23. The Duchies of *Holstein* and *Lauenburg* belong to Denmark. Altona, Kiel, and Gluckstadt are the chief towns in Holstein, and Lauenburg in Lauenburg.

24. The Grand Duchy of *Luxemburg* belongs to Belgium. Luxemburg, the capital, is noted for the strength of its fortifications. Bastogne is the next most important town.

175

Map, No. 13. — What bounds Germany on the north? N.-Sa., Dk., B.-Sa. South? Sd., L. and V. East? Pd., Ga., Hy. West? Hd. Bm., Fe. (See table of the German States.) How many German States are there? How many are Empires? Kingdoms? Grand Duchies? Duchies? Principalities? Electorates? Landgraviates? Lordships? Republics? How many are Catholic? Protestant? Absolute in government?

How long and wide is Germany? Its area? Population? To what state does Holstein and Lauenburg belong? Dk. Luxemburg? Bm. Point out the different states on the Map. The Smaller German States which have a common title will be found under their respective heads: thus, the Saxon Duchies are under SAXE; those of Anhalt, under ANHALT, &c. The capitals designate the general position of the special divisions.

What rivers flow into the North Sea? Re., Es., Wr., Ee., Er. Into the Baltic Sea? Or. How long is each of these? Which is the principal river in the south of Germany? De. Into what river do the Meuse, Moselle, Mayne, and Neckar, flow? Re. The Lech, Iser, Inn, Ens, Leitha, March, Raab, and Drave? De. The Save also flows into the Danube. Into what river do the Hunte, Aller, Fulda, and Werra, flow? Wr. The Moldau, Mulda, Saale, Havel, and Ilmenau? Ee. The Neisse, Bober, and Wartha, are the chief branches of the Oder Into what sea does the Danube flow? (See Map, No. 11.)

Where is Muritz Lake? L. Schweiloch? Ammer L.? Cheim L.? Atter L.? Traun L.? L. of Constance? Cirknitz L.? The latter is an alternating lake: it is full of water in winter, which passes off in the early part of summer, and the bottom of the lake becomes a pasture-ground. Where are the islands of Rugen, Usedom, and Wollin? To what state do they belong? Pa. What island lies west of Holstein? Hd. To what power does it belong? G.-Bn.

Kniphausen. 21, The Free Cities, &c. 22. Hamburg, &c. 23. Holstein and Lauenburg. 24. Luxemburg.

* In the year 1842, a dreadful fire occurred in Hamburg, which destroyed property to the amount of 30 million dollars.

Where are the Mts. called the Fichtelberg, Erzgebirge, and Reisengebirge? These form the Sudetic Mts. Point out the Hartz, Bohmerwald, Arlberg, and Vosges Mts. How high are all the foregoing? Point out the Black Forest or Schwarzwald, Odenwald, and Hercynian Mts. The Alps. How long are they? Point out the Rhetian Alps, Julian Alps, Noric Alps, and Styrian Alps.

Where are Bohemia, Moravia, Austrian Silesia, Upper Austria, Lower Austria, Tyrol, Styria, Carinthia, and Carniola? These are the German provinces of Austria. The two last form the kingdom of Illyria. Where is Pomerania, Brandenburg, Silesia, Saxony, Westphalia, and Rhine? These are the German provinces of Prussia. For the other great divisions of Austria, see Map, No. 11. They are Hungary, Galicia, and Dalmatia. Chief towns, Pest, Lemberg, and Zara. The remaining Prussian provinces are Posen and East and West Prussia. Chief towns, Posen, Konigsberg, and Dantzick.

Point out the capitals of the German States. Tell the population of each. Point out those capitals situated on rivers that are named in the Map, and the names of the rivers. Point out the places where universities and colleges are situated. Tell the number in each state respectively. Which is the most populous city in Germany? Va. The next? Bn. What two cities have respectively 121,000 and 125,000 inhabitants? Pe., Hg. In what years did the battles fought in Austria take place? In Prussia? Bavaria? Saxony? Wirtemberg? Saxe Weimar.

——— 176 ———

Berne.

SWITZERLAND.

1. SWITZERLAND is the most mountainous country in Europe. It is remarkable for the grandeur of its natural features and scenery; and for the freedom of its political institutions.

2. It is known by the name of the "Helvetic Republic;"

Switzerland. Q.—1. Describe Switzerland. 2. By what name is it

and is composed of 22 cantons, each of which is an independent state; but for national security they are united together, and governed by a general diet.

3. Switzerland is traversed by the Alps, the highest mountains in Europe. Extensive fields of ice, called glaciers, cover the summits of these elevated peaks; and avalanches, composed of vast bodies of snow, sometimes rush from their lofty sides down upon the valleys, burying travellers, buildings, and even whole villages, in one common ruin.

4. The nature of the country presents various obstacles to its cultivation, but they have been, in a great measure, overcome by the industry of the inhabitants; and spots apparently doomed to eternal sterility are crowned with vegetation. The products are grain, wine, and various kinds of fruit; but pasturage is the chief object of the farmer.

5. The Swiss are an honest, brave, and hospitable people, ardently attached to liberty, and to their native country. Education is general amongst them; and great crimes are rare. The Protestants and Catholics in Switzerland are about equal in number. The languages spoken in this country are the German, French, and Italian.

6. Berne is usually considered the capital of Switzerland; but Zurich and Lucerne share with it that honour, each being alternately the seat of government for two years at a time. Geneva is beautifully situated on the lake of the same name. It is a handsome city, and is distinguished for its literary institutions, and for its extensive manufactures of watches, of which 70,000 are made here annually.

7. Near Schaffhausen are the celebrated Falls of the Rhine. Morgarten and Morat were the scenes of splendid victories gained in the cause of freedom. At Morgarten, 1600 Swiss routed 20,000 Austrians. In this battle the celebrated William Tell distinguished himself. At Zurich the French defeated the Austrians and Russians.

8. Among the quadrupeds found in Switzerland are the Alpine spaniel

Alpine Spaniel.

Ibex.

known? 3. What is said of the Alps? Avalanches? 4. Cultivation? Products? 5. Describe the Swiss What is said of education? Lan-

and the ibex. The former is one of the largest animals of its kind. Several of them are kept by the monks of Mount St. Bernard, for the purpose of discovering travellers lost in crossing the mountains in time of snow. The ibex is a species of wild goat, and dwells among the highest precipices of the Alps, whither they are often followed by those who hunt them.

Map, No. 13. — What bounds Switzerland on the north? Fe., Bn., Wg. South? Sa., L. and V. East? Tl. Where are the Jura Mts.? Pennine Alps? Lepontine Alps? How high is Mt. Rosa? The Jura Mts.? Where is Lake Constance? Geneva L.? L. Neufchatel? L. Lucerne? L. Zurich? How long is each of these lakes? Where is Neufchatel and its territory? This little state is a Swiss canton, but under the government of the king of Prussia. What is the population of Geneva? Basle? Berne? Zurich? Lucerne? Which of these towns have colleges? How high are the Falls of the Rhine? When were the battles of Morgarten, Morat, and Zurich, fought? What three considerable rivers rise in Switzerland? Re., Re., In.

177

ITALY.

1. ITALY forms a great peninsula, bounded on the east by the Gulf of Venice, and on the west by the Mediterranean

guages? 6. Describe Berne, &c. Geneva. 7. Where are the Falls of the Rhine? What is said of Morgarten, &c.? Of William Tell? Zurich? 8. What quadrupeds are found in Switzerland?

Italy. Q. — 1 What does Italy form? 2. What is it? For what is

sea. It was the country of the ancient Romans, and is filled with the remains of their splendid cities and buildings.

2. Though in a state of decline, Italy is one of the most interesting countries in the world, and almost every spot in it has been the scene of some remarkable event. The country is noted for the mildness of its climate, and for the beauty, diversity, and romantic character of its scenery.

3. The soil is generally fertile, and is in some parts well cultivated The chief products are wheat, corn, rice, oil, wine, and silk. The principal fruits are oranges, figs, dates, and almonds.

4. The Roman Catholic is the established religion in all the Italian States. In this country are to be found the finest specimens of architecture. The churches are costly and magnificent, and the dwellings of some of the nobles rival the palaces of kings and emperors.

5. The Italians are highly distinguished for their skill in sculpture, painting, architecture, and music; but are not much noted at present for literature or science. They are naturally a lively people, with active passions and ardent imaginations, and generally have expressive countenances and animated sparkling eyes.

Italian Costume.

6. The higher ranks wear the usual European dress; but among the lower orders, there are various local peculiarities of costume. The food of the Italians is generally light; fruits and vegetables are more common articles of diet than flesh, and, as in the other parts of the south of Europe, oil and wine are much used by all classes of the people.

---

it noted? 3. What is said of the soil? 4. Religion? What are to be found? 5. Describe the Italians. 6. Their dress. Food.

7. Italy comprises the kingdoms of Sardinia and Naples, the kingdom of Lombardy and Venice, the Popedom, the Grand Duchy of Tuscany, the Duchies of Parma, Modena, and Lucca, the Republic of San Marino, and the Principality of Monaco.

SARDINIA.

8. The kingdom of Sardinia embraces the north-wes section of Italy, together with the large island of Sardinia he continental part of this kingdom is fertile and well cul

Genoa.

tivated, and there are some manufactures of silk. Savoy, Piedmont, Genoa, and Nice, are the continental provinces.

9. Turin, the capital of the kingdom, is the most regularly built of all the Italian cities. Genoa, surnamed the Superb, was long the capital of a powerful republic, and is noted for being the birth-place of Columbus. It is now the chief sea-port of Sardinia. Alessandria, Nice, Asti, Coni, and Mondovi, are all cities of importance. Cagliari is the chief town of the island of Sardinia.

10. At Montenotte, Mondovi, and Marengo, Bonaparte gained decisive victories. That of Montenotte was the commencement of his brilliant career of conquest, and Marengo one of his most renowned achievements. At Novi, the French were defeated by the celebrated Russian General Suwarrow.

11. Monaco.—The principality of Monaco is a small independent state, under the protection of Sardinia. It contains a population of 7000. Its capital, Monaco, is a village with 1000 inhabitants. Mentore is the chief town.

Map, No. 11.—What Mts. bound Italy on the north? As. What sea on the south and west? M.-Sa. East? G.-Ve. What islands lie west? Ca., Sa., Ea. South? Sy. What strait separates Italy from Turkey? Oo. What mountains extend through Italy? Ae.

---

7. What does Italy comprise? 8. Describe Sardinia. 9. Turin, Genoa, &c. 10. What is said of Montenotte, &c.? Marengo? 11 Monaco.

Map No. 13. — Where is the river Po? What rivers flow into it on the north? South? What rivers flow into the Gulf of Venice? How long are the Po and Adige? Where is Lake Garda? L. Como? L. Maggiore? How long is each of these? How is Sardinia bounded on the north? South? East? West? Where are the Maritime Alps? Cottian Alps? Pennine Alps? How high is Mont Blanc? Mt. Rosa? How long and high are the Apennines? What is the population of Turin, and the other towns? When were the various battles fought? On what rivers are Turin? Alessandria, and the other chief towns? Where is Monaco?

Map No. 11. — Where is the island of Sardinia? How long and wide is it? What strait separates it from Corsica? Bo. — What is the population of Cagliari? Sassari?

178

LOMBARDY AND VENICE.

1. The kingdom of Lombardy and Venice, called also the Lombardo-Venetian kingdom, is situated between the river Po and the Alps. It belongs to Austria, and is one of the most fertile and best-cultivated territories in Italy. Agriculture, trade, and manufactures, are in a thriving state; and science and the arts are much encouraged.

Milan Cathedral.

2. Milan, the seat of government, is on the Olona river, a branch of the Po. It is a handsome city, and was greatly improved by the Emperor Napoleon. It was founded near 600 years before the time of our Saviour, and was forty times besieged, forty times taken, and four times destroyed and rebuilt. The public buildings are numerous and splendid. The cathedral is the finest specimen of Gothic architecture in existence, and the statues with which it is adorned are said to amount to 4000.

3. Venice, the capital of the ancient republic of that name, was long the chief maritime city of the south of Europe, and though its extensive commerce and naval greatness have departed, it is still an important place. Venice is a remarkable city, being built upon 72 islands, joined

Lombardy and Venice. Q. — 1. What is said of Lombardy and

together by 500 bridges. It has canals for streets, and boats or gondolas for carriages. It is at the head of the Gulf of Venice.

4. Padua and Pavia are noted for their universities, Verona for the remains of a vast Roman amphitheatre, Cremona for violins, Brescia for fire-arms, Bergamo for its great fair, and Mantua for its strong fortifications. At the battle of Pavia, Francis I., king of France, was taken prisoner. Lodi, Arcola, and Rivoli, were, particularly the first, the scenes of important battles between the French and Austrians.

PARMA, MODENA, AND LUCCA.

5. The Duchies of Parma, Modena, and Lucca, are fine fertile and populous districts, situated south of Lombardy and Venice. Parma is governed by Maria Louisa, the widow of the late emperor of France; Modena, by an Austrian duke; and Lucca, by its own duke.

6. Parma gives name to the celebrated Parmesan cheese, and Modena is noted for its Carrara marble, the finest in the world. The capitals are handsome cities, which have the same name as the duchies to which they respectively belong. Placentia and Reggio are the next important towns.

TUSCANY.

7. The Grand Duchy of Tuscany is the most prosperous state in Italy. Manufactures of silk, soap, and Leghorn bonnets, are carried on to a considerable extent. The latter employs a number of women and children.

8. Florence, the capital, surnamed the Beautiful, is one of the handsomest cities in Europe. Its palaces, churches, galleries, and libraries, are all celebrated. Leghorn is the sea-port of Tuscany, and has an extensive commerce. Pisa, not far from Florence, is noted for the Campanile, or leaning tower, which is 190 feet high, and inclines upwards of 15 feet from the perpendicular. It is now 600 years old.

THE POPEDOM.

9. The territory forming the Popedom, called also the States of the Church, occupies the centre of Italy. It is ruled by the Pope, who is the head of the Catholic church, and is invested with absolute power, both spiritual and temporal.

Venice? 2. Milan? 3. Venice? 4. Padua, &c.? 5. Describe the Duchies, &c. 6. What is said of Parma, &c.? 7 Tuscany? 8

10. Rome, the capital of these states, was, in ancient times, the largest city in the world. It was 50 miles in circumference, and had a population of two million inhabitants. Though now much decayed, and a great part of it in ruins, it is still the most interesting city in Europe.

Rome.

11. It contains a vast number of churches, superb palaces, and magnificent remains of antiquity. St. Peter's, the largest of its churches, and the largest in the world, was one hundred and eleven years in building, and cost a sum equal to one hundred and sixty millions of dollars at the present day. Bologna, Ferrara, and Ancona, are, after the capital, the most noted towns.

12. San Marino. — This little republic is under the protection of the Pope. It occupies a tract of 40 square miles, with 7000 inhabitants; and has retained its independence 1300 years. The capital is situated on the summit of a mountain, and is surrounded with walls.

Map, No. 13. — What bounds Lombardy and Venice on the north? South? East? West? What is the population of the chief towns? Point out those situated on rivers. When were the different battles fought? How is Parma bounded? Modena? Lucca? Tuscany? States of the Church? Modena and Tuscany comprise each two distinct territories. What is the population of the cities in those states? How long and high are the Apennine Mts.? Where is San Marino? On what river is Florence? Verona, &c.?

Map No. 11. — What is the population of Rome? Ancona? Leghorn? On what river is Rome? What island lies between Tuscany and Corsica? Ea. This is noted for having been the residence of Napoleon Bonaparte in 1814 and 1815.

Florence, &c.? 9. Popedom? 10. Rome? 11. What does it contain? 12. Describe San Marino.

— 179 —

NAPLES.

1. The kingdom of Naples, or of the Two Sicilies, is the most considerable in Italy for extent and population. It occupies the southern half of Italy, together with the island of Sicily, and the Lipari Isles.

Naples.

2. Both parts of this kingdom have a warm climate, and a luxuriant soil. The fig-tree, almond, cotton-plant, and sugar-cane, all flourish with great exuberance; yet the cities and towns are filled with beggars, and persons destitute of employment.

3. The supineness of the government, with the indolence of the people, prevent agriculture, manufactures, or commerce, from being diligently pursued. The latter is chiefly carried on by foreigners; for no Neapolitan vessel ever ventures farther than the Straits of Gibraltar.

Porcupine.

Quail.

Naples. Q. — 1. What does Naples occupy? 2. Of the climate, soil, &c.? 3. Government? Commerce, &c.? 4. Wild animals?

4. The principal wild animals found in Italy are the wolf and wild boar. These, though rare, are still occasionally seen in the mountains and forests of this kingdom; and the porcupine is met with in the southern districts. Birds in great variety inhabit all sections of the peninsula; and immense flocks of quails pass from Sicily to the more northern regions of Europe, during the spring of every year.

5. Sicily is the largest and most fertile island in the Mediterranean sea. It is noted for containing Mount Etna, the most active volcano in Europe. Smoke is continually issuing from it, and it has thrown out flames, at intervals, for more than 2000 years.

6. Naples, the capital of this kingdom, is the most populous city in Italy. It is situated on a bay of the same name, near the base of Mount Vesuvius, and surpasses every city in Europe for the beauty of its situation and appearance. Naples is remarkable for the number of its nobles and lazzaroni, or vagabonds.

7. Taranto, Bari, Cava, Foggio, and Salerno, are all considerable towns. Palermo, the chief city of Sicily, has a university, and considerable commerce. Catania, Messina, Trapani, and Syracuse, are the chief towns. The two first have often suffered from earthquakes.

8. The Ionian Republic.—This republic comprises the islands of Corfu, Cephalonia, Zante, St. Maura, Paxu, Ithaca, and Cerigo. It is under the protection of Great Britain, whose sovereign appoints the lord high commissioner, or head of the government.

9. The inhabitants are chiefly Greeks and Italians. They are an industrious, enterprising people, and carry on a considerable commerce in wine, olive-oil, and currants. The population of the islands amounts to 192,000. The largest town is Zante, with 18,000 inhabitants; but Corfu, on the island of the same name, is the capital. Population 16,000.

10. Malta.—Malta is a small but celebrated island in the Mediterranean sea, lying south of Sicily, containing 80,000 inhabitants; and is noted for the strength of its fortifications. It formerly belonged to the knights of St. John, a rich and powerful military order; but is now in the possession of Great Britain. La Valetta, the capital and port, has a population of 32,000.

Map No. 11. — How is Naples bounded? What strait separates it from Turkey? Oo. — What gulf is there in the south? To. — What mountains extend through it? As. — What mountain near Naples? Vs. — In Sicily? Ea. — What islands lie north of Sicily? Li. — What cape in Sicily? Po. — What is the population of the city of Naples? Palermo? Messina? Catania? Taranto? Bari? Syra-

---

5. What is said of Sicily? Mount Etna? Stromboli? 6. Describe Naples. 7. Taranto, &c. Palermo, and the other towns. 8. What does the Ionian republic comprise, &c.? 9. Describe the inhabitants. Commerce, &c. Population. 10. What is said of Malta?

cuse? How long and wide is Sicily? What island lies south of Sicily? Ma. — On what coast do the Ionian isles lie? Ty.Ge. — Which is the largest island? Cu. — Which is the most northern? Cu. — The most southern? Co. — What strait separates Italy and Sicily? Ma.

— 180 —

The Greeks destroying a Turkish man of war.

GREECE.

1. GREECE is one of the most celebrated countries in the world. Two thousand years ago, it excelled all others in civilization, learning, and the arts. It was for nearly four centuries subject to Turkish bondage; but has lately, after a bloody and protracted warfare, become independent.

2. Modern Greece comprises a portion of the southern part of the ancient country of the same name, together with a number of islands in the Archipelago, of which Negropont is the chief.

3. The interior of the country is finely diversified with rugged mountains, and beautiful and fertile valleys. The climate is mild and pleasant; and the soil, though badly cultivated, produces to some extent, cotton, oil, wine, silk, &c., with fruits of various kinds.

Greece. Q. — 1. What is said of Greece? How long was it subject to oppression? 2. Describe Modern Greece. 3. The interior. What

4. The Greeks are an active, vigorous race of people, and are generally distinguished for personal beauty. In their late contest with the Turks, they displayed a courage and bravery not unworthy their heroic ancestors. The employment of fire-ships was with them a favourite mode of warfare, by which they destroyed some of the largest vessels of their enemies.

5 The great body of the people of Greece are destitute of education nd knowledge; but they are anxious for improvement, and are eager o rise from the degradation consequent upon their long political servitude. Considerable exertions are making to introduce schools and colleges amongst them, and to disseminate learning, good morals, and religion. The established religion is that of the Greek church.

6. The government chosen for this country by the great European powers, is a limited monarchy: the selected sovereign is Otho, son of Louis Charles of Bavaria. He bears the title of king of Greece. The administration of the national affairs has not as yet realized the expectations of the friends of Grecian liberty.

7. Athens, the capital of Modern Greece, was one of the most celebrated cities of antiquity, and the birth-place of the most renowned orators, philosophers, and artists of ancient times. It is now reduced to a town of moderate dimensions, whose meanly-built houses contrast strangely with the remaining relics of its ancient splendour.

8. Tripolizza, Napoli, and Navarino, are among the chief towns of Greece. The last is celebrated for the destruction of the Turkish naval power by the combined fleets of England, France, and Russia, on the 20th October, 1828;—an event which secured the independence of Greece.

9. Hydra and Spezzia, two small islands on the coast of the Morea, were famous for their commerce before the Revolution; and their merchant-ships formed, during the war, nearly the whole of the Greek naval force.

Map No. 11.—What bounds Greece on the north? Ty.—South and west? M.-Sa.—East? Ao.—What peninsula forms the southern part of Greece? Ma.—It is united to the northern part of the kingdom by the Isthmus of Corinth. What is the southern cape of Greece? Mn.—What island south of the Morea? Co.—What islands west of Greece? Ca., Zc.—What islands east? Nt., Mo., No.—What island south of Milo? Ca.—How long is it? To what power does it belong? Et.—What is the population of Athens?

---

does it produce? 4. Describe the Greeks. What did they display? Employ in war? 5. What is said of the great body of the people? 6. The government? 7. Describe Athens. 8. Tripolizza. For what is Navarino celebrated? 9. For what were Hydra and Spezzia famous

— 181 —

TURKEY.

1 **Turkey**, or the Ottoman empire, comprises two great divisions, Turkey in Europe and Turkey in Asia. It was once a powerful and influential state; but has within the last hundred years greatly declined in strength and importance.

2. Its territory has been of late much diminished. Greece has become independent; while Egypt, Syria, the fine islands of Cyprus and Candia, with the whole of the western part of Arabia, have fallen into the hands of Mahomet Ali, the Pacha of Egypt.

3. The government is thoroughly despotic. The Sultan, or Grand Signior, is considered as reigning by divine commission; and as uniting in himself all the powers of the state. He is sometimes profanely called the shadow of God, brother to the sun and moon, and refuge of the world.

4. The court is called the Ottoman Porte, or Sublime Porte, and the Divan is the great council of the nation. It

Grand Signior. Grand Vizier. Mufti.

is composed of the Grand Vizier, the Mufti, the Capidan Pacha, the Reis Effendi, and the other principal officers of state.

Turkey. Q. — 1. What does Turkey comprise? What was it once? 2. What is said of its territory? 3. The government? 4. What is

5. The Turks are grave and sedate in their manners, but ignorant and bigoted; and so indolent, that nothing short of the strongest excitement will rouse them to activity. They are temperate in both eating and drinking. Pork and wine are prohibited by the Koran. Coffee is the principal beverage; though ardent spirits and opium are used to some extent.

6. In religion they are strict Mahomedans. They call those who do not believe their creed infidels, and formerly esteemed it lawful to reduce to subjection all who refused to be converted to their faith. Smoking the pipe, lounging for hours cross-legged upon a cushion or sofa, and bathing, are the principal occupations of the better class.

7. Important changes have lately taken place in the character and policy of the Turkish government. The present Sultan has organized his army and navy after those of the other European nations; and is endeavouring to introduce their arts and sciences into his empire.

8. The Turks, or, as they call themselves, Osmanlis, are the ruling race in this empire; but they constitute less than one-half of the population. The rest of the inhabitants consist of Greeks, Albanians, Armenians, Turcomans, Arabs, Kurds, Jews, and Gypsies. There is no hereditary nobility in Turkey; the only difference of rank being that of office.

182

Constantinople.

TURKEY IN EUROPE.

1. TURKEY IN EUROPE is the smallest of the two great divisions of the Ottoman Empire. Its surface is mountain-

---

the court called? 5. Describe the Turks. Of eating, &c.? 6. Of religion? Principal occupations? 7. Important changes? Army and navy? 8. Of the Turks, and the other inhabitants? Of nobility, &c.?

Turkey in Europe. Q.—1. What is Turkey in Europe? 2. What

ous, and, throughout most of its extent, interspersed with beautiful and fertile valleys.

2. In soil and climate, this country is highly favoured; and under a liberal government it would doubtless become one of the most flourishing countries of Europe. The products are corn, wheat, rice, cotton, silk, wine, oil, fruits, &c.

3. The operations of agriculture and manufactures are but negligently conducted. The commerce is chiefly carried on by foreigners, and is mostly confined to the port of Constantinople. The inland trade is considerable, and is in the hands of Greeks, Jews, Armenians, &c.

4. The horses and cattle of this region are generally large and fine: the former are from the Arabian stock. The Wallachian sheep are

Wallachian Sheep.

Pelican.

remarkable for the singularity of their horns and wool: the latter is long and straight, but rather coarse. The birds, particularly the water-fowl, are numerous, and of various kinds, among which the pelican and flamingo are conspicuous.

5. The provinces of Wallachia, Moldavia, and Servia, usually included in European Turkey, are governed by their own princes, and are in all respects independent, except that they pay a fixed tribute to the Porte. The people of these provinces are much oppressed by their rulers. They belong mostly to the Greek church.

6. Constantinople is the capital of the Ottoman Empire, and the third city in Europe in population. Its situation is beautiful, and its harbour extensive and commodious. It presents a handsome appearance at a distance, but is found on examination to consist of narrow, crooked streets, with low, gloomy-looking houses, built of wood.

---

is said of its surface? Soil and climate? Products? 3 Of agriculture, &c.? Commerce? 4. Horses and cattle? Wallachian sheep, &c.? 5. What is said of Wallachia, &c.? 6. Describe Constanti-

7. Fires occur so often, that it is said Constantinople is entirely rebuilt every fifteen years. The Mosques, or Mahomedan places of worship, are numerous, and some of them are superb structures. The mosque of St. Sophia, once a christian church, is accounted the finest in the world. The Mosques of Sultan Achmet and of Suleyman are large and splendid, but are not marked by the same classic taste.

8. Adrianople is the second city in European Turkey. It was long the residence of the Sultans. Bucharest, the capital of Wallachia, is a large dirty city, built in a swamp: the streets, instead of being paved in the usual way, are covered with planks. Belgrade, Widin, Silistria, and Shumla, are all strongly-fortified towns. Serajevo, Salonica, Sophia, and Joannina, are all places of some note.

Map No. 11. — What bounds Turkey on the north? Aa. — South? Ge., Ao., S.-Ma. — East? B.-Sa. — West? G.-Ve. — Which is the chief river? De. — How long is it? Into what sea does it flow? Bk. — Point out the principal mountains. Bn. — How long are they? What strait between the Archipelago and the sea of Marmora? Ds. — What channel leads into the Black sea? Ce. — What is the population of Constantinople? Adrianople? Bucharest? Serajevo? Salonica? Sophia? Joannina? Ibraila? Shumla? Seres? On what strait is Constantinople? On what rivers are the largest of the other cities?

183

ASIA.

1. Asia is the largest and most populous of the great divisions of the globe. It has been the seat of some of the most powerful empires of ancient times, and the theatre of many of the most interesting events recorded in history.

2. It was here our first parents were created, and from this quarter the descendants of Noah peopled the world after the flood. It was also the birth-place of our Saviour, the scene of his miracles and death, and the field on which the apostles first published salvation to man.

3. The vast expanse of Asia stretching through almost 80 degrees of latitude, presents every variety of soil and climate. Its large rivers are inferior only to the great streams of the Western Continent, and its mountain chains are among the most extensive in the world, and attain to a greater height than those of any other region.

nople. 7. What is said of fires? 8. Describe Adrianople. Bucharest, &c.

Asia. Q. — 1. What is Asia? Of what has it been the seat? 2. What is said of our first parents? Our Saviour? 3. Of the soil

Asia.

4. Asia is distinguished for the great variety of its rich productions. It supplies the other parts of the world with tea, with some of the finest spices and perfumes, and also with silk, diamonds, and precious stones of various kinds.

5. The institutions, manners and customs of the people are the same at the present, as in the earliest times; and no advance appears to have been made for a long period in arts, sciences, or learning.

6. In disposition and temper, the people are grave, serious, and recluse. The women are generally kept in ignorance, and are not taught reading or writing; they are also, in many parts of Asia regarded almost as slaves, live in strict retirement, and do not go abroad without being closely veiled.

7. The governments of Asia are generally despotic, and their administration is frequently arbitrary and tyrannical. Robbery is often practised as a regular trade, even by chiefs and princes, and as a calling that they consider honourable and honest.

8. Agriculture is pursued in many parts of Asia, with great industry and care, but not with the same skill as in Europe. Many of the manufactures, though conducted with the most simple tools and machinery, are not surpassed in richness and beauty by those of any other part of the world.

---

and climate? Rivers? Mountains? 4. For what is Asia distinguished? 5. Of the institutions, manners, &c.? 6. Disposition, &c.? Of the women? 7. What is said of the governments? Robbery? 8. Agriculture? Manufactures? 9. Commerce? Foreign Trade?

9. A lucrative commerce has been carried on in this quarter, from the earliest times. The internal trade by caravans, though not so important as that by sea, is yet very considerable. The foreign trade, particularly that with China and India, is chiefly in the hands of the English and Americans, and is extensive and valuable.

10. Some of the most remarkable animals of Asia, are the Elephant, one-horned Rhinoceros, Tiger, Leopard, and Musk Deer. The Horse, Camel, Ass, Sheep, and Goat, are supposed to have had their origin in this quarter, and with the Peacock, common Fowl, and Pheasant, have been spread from hence over other parts of the world. Gigantic Cranes as tall as a man, and the Cassowary, similar to the Ostrich, with an infinite number of birds of brilliant and varied plumage, abound.

Musk Deer.

Tiger.

11. Crocodiles, different however from those of Africa, are found in all the large rivers of the south; and Serpents exist in great variety, from the gigantic Python and Anaconda, measuring from 12 to 20 feet in length, to a species of only an inch and a half long, whose venom causes the person bitten by it to fall into a deadly sleep.

12. Asia comprises a greater variety of different races of men, than any other quarter of the world. The chief part of the inhabitants are Pagans, whose modes of worship embrace various forms of idolatry. Brahmins, Buddhists, worshippers of the Grand Lama, of Confucius, and of spirits or genii, are the most prevalent: they number probably 360 millions; Mahomedans, 80 millions; Christians, Jews, &c., 10 millions: total, 450 millions.

13. Though nearly the whole of this vast multitude is involved heathen darkness, yet the exertions of Christian missionaries and the distribution of the Scriptures in various Asiatic languages, will no doubt in time enlighten the nations, and lead to the spiritual redemption of this great continent.

---

10. Describe the animals. Birds. 11. Crocodiles, &c. 12. What does Asia comprise? What is said of the inhabitants? How many idolaters are there? Mahomedans, &c.? 13. What is said of the missionaries, &c.

184

Map No. 14.—How is Asia bounded? Which is the largest city and river?

Siberia	Bounded?—Capital?	Birmah	Bounded?—Capital?
Tartary ...	Bounded?—Capital?	Siam	Bounded?—Capital?
Turkey ...	Bounded?—Capital?	Anam	Bounded?—Capital?
Arabia	Bounded?—Capital?	China	Bounded?—Capital?
Persia	Bounded?—Capital?	Chinese Em...	Bounded?—Capital?
Afghanistan	Bounded?—Capital?	Thibet	Bounded?—Capital?
Beloochistan	Bounded?—Capital?	Corea	Bounded?—Capital?
Hindoostan	Bounded?—Capital?	Japan	Bounded?—Capital?

Where is the sea of Kara? Kamtschatka? Ochotsk? Jesso? Japan? Yellow Sea? Eastern S.? China S.? Arabian S.? Red S.? Dead S.? Mediterranean S.? Black S.? Caspian S.? Sea of Aral?

Where is the Gulf of Obe? G. of the Lena? G. of Anadir? Tonquin? Siam? Martaban? Manar? Cambay? Cutch? Ormus? Persian Gulf? Bay of Bengal?

Where is Bhering's Strait? Strait of Matsmay? Corea? Formosa? Malacca? Babelmandel?

Where is Cape Cevero Vostochnoi? C. Chalagskoi? East Cape? Cape St. Thadeus? C. Cambodia? C. Romania? C. Comorin? C. Ras-al-Gat? C. Isolette?

Where is the Obe River? The Yenesei? Lena? Amoor? Hoang-Ho? Yang-tse-kiang? Cambodia? Meinam? Salwen? Irrawady? Burrampooter?* Ganges? Godavery? Nerbuddah? Indus? Euphrates? Don? Volga? Ural? Amoo? Sihon? Cashgar?

Where are the Islands of Nova Zembla? Kotelnoi I.? New Siberia? Liaghoff I.? Bherings Is.? Aleutian Is.? Kurile Is.? Tchantar Is.? Seghalien? Jesso? Niphon? Sikoke? Kiusiu? Loochoo Is.? Formosa? Hainan? Pulo Pinang I.? Andaman Is.? Nicobar Is.? Ceylon? Laccadive Is.? Maldive Is.? Cyprus?

Where is Balcash Lake? Zaizan Nor? Altyn L.? Baikal? Poyang L.? Touting L.? Koko Nor? L. Zurrah?

Where are the Ural Mountains? Little Altay? Great Altay? Taurus Mts.? Mt. Sinai? Ramleah? Mt. Ararat? Caucasus? Elborz? Hindoo Koo? Ghaut? Beloor? Thsoung-ling? Thian-shan? Kuen-lun? Peling? Meling?

Where is the Peninsula of Kamtschatka? Corea? Malacca? Hindoostan? Arabia? What two seas form the western part of Turkey into a peninsula? What seas and gulf form Arabia into a peninsula? Where is the isthmus of Suez? Of Kraw?

Where is the Desert of Cobi? Of Akhaf? Great Salt Desert? Great Sandy Desert?

In what latitude is Asia? In what longitude? In which Zone is the northern part? The centre? Southern?

* Called also the Brahmapootra.

ASIATIC RUSSIA.

1. Asiatic Russia is an immense region stretching from the Ural Mountains to the Pacific Ocean. It comprises Siberia, the countries situated between the Ural and the Volga rivers, and the Caspian and Black Seas; the last of which is called Caucasian Russia.

SIBERIA.

2. Siberia contains nearly a third part of Asia, and is mostly a cold, dreary region, occupied by wide and extensive plains called *steppes*. Some of its southern districts are however rich and fertile.

3. Siberia serves as a place of banishment for convicts and prisoners of state. Some of these have been men of superior talents, and have been banished only for their virtues and adherence to liberal principles.

4. The Ural and Altay Mountains contain numerous mines, which furnish gold, silver, platina, and different kinds of precious stones. Fur-bearing animals abound in Siberia, the skins of which form one of the chief articles of its trade. The original inhabitants are composed of various barbarous tribes, who live by hunting and fishing.

5. Tobolsk, the capital of Siberia, is on the river Irtysh, at its junction with the Tobol. All the commerce of the country passes through this city, and large caravans of merchants trade between it and Khokan, in Tartary. Irkoutsk, Tomsk, Yakoutsk, and Ochotsk, are the next important towns. Kiachta is the only place at which the trade with China is permitted.

6. The country lying between the Volga and Ural rivers contains the cities of Astrachan and Orenburg: the former derives its chief wealth from its sturgeon fisheries; it has also an extensive trade with the interior of Russia. Orenburg carries on a great trade by caravans with Khokan, Bucharia, Khiva, and other Tartar cities.

CAUCASIAN RUSSIA.

7. This country lies between the Black and Caspian Seas, and on both sides of the Caucasian Mountains. It is a rough and rugged region, but contains many fertile districts, peo-

---

Asiatic Russia. Q. — 1. What is Asiatic Russia? 2. Describe Siberia. 3. What is said of convicts, &c.? 4. What is said of the Ural and Altay mountains? 5. Describe Tobolsk, &c. 6. Astrachan, &c. 7. Caucasian Russia. Describe the country. 8. The Circassians

Circassians looking down from the mountains upon a Russian camp.

pled by various races who are almost wholly engaged in war and plundering.

8. The Circassians inhabit the northern, and the Georgians the southern side of the mountains; the former maintain almost continual war with the Russians, who have long endeavoured to conquer them, but hitherto ineffectually.

9. The men are celebrated for their activity and valour, and the women for their beauty and elegance of form, many of the latter are sold by their parents as slaves to traders, who carry them to Turkey Persia, and other countries where they are purchased by the wealthy classes.

10. Teflis, on the river Kur, is the capital of Georgia; it has a strong castle, and is the residence of the Russian governor. Derbent and Kisliar, both on the Caspian Sea, are towns of some importance.

Map No. 14. — What bounds Siberia on the north? A.-On. — South? A.-Ms. — East? S.-Ka. — What great rivers flow into the Arctic Ocean? Oe., Ye., La. — How long is each of these? Which is the most northern cape of Siberia? C.-Vi. — Eastern? Et. — Southern? La. — What strait between Siberia and North America? Bs. — How wide is it? What lakes are in Siberia? Bl., Ty. — How long are they? What peninsula lies east of the sea of Ochotsk? Ka. — What tribes are in Siberia? Ss., Os., Ts., Bs., Ys., Ks., Ti. — What is the population of Tobolsk? Irkoutsk? Tomsk? Barnaule? Omsk? On what rivers are these towns?

---

9. Describe the men. The women. 10. Teflis. Derbent. Kisliar.

What rivers flow into the Caspian Sea? Va., Ul., Kr. — How long are the two first? What mountains separate Circassia and Georgia? Ca. — What countries bound Georgia on the south? Ty., Pa. — What is the population of Orenburg? Astrachan? Derbent? Teflis?

— 186 —

TURKEY IN ASIA.

1. TURKEY IN ASIA extends over some of the finest regions of that continent. It contained in ancient times a number of populous, flourishing, and important states; but ignorance, superstition, and barbarism, now cover the land; and few traces of its former civilization remain, except ruins.

2. The islands of the Archipelago, once celebrated for their wealth and prosperity, are now reduced to a more complete state of barbarism than even the continent. The principal of those, still under the control of the Turks, are Rhodes, Samos, Scio, and Metelin.

3. Smyrna, on a gulf of the same name, is the chief emporium of Asiatic Turkey. Carpets, rags for paper, opium, figs, &c., are the chief exports. About 2,000 Europeans, principally French, reside here, and form a society among themselves.

4. Trebisonde, on the Black Sea; Brusa, Erzerum, and Diarbekir, in the interior; Bagdad, on the Tigris; and Bussorah, on the Euphrates, are all important cities. On the west bank of the Euphrates are the vast, but shapeless, ruins of Babylon, the most splendid city of ancient times; whose walls, towers, and gates, were esteemed one of the wonders of the world.

SYRIA.

5. SYRIA has long formed one of the chief divisions of the Turkish empire. It was conquered in the year 1832, by the Pacha of Egypt; but in 1840, several of the great European powers, in conjunction with the Turks, obliged him to relinquish it.

6. No country was anciently more celebrated than Syria. In the south was the country of the Israelites, and the birth-place of the Christian religion. The cities of Tyre and Sidon were renowned for their commerce; and Damascus and Antioch for their wealth and population. Baalbec and Palmyra, once splendid cities, are now in ruins.

7. Damascus, the capital of Syria, is one of the oldest places in the world; and is known to have existed in the days of Abraham. It is the most flourishing city in Syria, and carries on an extensive trade. Aleppo was the finest city in Syria. In 1822, it was nearly all destroyed by an earthquake; but is now slowly reviving. Tripoli and Beyrout on the Mediterranean, are places possessing some trade.

Christ and his Disciples on the Mount of Olives.

PALESTINE.

8. PALESTINE, or the Holy Land, occupies the southern part of Syria. It is the most celebrated country in the world; and remarkable for being the scene of most of the events recorded in the sacred scriptures.

9. The surface is greatly diversified with mountains and valleys. Of the former, Lebanon has been long noted for its tall cedars; Pisgah, for the view it gave Moses of the Promised Land; Tabor, for the transfiguration of Christ; and the Mount of Olives, for being the scene of the ascension of the Saviour to heaven.

10. Jerusalem, the once famous capital of the Jewish nation, where David and Solomon reigned, and which was so often the resort of Christ and his disciples, is now a gloomy, mean town, owing its chief support to the veneration in which it is held by Christians, Jews, and Mahomedans, which still procures it the visits of many pious pilgrims.

11. Bethlehem, six miles south of Jerusalem, is remarkable for being the birth-place of our Saviour. Nazareth, where he resided until he commenced his ministry, is, next to Jerusalem, the most holy place in Palestine. Gaza, Joppa, and Acre, are the principal towns on the coast.

Map No. 14. — How is Turkey bounded? What river flows into the Persian Gulf? Es. — What flows into the Euphrates? Ts. — How

---

Turkey, &c. Q. — 1. Describe Turkey in Asia. 2. The islands of the Archipelago. 3. Smyrna. 4. Trebisonde, &c. 5. What did Syria form? 6. What is said of the country? 7. Damascus? 8. Describe Palestine. The surface. Mountains, &c. Jerusalem. Bethlehem. Nazareth, &c.

long are these rivers? What mts. lie north of the Mediterranean Sea? Ts. — How high are they? What mts. in the N. E.? At. — What is the population of Smyrna? Erzerum? Brusa? Trebisonde? Bussorah? Diarbekir? Mosul? Bagdad? How is Syria bounded? What is the population of Damascus? Aleppo? Damascus and Aleppo are each 60 miles east of the Mediterranean, and Jerusalem 40.

Map No. 13. — What sea bounds Palestine on the west? Mn. — What river flows into the Dead Sea? Jn. — How long is it? How ong is the Dead Sea? What is the population of Jerusalem? The ther towns?

— 187 —

Bedouins attacking a Caravan.

ARABIA.

1. ARABIA is a large peninsula, consisting of vast sandy deserts, interspersed with fertile spots like islands in the ocean; these, when cultivated, yield various fruits and other products in great perfection.

2. Arabia comprises several distinct states, of which the principal are Mecca, or the Hedjaz; Nedsjed, or the territory of the Wahabees; and the Imamats of Yemen and Omon. Nearly the whole of the west coast of Arabia has been conquered by the Pacha of Egypt; and its chief towns are garrisoned by his troops.

3. The inhabitants are principally Arabians, with some Jewish and

Arabia. Q. — 1. What is said of Arabia, &c.? 2. Describe the

Hindoo merchants in the towns. The people of the desert, called Bedouins, live in tents, and lead a wandering life, keeping large herds of horses and camels. They are hospitable and courteous to those who trust and visit them; but often attack and rob the caravans that pass through their country.

4. The Arabs are of a brown complexion, thin and spare in person, but vigorous and active. They are extremely temperate, generally contenting themselves at meals with a few dates or a piece of hard bread, and little oil or milk.

5. The horses of this country are the finest in the world, and celebrated for their swiftness and beauty. The most useful animal is the camel: it will travel for several days without water, carrying a burthen of 600 or 700 pounds. Coffee, dates, senna leaves, indigo, and pearls, are the principal products of Arabia. The last are obtained on the coast of the Persian Gulf.

6. Mecca, the birth-place of Mahomed, is the holy city of Mahomedans, which every one of that sect is expected to visit once in his lifetime. It is supported entirely by the pilgrims who resort thither every year. Their number in 1831 was estimated at 120,000.

7. Medina is celebrated as containing the tomb of Mahomed, around which 300 silver lamps are kept constantly burning. Jidda is the port of Mecca, and Yambo that of Medina. Sana, the capital of Yemen, is one of the chief cities of Arabia; and is situated in the midst of the most fertile district in that country.

8. Mocha is the chief sea-port in the Red Sea; and is the seat of the coffee trade. Makulla and Keshin are small towns, possessing a limited share of commerce. Muscat is the capital of Omon, and a general depôt for the merchandise of India and Persia. It carries on an extensive commerce, both by sea, and with the interior by caravans.

9. The Imam, or chief, of Omon has a navy, comprising several large ships of war; and his subjects are the best native sailors in the east. Besides his territory in Arabia, he possesses several large islands on the coast of Africa, and in the Persian Gulf.

Map No. 14.—What bounds Arabia on the north? Ty., Sa.—South? A.-Sa.—East? P.-Gf., G.-Os.—West? R.-Sa.—What isthmus joins Arabia to Africa? Sz.—What mountains are in Arabia? Si., Rh.—What desert lies between Yemen and Omon? Af.—What race inhabits it? Bs.—What divisions of Arabia lie on the Red Sea? Hz., Yn.—What on the Arabian Sea? Ht., On.—On the Persian Gulf? La.—How long is the Red Sea? The Persian Gulf? What is the population of Muscat? Sana? Mocha? Mecca? Medina? Jidda? Yambo? In what part of Arabia are these places situated?

Arabian states. 3. The inhabitants. The Bedouins. 4. The Arabs, &c. 5. Describe the horses. Camels. Principal products. 6. Describe Mecca. 7. Medina. 8. Mocha. Muscat, &c. 9. What is said of the Imam?

— 188 —

Teheran.

PERSIA.

1. PERSIA was, in early times, one of the most powerfu empires in Asia; but its ancient splendour is abridged, and it presents scarcely a shadow of its former greatness.

2. Its mountains and deserts are peopled by hordes of robbers, who plunder the fertile and cultivated tracts. Agriculture is discouraged by their incursions; and places formerly well settled, are now, in a measure, deserted.

3. Silk is the staple produce of this country. Other productions are wheat, rice, cotton, tobacco, rhubarb, assafœtida, &c. The Persians manufacture beautiful carpets, shawls, silk, tapestry, arms, porcelain, &c. The foreign commerce is inconsiderable, and is now in the hands of Europeans.

4. The people of Persia are the most learned and polite of the Eastern nations. They are lively and fond of st' v; skilled in the use of flattery and compliment; but are accused of dissimulation.

5. Teheran, the capital of Persia, is 70 miles south of the Caspian Sea; it is a modern-built city, inhabited by the king, his court, and army, only during the winter months. The population, in consequence, fluctuates from 10,000 to 60,000.

6. Ispahan, the ancient capital, is 220 miles southward of Teheran; it ranked once among the most splendid cities in the east. Though a great part of it is in ruins, it is still a place of importance, with an ex-

---

Persia Q.—1. What is said of Persia? 2. Mountains, &c.? 3. Silk, &c.? Foreign commerce? 4. Describe the people. 5. Teheran. 6. Ispahan. Shiraz, &c. 7. The country between Persia, &c.

tensive trade, and considerable manufactures. Shiraz is celebrated for its delightful climate, and beautiful environs. Reshd is the chief port on the Caspian Sea, and Bushire on the Persian Gulf. Tabreez, Meshid, Yezd, Balfrush, and Kerman, are important cities.

AFGHANISTAN.

7. THE country lying between Persia and Hindoostan was once a part of the Persian Empire. It is now divided into the separate territories of Afghanistan and Beloochistan.

8. The inhabitants, called Afghans, are a bold and warlike race, simple in their manners, and of unbounded hospitality. There are schools in every town and village, and in the encampments of the pastoral tribes, so that a limited degree of education is very generally diffused.

9. Cabul, the capital, is on the Cabul river, a branch of the Indus; it enjoys a delightful climate, and is surrounded by a fertile country. The next important towns are Peshawur, on the Cabul; Candahar and Ghiznee, on the Helmund. Herat is a very ancient city, and the capital of a small independent state. Its manufactures and commerce are important.

BELOOCHISTAN.

10. BELOOCHISTAN is divided among a number of small independent tribes, of whom the Beloochees are the chief They are mostly of warlike habits, and often make plundering incursions upon each other.

11. The Brahoos, unlike the other tribes, are peaceable, mild, and industrious. They follow a pastoral life; and live in little villages among the mountains.

This country has but few towns. Kelat, the principal, is the residence of a chief, or Khan, to whom some of the tribes are subject.

Map No. 14. — How is Persia bounded? What river separates it from Tartary? Ak. — From Turkey? Ts., Es. — What sea on the north? Cn. — Gulf on the south? Pn. — What mountains extend across Persia? Ez. — What desert south of the Elborz Mountains? G.-St. — What is the population of Teheran? Ispahan? Tabreez? eshd? Meshid? Yezd? Shiraz? Kerman?

What bounds Afghanistan on the north? H.-K.-Ms. — South? Ba. — East? I.-Rr. — West? Pa. — What lake in the west? Zh. — What river flows into it? Hd. — What is the population of Cabul? Candahar? Herat? Peshawur?

What bounds Beloochistan on the north? An. — South? A.-Sa. — East? I.-Rr. — West? Pa. — What is the population of Kelat? Gundava?

---

8. Describe the Afghans. 9. Cabul. Herat. 10. Describe Beloochistan. 11. The Brahoos, &c.

— 189 —

Tartar Caravan.

TARTARY.

1. Tartary comprehends all the central part of Asia, stretching from the Caspian Sea to the Pacific Ocean. Its great divisions are Independent Tartary, and Chinese Tartary.

2. Independent Tartary comprises a number of small states professing the Mahomedan faith, and governed by princes called Khans. Chinese Tartary is under the control of the Chinese government, and has for the most part adopted the worship of the Grand Lama.

3. The inhabitants of this great region comprise several distinct races. Those resident in Independent Tartary and Little Bucharia are similar to the Turks. The people of Soongaria or the Kalmucks, and those of Mongolia called Mongols, are the true Tartars. The Mantchoos or people of Mantchooria, now the ruling race in China, differ in some respects from all the others.

INDEPENDENT TARTARY OR TURKISTAN.

4. Independent Tartary extends eastward from the Caspian Sea, and comprises the Kirguis country and Turcomania, with the states of Khokan, Khiva, Great Bucharia and Koondooz.

Tartary. Q.—1. What does Tartary comprehend? 2. What does Independent Tartary comprise? Chinese Tartary? 3. What is said of the inhabitants? 4. Describe Independent Tartary. 5 Its states.

5. The four last are all fertile districts, inhabited by an industrious people, who are chiefly engaged in agriculture and trade. The Usbecks are the predominant race, hence this country is sometimes called Usbeck Tartary. The chief part of the inhabitants are called Taujiks.

6. An extensive commerce is carried on between these states and Persia, Hindoostan, China, and Russia. The caravans proceed in large bodies, and are well armed; consisting sometimes of several thousand men, horses, and camels.

7. The principal cities are Bucharia, Khokan, Tashkent, Khiva, and Samarcand. Bucharia, the capital of the territory of the same name, contains numerous mosques and colleges. It is the chief seat of Mahomedan learning in this quarter, and is visited by a great number of students. Khiva is rather a fixed encampment, than a regular town; it is the principal slave-market in Tartary. Samarcand, once the most renowned city in Asia, is now nearly all in ruins.

8. The KIRGUIS and TURCOMANS raise large numbers of horses and camels, and wander about from place to place. The Turcomans often carry away the inhabitants from the frontier Persian villages, and sell them for slaves in the markets of Khiva and Bucharia.

CHINESE TARTARY.

9. CHINESE TARTARY comprises Little Bucharia, Soongaria, Mongolia, and Mantchooria. The chief part of this region is an extensive elevated plain, bounded by ranges of some of the most lofty mountains in Asia.

10. The whole territory, except that part of it occupied by the Great Desert of Cobi, appears to be better suited to grazing than agriculture, and is inhabited principally by various roving tribes, who live in tents, and raise great numbers of horses.

11. LITTLE BUCHARIA and SOONGARIA are the best-settled and most fertile divisions of this territory: they contain several populous cities, of which Goulja, Yarkand, and Cashgar, appear to be the chief.

12. MANTCHOORIA is watered by the great river Amoor; it contains several cities and towns, and a stationary population in some parts. Chin Yang is said to be the chief city in that district of it adjoining to China.

Map No. 14. — How is Independent Tartary bounded? What sea on the west? Cn. — In the centre? Al. — How long are these? What rivers flow into the Caspian sea? Ul., Ak. — Into the sea of Aral? Sn., Ao. — How long are these rivers? What mountains are

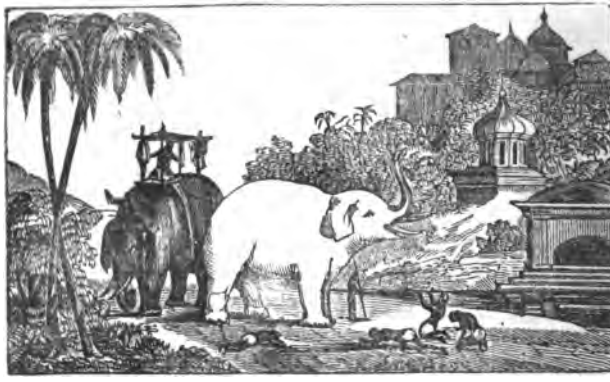
---

6. What is said of commerce? 7. Describe the cities, &c. 8. The Kirguis and Turcomans. 9. What is said of Chinese Tartary? 10. For what is it suited? 11. Describe Little Bucharia and Soongaria. 12. Mantchooria.

in the country? H.-Ko., Br., L.-Ay. — What is the population of Tashkent? Bucharia? Khokan? Samarcand?

How is Chinese Tartary bounded? What are its chief mountains? L.-Ay., Br., Tg., Tn., G.-Ay., Kn. — How high are the three last? Which are the principal lakes? Bh., Zr., Lr. — The principal rivers? Cr., Ih., Sa., Ar., Si., Ui. — What great desert in the south? Ci. — How long is it? What is the population of Goulja? Cashgar? Yarkand?

— 190 —



INDIA.

1. INDIA has been always celebrated for its great fertility, and the profusion of its rich and valuable products. It comprises two large peninsulas, situated between the seas of Arabia and China. The western division is called Hindoostan, and the other Chin-India, or Farther India.

2. Both the peninsulas of India are remarkable for the number and size of their rivers, whose waters and inundations, united with the heat of the climate, make them the most productive countries on earth. The term East Indies is also used very frequently for the whole of south-eastern Asia and China.

3. The elephant here attains his greatest bulk and perfection; and has been rendered useful to man from the earliest times. White ele-

India. Q. — 1. For what has India been celebrated? 2. What is said of the peninsulas? 3. The elephant? White elephant?

phants, though sometimes met with, are rare. In Birmah and Siam they are believed to contain the spirit of some departed monarch, and, as such, have the title of a king; and when taken abroad, the people are obliged to prostrate themselves as before their actual sovereign.

HINDOOSTAN.

4. HINDOOSTAN is one of the most remarkable countries in the east. Its singular customs, and rich products, have attracted the attention of the surrounding nations from the earliest period of history.

5. The climate of the chief part of Hindoostan is that of the torrid zone, which among the mountains is rendered temperate by elevation. With the exception of a few desert, sandy tracks, the soil of this country is generally very fertile.

6. The agriculture is imperfect, though the produce is abundant. Rice is the chief article of food, but other grains are cultivated. Cotton, silk, sugar, opium, tobacco, and indigo, are all extensively produced; also, coffee, pepper, cinnamon, &c.

7. The cotton manufactures have been long celebrated for their fineness and beauty. Silk is an important manufacture; and the shawls of Cashmere are unrivalled. The Hindoos excel in working gold and silver; and in cutting, polishing, and setting precious stones.

8. The inland trade of Hindoostan is carried on by Banians, or Hindoo merchants, Armenians, and Parsees. The foreign commerce is in the hands of the English, Americans, &c. This country produces the finest diamonds in the world; for, though those of Brazil are of greater size, the diamonds of Golconda are superior in hardness and brilliancy. Gold, iron, tin, and zinc, are among the minerals.

9. The Hindoos are in complexion almost black, with long hair, straight limbs, and pleasing countenances. They are an indolent and spiritless race, excessively superstitious; and are described as being nearly destitute of moral honesty.

10. They are divided into four castes, or classes:—1. The Bramins or priests. 2. The Rajah-pootras, or soldiers. 3. Vaisyas, or merchants and farmers. 4. The Sudras, or labourers. These castes never intermarry, and do not even eat or drink together; and every succeeding generation must belong to the same class as their parents.

11. The religion of the Hindoos is a degrading system of paganism. Bramah is the supreme deity, and there are many millions of inferior divinities. They also worship the River Ganges, the cow, ape, and

---

4. What is said of Hindoostan? 5. The climate? 6. Agriculture? 7. Cotton manufactures, &c.? 8. Inland trade? Foreign commerce? Of diamonds? 9. Describe the Hindoos. 10. How are they divided?

other animals. There are likewise in Hindoostan a number of Mahomedans, with some Christians, both native and European, and Jews.

12. The chief part of Hindoostan is under the control of the British East India company. Their territory contains a population of about 85 millions; the tributary states 38 millions, total of the company's subjects 123 millions. To this must be added one million for the Island of Ceylon, which is a colony belonging to the crown. Total of British India, 124 millions. Of this great multitude, the Europeans do not, probably, exceed 50,000 individuals. The independent states contain about 16 million inhabitants.

13. Great efforts are now making by various missionary societies for introducing Christianity into India. Many of the natives have renounced their false gods; and some of them have even become missionaries.

191

View in Calcutta.

14. Calcutta, the capital of British India, is the largest city in Hindoostan. It is situated about 100 miles from the sea, on the Hoogly branch of the Ganges; and, properly, comprises two divisions. Chouringee, the part inhabited by the English, is a city of palaces; while the Black Town, inhabited by the Hindoos, is an assemblage of huts. Fort William, an extensive fortress, is near the city.

15. Bombay, the capital of Western British India, is noted for its commerce and ship-building. Madras, the capital of southern British India, is situated on a flat sandy shore, and has no harbour. It presents a fine appearance from the sea; and many of its public buildings are handsome structures. Seringapatam was the capital of Mysore.

Surat is next to Calcutta in population. It is noted for its manufactures of silks, brocades, and fine cotton stuffs. Benares is venerated by the Hindoos as a most holy city, and crowds of pilgrims visit it from all parts of the country. Delhi was the capital of the Mogul Empire.

16. Ceylon is a beautiful fertile island, belonging to the British

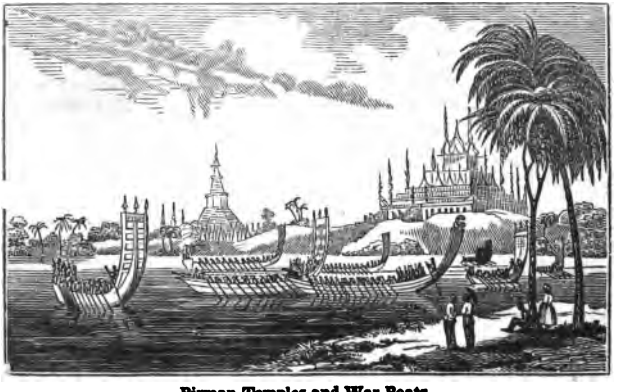
---

11. Of religion? 12. What is said of the British East India Company? 13. Of missionary societies? 14. Describe Calcutta. 15 Bombay. Madras, &c. Surat, &c. 16. Ceylon. The Coralline Isles.

crown, and independent of the East India company. It is noted for producing the finest cinnamon in the world. Colombo is the chief city

The Coralline Isles comprise the Laccadive and Maldive groups. They lie west and south-west from Hindoostan. Though numerous they are small in extent; and produce cocoa-nuts in considerable abundance. The inhabitants of the Laccadives are called Moplays.

Map No. 14. — How is Hindoostan bounded? What rivers flow into the Arabian Sea? Is., Nh. — Into the Bay of Bengal? Gs., Br., Gy., Ka. — How long are all these rivers? What mountains are in the north-east? Hh. — In the south-west? Gt. — How long and high are the first? What island lies south of Hindoostan? Cn. — How long and wide is it? What gulf separates it from Hindoostan? Mr. — What islands lie west and south-west from Hindoostan? Ce.-Is. — What is the population of Calcutta? Surat? Delhi? Lucknow? Patna? Madras? Bombay? Benares? Dacca, and the other large cities? What is the south-east coast of Hindoostan called? Cl. — The south-west? Mr. — On what rivers are the principal cities?



Birman Temples and War-Boats.

CHIN-INDIA.

1. CHIN-INDIA, or Farther India, is situated between Hindoostan and China. It comprises the empires of Birmah and Anam, the kingdom of Siam, the British territories, and the petty states of Malacca. It is a well-watered, fertile region, and is prolific in various tropical products.

Chin-India. Q. — 1. Describe Chin-India. 2. The inhabitants. The

2. Nearly all the inhabitants of this region profess the religion of Buddha, or Guadama. Great attention is paid by them to the building of costly temples, which are very gaudily ornamented with gilding, painting, and varnishing. The war-boats of these nations, especially of the Birmans, are often 100 feet long, but very narrow. They carry from 80 to 100 men, with a small cannon at the prow.

3. The governments of Chin-India are completely despotic. The nobles show the most profound submission to their sovereign, lying prostrate on their faces, and creeping on the ground before him; and every male subject above 20 years of age, excepting the priests and public officers, must serve the government three years, either as a soldier or a labourer.

4. In all these countries, the morals of the people are in a low state; and the women, in general, are little better than slaves, being obliged to perform the principal part of the hard labour; and, in Anam, they likewise conduct all the operations of buying and selling.

5. Population and Extent of Chin-India.

	Square Miles.	Inhabitants.		Square Miles.	Inhabitants
Anam	350,000	10,000,000	British territories	77.000	400,000
Birmah	254,000	5,350,000	Malacca	55,000	450,000
Siam	184,000	3,800,000	Total,	920,000	20,000.000

— 192 —

BIRMAH.

6. The Birman Empire was founded about eighty years ago, and for a considerable period was the most important power in this quarter. The Birmans are a military people, and their armies were, until their late contest with the East India Company, thought to be very efficient.

7. Ava, about 500 miles from the sea, has been the capital since 1824. The former metropolis, Umerapoora, though but lately a splendid city, is already much decayed. These cities are both on the Irrawaddy river

Rangoon, on the Irrawaddy, near its mouth, is the chief sea-port of Birmah. Prome, 250 miles above Rangoon, is an important city.

---

temples. War-boats. 3. What is said of the governments? Nobles? Male subjects? 4. Morals, &c.? Of the women? 5. How many inhabitants has Chin-India? What is its extent in square miles? Which is the largest division? The most populous?

Birmah. Q. — 6. When was the Birman Empire founded? What is said of the Birmans? 7. Describe Ava. Umerapoora, &c.

ANAM.

8. The empire of Anam is of recent origin, and dates only from the beginning of the present century. It comprises Tonquin, Cochin-China, and Cambodia, with part of Laos.

9. The late Emperor Caung Shung, organized his army and navy, constructed fortresses, and established armories after the European manner; he thus acquired a formidable military force, and was enabled to add to his original possessions the states of Tonquin and Cambodia.

10. Hue, the capital, is on a river, 10 miles from the sea. It is an immense fortification, built in the European style; 100,000 men were employed on the works during the period of their construction, and 1,200 cannon were afterwards mounted on the walls. Saigon, on the Donnai, a branch of the Cambodia river, is the chief sea-port of the empire: it contains a royal arsenal, and carries on an extensive commerce.

SIAM.

11. Siam is a considerable kingdom, situated between Birmah and Anam; its territory, watered by the Meinam river, is fertile and highly prolific in various tropical productions. The people are mild and courteous, but cunning and avaricious.

12. Bankok, the capital, is situated on the river Meinam, and may be regarded almost as a city floating on the water; many of the houses are built upon rafts moored in the river, and can be easily moved from place to place; these are inhabited chiefly by Chinese, who constitute a large portion of the population.

BRITISH POSSESSIONS.

13. The British possessions in Chin-India, comprise a strip of territory lying south of the Burrampooter river, and another south of the Salwen; these were both acquired at the close of the late war with Birmah.

14. Arracan and Amherst are the chief towns: to these may be added the town and territory of Malacca, Pulo Pinang, or Prince of Wales Island, and the city of Singapore; the latter was founded in 1820, and declared a free port. It has in consequence acquired an extensive commerce. Its population has doubled in amount since 1828.

---

8. What is said of Anam? 9. The Emperor? 10. Describe Hue. Saigon. 11. What is said of Siam? 12. Bankok? 13. Describe the

MALACCA.

Orang Outang.

15. The peninsula of Malacca is occupied by a number of small independent states, of which but little is known. The inhabitants, chiefly Mahomedans, are called Malays, and are by turns merchants, pirates and robbers.

16. The Andaman and Nicobar Islands lie westward of Siam. The former are inhabited by a fierce Negro race, and the latter by a people similar to the Malays, but peaceable in their habits. The well-known Orang Outang is found in Malacca. The fables long propagated of this gigantic Ape, walking erect like a man, waging war with clubs, &c. are all now exploded.

Map No. 14. — How is Birmah bounded? Siam bounded? Anam bounded? Malacca bounded? What rivers flow into the Gulf of Martaban? Iy., Sn. — Into the Gulf of Siam? Mn. — China sea? Ca. — How long are all these rivers? What isthmus connects Malacca with Siam? Kw. — What strait separates it from Sumatra? Ma. — Which is the south cape of Birmah? Ns. — Of Malacca? Ra. — Of Cambodia? Ca. — What is the population of Bankok? Ava? Hue? Saigon? Umerapoora? Arracan? Singapore? What islands lie west of Siam? An. Nr.

— 193 —

CHINESE EMPIRE.

1. The Chinese empire contains the greatest number of inhabitants subject to any one government in the world. It embraces China, Chinese Tartary, Corea, and Thibet. The population of the whole is supposed to be 230 millions. The great mass of the people are Chinese; but the ruling race, to which the Emperor belongs, is the Mantchoo, by whom China was conquered, in 1644.

British Possessions. 14. Arracan, &c. 15. Malacca. 16. Andaman and Nicobar Islands. What is said of the Orang Outang?

China. Q. — 1. What does the Chinese empire contain? What is

Group of Chinese.

CHINA.

2. CHINA comprises a territory about three-fourths the size of the United States. It is noted for the great antiquity of its government; the singularity of its manners and customs; and for its jealous and reserved policy towards other nations.

3. The soil and climate, from the great extent of country, are extremely various. The former is cultivated with the greatest care, in every part: even the mountains and rocks are made to yield some useful product.

4. Manufactures are numerous; and many of them have been carried, by the Chinese, to a state of considerable perfection. Foreign commerce is carried on at Canton, chiefly with the English and Americans, in tea, silks, cotton, and china-ware.

5. The export of tea alone to Great Britain and the United States is about 60 millions of pounds, annually. The inland trade of China, by means of the numerous rivers and canals, is very extensive. The Grand, or Imperial canal is the largest in the world, being 600 miles length. It is said to have employed 30,000 men upwards of 4 ears in its construction.

6. The great wall which bounds China on the north is, probably, th greatest work ever accomplished by man. It is 1,500 miles in length 24 feet in height, and of such thickness, that six horsemen can easily ride abreast upon it. It was built 2,000 years ago, as a defence against the Tartars.

---

said of the people? 2. What does China comprise? For what is it noted? 3. What is said of the soil? 4. Manufactures? Foreign commerce? 5. Export of tea? The Grand canal? 6. The great

7. The chief beauty of the women, in this country, is thought to be the smallness of their feet, which are bound up from infancy in order to prevent their growing to the natural size. The shoes of a Chinese lady are about four inches in length, and two in breadth.

8. The principal food used is rice; but the poorer classes eat rats, mice, and puppies; and often suffer from famine. Soups made of edible birds'-nests, sea-slug, and other gummy substances, are among the luxuries of the rich.

9. Learning is highly esteemed in China. They have many books n various subjects, yet are very deficient in true literature and science. he Mandarins, or great officers, employed in the administration of the overnment, owe their rank and title entirely to their skill in letters.

Chinese Military.

10. The army of China is said to amount to 800,000 men; but, compared with European soldiers, their appearance is most unmilitary. Their paper helmets, wadded gowns, quilted petticoats, and clumsy satin boots, present nothing of the aspect of war. There are a few small armed vessels to suppress smuggling and piracy, but nothing that can be called a navy.

11. The Chinese are, in many respects, a civilized people, and are distinguished for order, industry, and regularity; but their treatment of females, worshiping of idols, and general disregard of truth, are circumstances which lower them in the scale of nations, and rank them below the least civilized of any of the Christian communities.

12. The religion of Fo and Buddha is professed by the chief part of the people; but the learned men worship the spirit of their great philosopher, Confucius. There are also some Mahomedans and Roman Catholics in China. The government is despotic, and is conducted with great form and ceremony. The Emperor is styled the Son of Heaven; and when he goes abroad, the houses and shops must be shut, and all that he meets must prostrate themselves on the ground.

---

wall? 7. What is said of the women? 8. The food? 9. Learning? 10. The army? 11. Chinese? 12. Religion? 13. Describe Pekin.

13. Pekin, the capital of China, is one of the largest cities in the world. It contains two distinct towns, the Chinese and Tartar, of which the former is the most elegant and populous; but the latter is adorned by the imperial palace and gardens. The shops are very numerous, and principally only one story high: they are adorned with flags, varnish, paintings, and lanterns. The streets are immensely crowded, for the Chinese spend much of their time in the open air.

14. Nankin, the ancient capital, is much larger than Pekin; but it now greatly decayed, and is noted for its porcelain tower, and its manufactures of nankeen.

Canton is the only port at which Europeans are allowed to trade and reside. Its commerce is very great, and it is said that 5000 vessels are often seen lying before the city at once. Shanghae is, next to Canton, the greatest commercial city of China. Teentsin is the port of Pekin, and a great emporium for salt; its inhabitants have more resemblance to Europeans, than those of any other part of the empire. Sootchow, Hangtchow, Kingteching, and Voutchang, are all populous cities, and situated in the midst of rich and fertile districts.

194

THIBET.

1. THIBET is a cold elevated region, bounded by ranges of the highest mountains on the globe; and some of the largest rivers on the eastern continent take their rise within its territory. This country, together with Bootan and Little Thibet, all belong to China.

2. The soil is sterile, and vegetation is scanty; but the people possess large herds of cattle. The musk deer, broad-tailed sheep, and shawl goat, are some of the chief animals of this country; the latter furnishes the fine wool, of which the valuable shawls of Cashmere are made.

3. Thibet is the chief seat of the religion of Buddha, called Fo in China, and Shamanism in Tartary. The Grand Lama is the head of this system, and is considered as the Creator himself, dwelling in a human form; and when he dies, the divine spirit is supposed to pass into another body, known by certain signs to the priests only.

4. Lassa is the religious capital of Central Asia, and the residence of the Chinese governor. Not far from the city, is the temple or palace of the Grand Lama; it is said to contain ten thousand rooms: the towers and obelisks of the building are covered with gold and silver, and there are innumerable images of Buddha of gold, silver, and other metals. This city is on a small branch of the Burrampoota river.

The shops. 14. Nankin. Canton. The other principal cities of China.

Thibet. Q. — 1. What is Thibet? 2. What is said of the soil? Of cattle? 3. Of religion? The Grand Lama. 4. Describe Lassa. 5. Teshoo Lomboo.

Palace of Teshoo Lomboo.

5 Teshoo Lomboo is the seat of an inferior Lama, who resides in a large monastery, composed of 400 houses, encompassed by a high wall. Jigagungar is the most populous city in Thibet.

Map No. 14. — How is China bounded? What sea lies between China and Corea? Yw. — What rivers flow into the Eastern sea? H.-Ho., Yg., H.-Kg. — How long are they? What islands lie east of China? Lo., Fa. —What islands south? Hn. — How long are Formosa and Hainan? What mountains are in China? Pg., Mg. — What lakes? Tg., Pg., K.-Nr. — What is the population of Pekin? Canton? Teentsin? Nankin? Voutchang? Sootchow? Hangtchow? Kingteching? On what rivers are the first five of the foregoing cities?

How is Thibet bounded? What rivers take their rise in it? Br., Iy., Ca., Yg. — How long are all these? What mountains are on the north? Kn. — The south-west? Hh. — How high are these? What mountain west of Lassa? Ce. — How high is it? What river runs through Little Thibet? Is. — What is the population of Jigagungar? Of Lassa?

— 195 —

COREA.

1. Corea is a large peninsula, situated between China and Japan. The people have no intercourse with any nation, except the Chinese and Japanese, and are consequently but little known.

2. This kingdom is ruled by a sovereign, who pays homage and tribute to China. The arts, learning, and written language of that country are in use in Corea; but the spoken language is entirely different. Kingkitao, the capital, is situated nearly in the centre of the country.

Corea and Japan. Q. — 1. What is Corea? 2. What is said of the sovereign? Arts, learning, &c.? Kingkitao? 3. What does Japan

EMPIRE OF JAPAN.

3. THE empire of Japan comprises the islands of Niphon, Kiusiu, and Sikoke, with the southernmost of the Kurile islands. The people, like the Chinese, are very jealous of Europeans; so that our knowledge of the country is rather limited.

4. The agriculture is in a highly improved state. Rice, wheat, sugar, cotton, and tobacco, are extensively cultivated, and the tea-plant grows wild in the hedges. The manufactures are numerous, and include silk, cotton, porcelain, and lackered or Japan ware, in which, and the working of metals, the Japanese excel. Gold, silver, and copper, are the principal minerals found in this country.

5. Japan is one of the most civilized nations in Eastern Asia. The people pay great attention to the education of their children, and females are instructed with the same care as the other sex. They rigorously exclude foreigners from the empire, and permit none but the Chinese, Coreans, and Dutch, to have intercourse with them. The latter are subject to much indignity, yet they submit to it for the sake of the profits of the trade.

6. The worship of Buddha, of Confucius, and of spirits, or genii, prevails in Japan. The last is called the religion of Sinto. The government is absolute; and there are two monarchs: the Kubo, or commander in chief of the army, is the real sovereign; while the Dairi is the spiritual head of the empire. He lives retired, in his palace at Miaco, and seldom ventures abroad, except on a visit to some of the great temples.

7. The laws are extremely severe, and are rigorously executed. The security of person and property is, in consequence, rendered very complete. Great crimes and capital punishments are, perhaps, more rare here than in almost any other nation. Cutting to pieces, and immersion in boiling oil, are common modes of punishing the guilty. The parent is made to suffer for the crimes of the child, and the child for those of the parent.

8. Jedo, the capital, is one of the largest cities in the world. It is seven miles long, and five broad; and contains many palaces of the great lords, who must reside here part of the year. The buildings, on account of the frequency of earthquakes, are built of one story only. The city is subject to dreadful fires, one of which, in the year 1701, consumed 100,000 houses. Jedo is on the east side of the island of Niphon.

---

comprise? 4. What is said of the agriculture? Manufactures? Gold, &c.? 5. What is Japan? What is said of education? Foreigners? 6. The worship of Buddha, &c.? The government? Monarchs? 7. What is said of the laws? Cutting to pieces, &c.? 8. Describe Jedo. 9. Miaco. Osaco? Nangasaki.

9. Miaco is the religious capital of Japan; and is also the centre of its literature and science. It contains some very large palaces and temples. One of the latter, Fokosi, is 1,000 feet long; and contains an image of Buddha, 83 feet high. Osaca is a large city in Niphon. It is, like Venice, intersected by numerous canals. Nangasaki, in Kiusiu, is the only port at which foreigners are allowed to trade. The Dutch are here restricted to a small island, where they are allowed a space of only 600 feet long, by 120 wide, in which to carry on their business.

Map No. 14. — What sea bounds Corea on the west? Yw. — On the east? Jn. — How wide is the sea of Japan? What strait separates Corea from Japan? Ca. — What country bounds Corea on the north? Ma. — What sea on the south? En. — Which is the largest of the Japan Islands? Nn. — The next in extent? Jo. — How long is each of these islands? What strait separates Niphon and Jesso? My. — What island lies north of Jesso? Sn. — How long is Seghalien? What channel separates it from Mantchooria? Ty. — What islands lie north-east of Jesso? Ke. — Which is the largest of these? Sn. — What ocean bounds Japan on the east? Pc. — How long and wide is the Pacific ocean? How many miles is it from Japan to Mexico? How many inhabitants has Jedo? Miaco? Osaca? Matsmay?

196

AFRICA.

1. Africa is the third in size among the great divisions of the globe, being about one-third less than Asia, and three times larger than Europe. It is a vast peninsula, joined to Asia by the Isthmus of Suez.

2. This quarter of the world is almost wholly in a state of barbarism; yet, in ancient times its northern countries were among the most enlightened in the world, and still have written languages. They are now, however, among the lowest of the half-civilized nations.

3. Africa is the hottest region of the globe; and lies mostl within the tropics; and the influence of a tropical climate ex tends even to those portions which are in the temperate zones.

The most striking natural feature is the great desert, which extends 3,000 miles in length, and 1,000 in breadth. It is covered with sand and gravel; and appears like the bottom of a dried-up sea.

Africa. Q. — 1. What is said of Africa? 2. Of this quarter, &c.?

Africa.

4. The rivers of Africa are but few in number; and none of them are navigable, to any extent, for large vessels. The principal streams are the Niger and the Nile. The latter is remarkable for flowing sixteen hundred miles without receiving a single tributary.

5. The mountains are, generally, more distinguished for their extent than their elevation. The Atlas Mountains in Barbary, the Mountains of the Moon in central, and the Snow Mountains in southern Africa, are the principal. Other ranges, as the Crystal Mountains in Congo, and the Lupata Mountains on the east coast, are so little known, that even their very existence is doubted.

6. The principal African animals are the elephant, hippopotamus, camelopard or giraffe, and the two-horned rhinoceros, with the lion, leopard, zebra, &c. The African lion is the noblest animal of his race; those found elsewhere being much inferior in size and strength. The antelopes comprise not less than sixty different species: of these, the springbok is found in troops of several thousands. The camel in northern, and the ass in western Africa, are the chief beasts of burden, and are often employed in long and painful journeys.

7. The ostrich is the largest African bird, and the largest in the world. It runs with great rapidity, but does not fly; and its feathers are valuable as ornaments of dress. The secretary vulture, or serpent

3. The Great Desert? 4. Rivers? 5. Mountains? 6. Describe the animals. 7. Birds. 8. Crocodiles, &c. 9. Great kingdoms. Agri-

African Lion.

Springbok.

eater is remarkable for devouring the most noxious of the serpent tribe. The sociable vulture, as large as the condor, and similar in its habits, is found among all the high mountains of the interior. The bustard and guinea-fowl, with grouse, partridges, and water-fowl of various kinds, are numerous.

8. Crocodiles are found in all the rivers of the tropical parts of Africa; and serpents, scorpions, and lizards of various kinds, abound. The white ants are singular insects. They build nests 10 or 12 feet high, which are divided into apartments with magazines for provisions, arched chambers, and galleries of communication.

9. Africa has fewer great kingdoms than Asia or Europe. It is chiefly divided into a number of petty states, whose governments are rude and despotic. The operations of agriculture and manufactures are very imperfectly performed; yet, owing to the fertility of the soil, the products of the former are in many places very abundant.

10. The chief trade of the interior is carried on by caravans, consisting of numbers of camels, which cross the desert in various directions; and perform, on this sea of sand, the business accomplished by ships on the ocean. Commerce, on the northern and western coasts, is carried on mostly by Europeans, and on the east by the Arabs.

11. Africa has furnished slaves to Christian and other nations for hundreds of years; and the traffic, though somewhat checked of late is still actively carried on.

Great Britain and the United States were formerly deeply engaged in it; but both nations have forbidden it; and it is punished as piracy by the latter power. The French, Spanish, and Portuguese, still pursue the trade on certain parts of the African coast.

12. The people of Africa are estimated to amount to almost 60 mil-

---

culture. Manufactures. 10. Trade of the interior. Commerce. 11. What is said of slaves? Great Britain and the United States? 12. What number of inhabitants? To what do they belong, &c.

lions. They belong to two great races, the African and Caucasian. The former are the most numerous, and comprise the chief part of the inhabitants south of the Great Desert. They are nearly all pagans; and are extremely ignorant and superstitious.

The Moors, Arabs, Berbers, Egyptians, Abyssinians, Fellatas, &c., belong to the Caucasian race. They are chiefly Mahomedans; and though superior in knowledge to the African races, are still rude and barbarous.

— 197 —

Map No. 16.—How is Africa bounded?

Morocco ... Bounded?—Capital?	Ashantee ... Bounded?—Capital?
Algiers .... Bounded?—Capital?	Dahomey .. Bounded?—Capital?
Tunis ..... Bounded?—Capital?	Benin ..... Bounded?—Capital?
Tripoli .... Bounded?—Capital?	Congo ..... Bounded?—Capital?
Egypt ..... Bounded?—Capital?	Angola .... Bounded?—Capital?
Nubia ..... Bounded?—Capital?	Benguela ... Bounded?—Capital?
Abyssinia . Bounded?—Capital?	Cape Colony Bounded?—Capital?
Liberia .... Bounded?—Capital?	Mozambique Bounded?—Capital?

Where is the Gulf of Sidra? Gulf of Guinea? Gulf of Aden? Strait of Gibraltar? Strait of Babelmandel? Channel of Mozambique?

Where is Great Fish Bay? Walwisch B.? Santa Cruz B.? St. Helena B.? Delagoa B.? Bombetok B.? Anton Gils B.? Vohemaire B.?

Where is Cape Bona? C. Guardafui? C. Bassas? C. Delgado? C. Corrientes? C. Lagullas? C. of Good Hope? C. Cross? C. Frio? C. Palmas? C. Verde? C. Blanco? C. Bojador? C. Ambro? C. St. Mary?

Where is the River Nile? The Senegal River? Gambia? Grande? St. Paul's? Niger? Congo? Ambriz? Coanza? Bembaroughe? Orange? Manice? Zambeze? Ozee? Webbe? Yeou? Shary? Misselad?

Where are the Atlas Mountains? Mts. of Kong? Mts. of the Moon? Crystal Mts.? Lupata Mts.? Snow Mts.? Red Mts.? Radama Mts.?

Where are the Azores Islands? Madeira Is.? Canary Is.? Cape Verde Is.? Fernando Po I.? Prince's I.? St. Thomas I.? Annobon I.? Ascension I.? St. Helena? Ethiopian Archipelago? Mascarenha Is.? Mauritius I.? Bourbon I.? Seychelle Is.? Almirante Is.? Comoro Is.? Monfia I.? Zanzibar I.? Pemba I.? Socotra I.?

Where is the Great Desert? Libyan Desert? Nubian Desert? Desert of Challahengah? This is called also the Karri Harri Desert.

What three great circles pass through Africa? T.-Cr., Er., T.-Cn. In what zones is Africa situated? Td., Te. In what zone is it mostly? Tc. Africa contains 37 degrees of north and 35 of south latitude. In what latitude then is it mostly? Nh. It contains 50 degrees of east and 18 of west longitude. In what longitude then is it chiefly? Et.

Arab Families removing.

BARBARY.

1. Barbary is that part of northern Africa which includes Morocco, Algiers, Tunis, and Tripoli, together with the interior region called Beled el Jerid, or Land of Dates.

2. It is traversed some distance inland by the Atlas Mountains, between which and the sea-coast the climate is mild, and the soil is, generally, fertile, but poorly cultivated. Wheat and barley are the principal products; but grapes, olives, almonds, dates, and other fruits, are raised in great perfection.

3. The foreign commerce of the Barbary states is extremely limited, and much burthened with arbitrary exactions. The exports consist principally of the raw produce of the soil. The most active traffic is that carried on by the caravans with the interior country south of the Great Desert.

4. Piracy was once the chief employment of the people of this region. Many vessels were captured, and numbers of European and American sailors were enslaved by them; but this practice, so long a disgrace to Christendom, no longer exists.

5. Barbary is inhabited by several distinct races. The Moors, who are the ruling people, inhabit the towns. The Arabs, originally from the Great Desert, live in tents; and raise cattle and grain. In re-

Barbary. Q. — 1. What does Barbary include? 2. By what is it traversed? What is said of the climate? Soil, &c.? Products? 3 Commerce? 4. Piracy? 5. Describe the Moors. 6. Shelluhs? Jews,

moving from one spot to another, the women, children, and smaller domestic animals, are carried on camels. The men, on horseback, drive the cattle; and are armed, ready to defend their property, or repel aggression.

6. The Shelluhs inhabit the Atlas Mountains, and live chiefly by hunting and cultivating the ground. They belong to the Berber race, supposed to have been the first inhabitants of this part of the continent. The Kabyles of Algiers, the Tuaricks and Tibboos of the Great Desert, and part of the inhabitants of Nubia, all appear to be the same people. There are also numbers of Jews in Barbary, who are much oppressed, and heavily taxed; but, being allowed to engage in trade, often become wealthy. Besides these races, there are many negroes, brought originally from Soudan, who in Morocco form the chief part of the military force of the empire.

7. *Extent and Population of the Barbary States.*

	Square Miles.	Population.	Pop. to Sq. Ms.
Morocco	190,000	6,000,000	31
Algiers	90,000	1,500,000	16
Tunis	50,000	1,000,000	20
Tripoli	100,000	600,000	12
Beled el Jerid	140,000	900,000	6
Total,	570,000	10,000,000	19½

View of the Plain of Morocco, and the Atlas Mountains.

MOROCCO.

8. Morocco is the most important of the Barbary powers. It includes the kingdoms of Morocco and Fez; and has also a nominal control over those of Suse and Tafilelt.

9. This state is, at present, much less flourishing than formerly.

&c. 7. Which is the largest and most populous state in Barbary? The next in extent? In population? 8. What is Morocco? 9. What

The acts of its government are calculated to discourage agriculture, and every branch of useful industry; and its commerce, once considerable, is now almost destroyed. The only important manufacture is that of Morocco leather, which is superior to any made elsewhere.

10. The city of Morocco, the capital, is situated in a fertile, thickly-wooded plain, near the foot of the Atlas Mountains, and 180 miles from the sea. It is enclosed by a wall, and is surrounded by numerous gardens. Fez is 230 miles nearly north of Morocco; it was, for a long ime, the most splendid city of western Africa, but is now much decayed, and a great portion of it is in ruins.

11. Mequinez is sometimes the residence of the emperor. Its inhabitants are more civilized and humane than those of any other city of Morocco. Mogadore is the chief sea-port. Rabat is one of the most important towns on the coast. Sallee, almost adjoining it, was long noted for its piracies, but is now nearly deserted.

Map No. 14. — What bounds Morocco on the north? M.-Sa. — South? G.-Dt. — East? As., B.-Jd., G.-Dt. — What strait separates it from Spain? Gr. — What islands lie west of Morocco? Ma., Cy. — What mountains extend through Morocco? As. — Which is the principal peak? M.-Mn. — How high is it? What is the population of Morocco? Fez? Mequinez? Rabat? Mogadore? Santa Cruz? How far is it from Morocco to Florida?

199

ALGIERS, OR ALGERIA.

1. ALGIERS occupies the territory of the ancient Numidia. The people of this state were the most enterprising and daring pirates in Barbary, and formerly maintained a naval force which rendered the name of Algerines a terror to the people of southern Europe. It was conquered by France in 1830, and is now held as a colonial territory.

2. The city of Algiers is strongly fortified. It has a good harbour, and carries on a considerable trade. It is now a half French and half Moorish town. The invading army captured in this city 10 million dollars in money, besides an ample supply of ships, stores, and ammunition. Algiers is about 500 miles east of the Strait of Gibraltar.

3. Constantine, Mascara, and Tlemsen, are the most important towns in the interior. Oran in the west, and Bona in the eastern part of the territory, are the most considerable sea-ports; the latter is the seat of

---

is said of its condition? 10. Describe the city of Morocco. Fez. 11. Mequinez, and the other towns.

Algiers. Q. — 1. What does Algiers occupy? What is said of the people? 2. Describe the city of Algiers. Constantine. 4. What

the noted coral fishery which yields to the amount of 300,000 or 400,000 dollars annually.

TUNIS.

4. TUNIS is the most fertile and best cultivated of the Barbary States, and the people are at the same time the most civilized and industrious in this quarter.

5. Of the products of the country, grain, dates, olive-oil, and wool are exported to some extent. There is a considerable traffic also carried on with interior Africa.

6. The city of Tunis is the largest and most flourishing place in Barbary, and being no longer engaged in piracy, has applied itself to manufactures and commerce; of the former, silk stuffs and velvets are the most considerable. Kairwan, Monaster, and Cabes, are important towns.

TRIPOLI.

7. TRIPOLI is the most eastern, and is also the least fertile and populous part of Barbary. Its sovereign is more friendly to Christians, and has shown a greater desire to introduce the improvements of civilized life into his dominions, than any other prince in this part of the world.

8. The territory of Tripoli is nearly all a desert, but contains some fertile districts along the sea-coast, in which agriculture is actively pursued. An extensive commerce by means of caravans is carried on with the countries of interior Africa. Fezzan, the great emporium of the caravan trade, is tributary to this state. Barca and Augela, also, belong to it.

9. Tripoli, the capital, has a good harbour, and carries on a considerable commerce; the streets are narrow, with low mean houses; but the palace of the Dey and some of the mosques are handsome structures Mesurata is, next to the capital, the most important town.

BARCA.

10. BARCA, the ancient Libya, is separated from Tripoli by an extensive desert. It was in ancient times noted for its productiveness, but hardly any part of its soil is now cultivated. The inhabitants are chiefly Arabs, who wander about the country with their flocks and herds.

11. The ruins of ancient cities are numerous and interesting; of

---

is said of Tunis? 5. The products? 6. Describe the city of Tunis. 7. What is said of Tripoli? 8. The territory? Commerce? 9. Describe the capital. 10. What is said of Barca? 11. Ruins, &c

Tombs of Cyrene.

these, Cyrene, with its Necropolis, or city of the tombs, is the most striking. Derne and Bengazi are the only places that can be called towns. The first was captured with great gallantry by General Eaton, an American, in 1805.

Map No. 16. — By what is Algiers bounded on the north? M.-Sa. — South? B.-Jd. — East? Ts. — West? Mo. — What mountains are in the south? As. — How long are they? What is the population of Algiers? Constantine? Bona? Oran? What bounds Tunis on the north? M.-Sa. — South? B.-Jd. — East? M.-Sa., Ti. — West? As. — What cape on the north? Ba. — What lake in the south? Lh. — What is the population of Tunis? Kairwan? What bounds Tripoli on the north? M.-Sa. — South? G.-Dt. — West? Ts., B.-Jd. — What gulf separates Tripoli from Barca? Sa. — What is the population of Tripoli? What bounds Barca on the north? M.-Sa. — South? L.-Dt. — East? Et. — West? G.-Sa.

— 200 —

BELED EL JERID.

1. The Beled el Jerid, or Land of Dates, stretches along the northern edge of the Great Desert, from the Atlas Mountains on the west, to the frontiers of Tripoli on the east.

2. The soil, though dry and arid, produces dates in great abundance, which form the chief food of the inhabitants. This region comprises several petty states, which are peopled by various tribes of Berbers and Arabs.

Beled el Jerid. Q. — 1. What is said of the Beled el Jerid? 2 Soil?

3. Nearly all the towns are surrounded by walls, and are inhabited some by two and others by three different tribes. They are in consequence divided into corresponding sections. Furious contests often occur between the tribes in these towns, in which event the gates connecting the different quarters are closed, until peace is restored. Eghwaat, Tuggurt, and Gadames, are the principal towns.

THE GREAT DESERT.

4. THE Great Desert stretches with but little interruption from the Atlantic ocean to the river Nile. It is composed of vast sandy plains, swept by hot winds and parched by a burning sun.

5. The Desert is here and there diversified with watered and fertile spots, called *oases*; of these, Fezzan, Tibesty, Bilmah, Agdass, and Tuat, appear to be the principal. That part of the Great Desert extending from Fezzan to the Atlantic ocean, is called by the Arabs the Sahara, while the eastern and smaller section is most usually termed the Libyan esert.

6. Fezzan is the largest of the oases, and is tributary to Tripoli ..ts people, reckoned at 70,000, possess but little energy of character, and are imperfectly acquainted with the arts. It is principally important as the centre of the caravan trade. Mourzuk, the capital, is a small mud-walled town. It is 600 miles nearly south from Tripoli.

States, &c.? 3. Towns? 4. Describe the Great Desert. 5. How is it diversified? What is the Sahara, &c.? 6. Describe Fezzan. 7.

7. The central part of the Desert is occupied by the Tibboos and the Tuaricks. The former are as black as negroes, but of a different aspect. Bilmah appears to be their principal district. The Tuaricks are a tall handsome race, with bright sparkling eyes and complexions, but little darker than southern Europeans. Agdass and Timbuctoo are said to be in their possession.

8. In crossing the Great Desert, travellers are often plundered by the barbarous inhabitants; their lives are also endangered by the sand blown up by tempests, which fills and darkens the air, and threatens suffocate and overwhelm them. The occasional failures of water a the usual stopping-places, is likewise often attended with fatal con sequences; from the latter cause in the year 1805, a caravan of 1,800 camels, and 2,000 men, perished with thirst.

9. On the sea-coast of the desert are various wandering and predatory tribes, who often meet with a rich booty in the vessels shipwrecked on their shores, and which are always plundered with the greatest avidity. In different parts of the desert, there are mines of rock salt; the extensive demand for which in Soudan causes the surface of this dreary region to be often enlivened by the passage of numerous caravans.

Map No. 16. — How is the Beled el Jerid bounded? How is the Great Desert bounded? What tribes are in the centre? Ts., Ts. — On the west? Ms., Ws., Ts., Bs. — What salt-mines are in the Great Desert? Ty., Tt., An. — What oases are in the Great Desert? Fn., Ty., Bh., As., Tt., Aa., Sh., E.-Dl., E.-Fh. — What country in the south? Lr. — How long and wide is the Great Desert? What capes are on the coast? Br., Bo. — How far is it to Mexico? To Cuba?

— 201 —

THE REGION OF THE NILE.

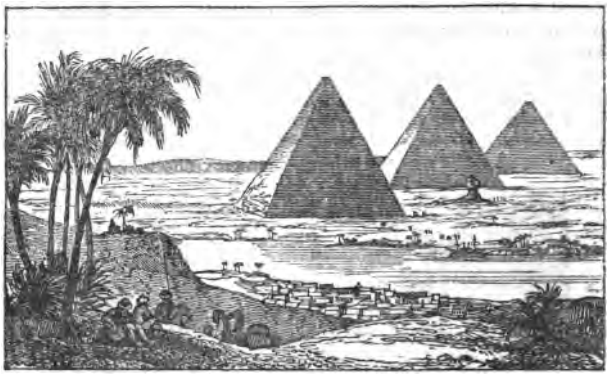
1. The Region of the Nile comprehends all that part of Africa watered by the river Nile and its tributaries. It comprises Egypt, Nubia, Abyssinia, Kordofan, Darfur, Fertit, &c.

EGYPT.

2. Egypt is celebrated for its great antiquity, and the earl civilization of its inhabitants. Its mighty pyramids, splendid obelisks, and the ruins of its ancient cities, all attest its former magnificence.

Tibboos. Tuaricks. 8. What is said of travellers? 9. Of the sea-coast?

The Region of the Nile. Q. — 1. What does the Region of the Nile comprehend? 2. What is said of Egypt? 3. Of its present ruler?



3. It was, until lately, a Turkish province; but the present ruler has rendered himself independent of his former master, and is introducing into Egypt the arts, learning, and civiliza tion of European nations. The great mass of the people are however, much oppressed by heavy exactions; and are frequently torn from their families, and compelled to serve in the armies or fleets of their military ruler.

4. The soil of Egypt is naturally barren, and owes all its fertility to the overflowing of the river Nile, which enriches the country instead of rain. Agriculture is diligently pursued; and in many parts of the country three crops of some products are raised, annually. Indian-corn, rice, wheat, sugar-cane, indigo, tobacco, cotton, &c., are the chief productions.

5. The inhabitants are of various races. The Arabs are the most numerous. The Turks are the ruling people; and the Copts are the descendants of the ancient Egyptians. There are also a number of Jews, and a few Europeans. The latter are chiefly in the service of the government.

6. The foreign possessions of Egypt are Nubia and Kordofan, in Africa; Mecca, Yemen, and the Island of Cyprus, in Asia, with the Island of Candia in Europe. The population of this new empire is, probably, not less than six millions.

7. Egypt abounds in remarkable antiquities. The pyramids are amongst the most astonishing monuments of human labour. The

---

The people? 4. The soil? Agriculture? Products? 5. The inhabitants? 6. Foreign possessions? 7. In what does Egypt abound?

largest is 500 feet high, and its base covers 11 acres of ground. Ancient historians state that 100,000 men were employed in this work for 20 years.

8. At Thebes, in Upper Egypt, are remains which are calculated to fill the beholder with astonishment. Almost the whole extent of eight miles along the river is covered with magnificent portals, decorated with sculpture, forests of columns, and long avenues of colossal statues.

Cairo.

9. Cairo, the capital of Egypt, is the most populous city in Africa; and carries on a considerable trade with the interior of the continent by caravans. This place is beginning to imbibe some of the elements of European civilization. A scientific society, and various schools have been lately established. Hotels are kept on the plan of those in Paris; and steam-boats navigate the Nile from Alexandria to some distance above Cairo. This city is on the river Nile 130 miles from the sea.

10. Alexandria was one of the most celebrated cities of ancient times and long the seat of the arts and sciences. After being for ages in a state of decay, it is at length reviving. It is now the chief sea-port and naval station of Egypt. Vessels of nearly every European nation are to be found in its harbour; and steam-boats run to all the principal ports and islands in the Mediterranean. Damietta and Rosetta are the chief towns in Lower, and Siout and Girge in Upper Egypt. Suez and Cosseir, on the Red Sea, possess some trade.

Map No. 16. — What bounds Egypt on the north? M.-Sa. — South? Na. — East? R.-Sa. — West? G.-Dt. — What river flows through Egypt? Ne. — How long is it? What isthmus connects Egypt with Arabia? Sz. — How wide is it? What is the country at the mouth of the Nile called? Da. — What is a Delta? (See page 74.) What is the population of Cairo? Damietta? Alexandria? Siout? Rosetta? Cosseir? Suez? What three oases are included in Egypt? Sh., E.-Dl., E.-Kh. — What do you observe on the west side of the Nile near Cairo? Ps. — What ruins are in the south part of Egypt? Ts.

---

8. Describe Thebes. 9. Cairo? 10. Alexandria. Damietta, &c.

— 202 —

NUBIA.

1. NUBIA is an extensive region, chiefly composed of rocky and sandy deserts. The climate, though hot, is dry, and generally healthful.

2. Nearly all the productive soil which Nubia possesses is a narrow strip on both sides of the Nile: this being watered from the river, by means of wheels worked by oxen, produces dhourra, a coarse kind of grain, barley, cotton, tobacco, and indigo.

3. The inhabitants of the towns and villages are similar to the Berbers of Mount Atlas; those of the desert are of Arab origin, and resemble the same race in other quarters. The latter were notorious for their robberies, but they are now restrained from that practice by the authority of the Pacha of Egypt.

4. The remains of ancient temples are common in Nubia. These are either under ground or cut out of the solid rock. That of Ebsambul is the most magnificent, and rivals the most splendid of the Egyptian monuments.

5. New Dongola, the capital of Nubia, once an important town, is now much decayed. Sennaar, the capital of the kingdom of the same name, formerly said to have contained 100,000 inhabitants, is almost deserted and in ruins. Suakem is a small port on the Red Sea, at which Mahomedan pilgrims from the interior take passage for Mecca.

6. DARFUR possesses a dry and sandy soil, but the influence of the tropical rains causes it to produce, to some extent, wheat and millet. Camels, horses, and cattle, abound. BERGOO, or WADAY, lying westward from Darfur, is an extensive kingdom. It is imperfectly known, but is reported to be well peopled.

7. KORDOFAN was sometime since conquered by the Pacha of Egypt. Its soldiers, like those of Bornou, wear armour in time of war. FERTIT and DONGA are known only by report: the former is said to abound in copper. The SHILLUKS are a nation of negroes, of unusual size and strength.

ABYSSINIA.

8. ABYSSINIA, the ancient Ethiopia, is a country of rugged mountains, intersected by deep and fertile valleys. Though situated in the torrid zone, the climate is generally temperate and pleasant. Wheat, barley, and teff, a very

---

Nubia. Q. — 1. What is Nubia? 2. What is said of the soil? 3. The inhabitants? 4. The remains of ancient temples? 5. Describe Dongola. 6. Darfur. 7. Kordofan. 8. Abyssinia. 9. What is said

small grain, are the chief products; and salt is the principal mineral.

9. The people are in some respects superior to the nations around them, and have some knowledge of the arts; yet their manners are extremely cruel and licentious. At their feasts, they eat raw flesh cut from the animal while yet warm. Intoxication is frequent, a plurality of wives is common, and great depravity of manners prevails.

10. The religion of Abyssinia is a corrupt kind of Christianity, intermixed with Jewish rites and ceremonies. Circumcision is practised. Baptism and the Lord's Supper are administered, and Saturday and Sunday are both observed as a sabbath. The churches are numerous, and are much adorned with paintings. Learning is extremely limited, being confined to the priests, and is connected principally with their system of religion.

11. This country was formerly under one government, but now comprises three divisions—Tigre, Amhara, and Shoa and Efat. Some of the provinces have been conquered by the Galla, a most ferocious and brutal people, who in their incursions spare neither age nor sex. They perform immense marches, swim rivers, and endure incredible fatigue.

12. Gondar, the capital of Amhara, is the largest city in Abyssinia, and is said to be eight or ten miles in circuit. Antalo and Adowa are the other principal towns. Axum, the ancient capital of Abyssinia, is now in ruins, but is remarkable for its antiquities. Massuah, a port belonging to Egypt, is the only place through which the trifling foreign trade of this country is carried on.

Map No. 16. — How is Nubia bounded? What river is in Nubia? Ne. — What desert? Nn. — What is the population of Suakem? Shendy? Merawe? Old Dongola? New Dongola? Derr? What bounds Abyssinia on the north? Na. — South? Ea. Al. — East? R.-Sa. — West? Ss. — What lake in the centre? Da. — What river flows from it? Ni. — What is the population of Gondar? Antalo? Massuah? Axum? What countries lie west of the Nile? Kn., Dr., Bo. — South of Darfur? Ft., Da. — What river flows through Bergoo? Md. — The capitals of these countries? It., Ce., Wa. — The population of Cobbe? What towns are on the Nile? On the A

WESTERN AFRICA.

1. This region extends from the Great Desert to the Tropic of Capricorn. Its chief divisions are Senegambia, and Upper and Lower Guinea. A highly productive soil, a rich luxu-

---

of the people? 10. Religion? 11. Government? Describe the Galla. 12. Gondar and the other towns.

riance of vegetation, and a great variety and abundance of animals, distinguish this part of the continent.

2. The inhabitants are rude, ignorant, and barbarous. Their chiefs are cruel and despotic, and in some parts are regarded by their subjects as a sacred race. Mahomedanism is the religion of many tribes; but Fetechism, or the worship of snakes, lizards, and other disgusting objects, prevails to a great extent.

3. The slave-trade has been carried on by Europeans from this region to a greater extent than from any other part of Africa; and, notwithstanding the exertions made to suppress it, numbers of slaves are still carried off.

SENEGAMBIA.

4. SENEGAMBIA stretches from the Great Desert to the colony of Liberia. It contains a number of different states, of which Foota Jallon, Bambouk, and Soolimana, all in the interior, appear to be the principal.

5. The inhabitants of FOOTA JALLON belong to the Foulah nation, who are widely dispersed over Western and Central Africa. They are the most civilized people of this region, and have dark olive complexions, with high and often pleasing features. The Jaloffs and Mandingoes are also important races, but differ from the Foulahs in their complexion and general appearance.

6. The French, English, and Portuguese, have settlements established on various parts of the coast, for the purpose of trading with the natives for slaves, ivory, gum-arabic, and gold-dust.

Western Africa. Q. — 1. Describe this region. 2. The inhabitants. Religion. 3. Slave-trade. 4. What is said of Senegambia? 5 The Foulahs? Jaloffs, &c.? 6. The French, &c.?

SIERRA LEONE.

7. The British Colony of Sierra Leone was established in 1787, for the purpose of introducing the Christian religion and civilization into Africa.

8. The bulk of the inhabitants are liberated slaves, taken from captured slave-ships. The population of the colony is about 30,000, of whom not more than 100 are whites; the extreme unhealthiness of the climate rendering it almost impossible for them to reside here with safety. Freetown is the capital of Sierra Leone, besides which there are 8 or 10 villages.

LIBERIA.

9. Liberia, now the most interesting country in Africa, is an American colony, founded in 1821, by the American Colonization Society, as a place of refuge for the free negroes and emancipated slaves of the United States.

10. Many have emigrated thither, and the colony is in a flourishing condition. Several of the neighbouring tribes have put themselves under its protection, and are endeavouring to imitate its customs and learn its arts. The slave-trade has been abolished within the limits of Liberia. Several vessels, built at Monrovia, trade along the coast with the native tribes, for gold, ivory, palm-oil, &c., in exchange for American and European manufactures.

11. The first settled and chief town is Monrovia; it contains about 300 houses, including churches, schools, a public library, &c. There are ten other towns and settlements which are situated at various points on the coast, from the St. Paul's river to Cape Palmas. The territory of Liberia extends along the sea-shore about 300 miles: it contains 3,500 colonists, and 20,000 natives.

Map No. 14. — How is Senegambia bounded? What are the principal rivers? Sl., Ga., Nr., R.-Ge. — How long are the three first? What cape on the west? Ve. — On the south? Ps. — What French settlement on the Senegal river? St.-Ls. — British settlement on the Gambia? Bt. — What settlement on the Rio Grande? Pe. — What islands lie west of Cape Verde? C.-Ve. — What British Colony in the south? S.-Le.

Map No. 15. — What are the principal rivers of Liberia? How long is the St. Paul's river? Which is the most northern cape? Mt. — Southern? Ps. — There are ten colonial towns — which are they? Native towns? What colony at Cape Palmas? Md. — At the St. John's river? Pa. — Near what cape is the town of Monrovia? Mo.

Sierra Leone. Q. — 7. Describe Sierra Leone. 8. What is said of the inhabitants? 9. Describe Liberia. 10. What is said of the colony? The neighbouring tribes? The slave-trade? 11. The chief towns, &c.? How far does the territory extend?

— 204 —

UPPER GUINEA.

1. Upper Guinea extends from Senegambia to Biafra. The coast is divided by navigators into the Grain, Ivory, Gold, and Slave Coasts: these are so named from the chief objects of trade at the respective places.

2. Besides part of the colony of Liberia, this region contains the native kingdoms of Ashantee, Dahomey, Benin, &c. also some English, Dutch, and Danish settlements.

3. The kingdom of Ashantee is situated to the north of the Gold Coast, and is the most important native state in Western Africa. The inhabitants possess some of the comforts of civilization, but live notwithstanding, in a state of shocking barbarity.

4. The horrid custom of sacrificing human beings at the decease of the sovereign, or any of the royal family, prevails to a great extent, and three thousand victims are said to have been immolated on the grave of the king's mother, on one occasion only.

The houses in Coomassie, the capital, are neat and well-built. The streets are all named, and are each under the charge of a captain.

5. The Gold Coast contains a number of European settlements or factories, founded for the purpose of trading with the natives for gold dust, the most valuable product of the country. Cape Coast Castle is the principal of the British factories, Elmina of the Dutch, and Christiansburg of the Danes; these are all fortified and have small garrisons.

6. Dahomey, on the Slave Coast, is a fertile country: it is inhabited by a warlike and ferocious people, whose manners and customs are even more cruel and barbarous than those of the Ashantees. Abomey is the capital.

Benin is but little known: the king is not only absolute, but is considered a god in the eyes of his subjects, and all crimes against him are punished both as treason and impiety.

LOWER GUINEA.

7. The principal countries comprised in Lower Guinea, are Loango, Congo, Angola, and Benguela. The sea-coast of these countries is known to navigators by the name of the Coast of Angola, or simply the Coast.

8. Biafra, Calebongas, and Gaboon, lying south of the Niger river, are reported to be fertile and populous countries, but are seldom visited.

Upper Guinea. Q.—1. Describe Upper Guinea. 2. Kingdoms, &c. 3. Ashantee. 4. What is said of human sacrifices? Coomassie? 5. The Gold Coast? 6. Dahomey? Benin? 7. Describe Lower

Loango possesses a fine climate and a fertile soil; the slave trade is carried on to some extent from its chief ports, Cabenda and Loango.

9 Congo, Angola, Benguela, and Matemba, are situated to the southward of the river Congo. The whole region is said to be fertile, though in some parts but thinly peopled. These territories were discovered by the Portuguese in 1487, and ever since that time have been under their control; but their authority in the interior is supposed to be only nominal.

10. Cassange and Moolooa are countries reported to be far inland. The inhabitants of the latter are more civilized and industrious than those on the coast, yet the atrocious custom of human sacrifice prevails. St. Salvador is the principal town of Congo. St. Paul de Loando and St. Felipe de Benguela, are the chief sea-ports: from these the slave-trade is carried on to some extent.

11. The Cimbebas Country extends five hundred miles southward from Benguela. The whole coast appears to be a desert, but the interior of the country is well fitted for pasturage. The inhabitants are a simple and inoffensive race; they are clothed in ox-hides and possess large herds of cattle.

Map No. 16. — What bounds Upper Guinea on the north? Sn. — South? G.-Ga. — East? L.-Ga. — West? Sa., La. — What mountains on the north? Kg. — What is the population of Coomassie? Abomey? Benin? How is Lower Guinea bounded? Which are its rivers? Co. Az., Ca., Be. — Mountains? Cl. — What islands in the Gulf of Guinea? F.-Po., Ps., S.-Ts., An. — To what power do the three last belong? What river divides Upper from Lower Guinea? Nr. — What is the population of Loango? St. Salvador? St. Paul de Loando? How far is it from Guinea to Brazil? From Angola to Brazil?

205

SOUTHERN AFRICA.

1. Southern Africa comprises nearly all that part of the continent which lies south of the tropic of Capricorn. Its subdivisions are the Cape Colony, Caffraria, the country of the Hottentots, and the country of the Boshuanas.

2. The Cape Colony was settled by the Dutch in 1615. It was twice conquered by Great Britain, and was finally confirmed to that power in 1815.

3. The soil along the sea-coast is, generally, fertile, and productive in

---

Guinea. 8. Biafra, &c. 9. Congo, &c. 10. Cassange, &c. 11 Cimbebas country.

Southern Africa. Q. — 1. What does Southern Africa comprise? 2. What is said of the Cape Colony? 3. The soil? Farmers? 4. Cape

grain, wine, and fruits. Much of the interior country is occupied by the great Karroo, a dry plain, destitute, for the most part, of vegetation. The farmers of the Colony, called Boors, occupy very extensive farms and raise large herds of cattle.

4. Cape Town is an important station, being the only place of refreshment for vessels between Europe and America on the one side, and the East Indies, China, and Australasia, on the other. Graham's Town is the next most important place.

CAFFRARIA.

5. Caffraria extends eastward from the Cape Colony to St. Lucia River. The inhabitants, called Caffres, are divided into several tribes. They are an athletic vigorous people, of a deep-brown colour, and with frizzled, though not woolly hair.

6. War, hunting, and tending their cattle, of which they have large herds, are the employment of the men. The women cultivate the soil, build the huts, cut wood, and make baskets of reeds so closely woven as to hold milk.

7. The missionaries had made a favourable impression on some of the Caffres; but the recent war with the British colonists has destroyed, in a great measure, the good effects of these labours, and forced the missionaries to leave the country.

Bushman disguised as an Ostrich.

8. Country of the Hottentots.—This tract of country is inhabited by the Damaras, Namaquas, Corannas, Griquas, and other tribes, all known by the general name of Hottentots. They are a

Town? 5. Describe Caffraria. The inhabitants. 6. Their employments. 7. Missionaries. 8. What is said of the country of the Hot-

quiet, inoffensive, ignorant race; but are very filthy in their habits, and uncommonly ugly in person. Some of them have been taught by the missionaries to cultivate the ground, raise cattle, and work at a few of the most common trades.

9. The Bushmen, or Wild Hottentots, go almost naked, and reside in holes made in the ground, or clefts in the rocks. They use poisoned arrows in war, or in destroying wild beasts. They display some ingenuity in disguising themselves in imitation of the ostrich, and thus are enabled to approach that shy animal sufficiently near to destroy i-

Kurreechane.

10. Country of the Boshuanas.—The Boshuanas appear to be of the same race as the Caffres; but have made more progress in industry and the arts. They dwell in towns of some magnitude; and cultivate the ground, raising millet, beans, water-melons, &c. These people have large herds of cattle, the robbing of which from each other is the cause of frequent wars among the different tribes. Lattakoo, Mashow, and Kurreechane, the chief towns, are from 600 to 800 miles from Cape Town.

Map No. 16. — What countries lie south of the Tropic of Capricorn? Hs., Bs., C.-Cy., Ca. — What is the most southern cape? Ls. — What other cape is there? G.-He. — What rivers in this region? Oe., Ke., G.-Ki., S.-La., Me. — How long is the first? What mountains? Sw. — How high are they? What desert extends north-west from the Boshuana country? Ch. This is also called the Karri-Harri Desert. — How far is it from the Cape Colony to the Swan River Colony? What is the population of Kurreechane? Mashow? Lattakoo? Cape Town? Graham's Town?

206

EASTERN AFRICA.

1. Eastern Africa comprises a vast extent of coast, reaching from Caffraria to Abyssinia, 3000 miles in length.

tentots? 9. The Bushmen? 10. Country of the Boshuanas? Towns, &c.? Herds of cattle?

Eastern Africa. Q. — 1. What does Eastern Africa comprise? 2.

Scarcely any part of the world is so imperfectly known, as the interior of this region, or opposes so many obstacles to the investigations of the traveller.

2. The states of this territory are generally occupied by dark brown or black nations, who, however, bear but little resemblance to negroes except in colour. In some of them, the inhabitants are not entirely destitute of arts and industry.

3. The COUNTRY OF THE SOMAULIES extends from Abyssinia to Cape Gardafui. The people are an active industrious race, who trade with the Arabs, Hindoos, and the interior tribes. The country is hilly and beautiful, and may be considered as the native region of incense, myrrh, and sweet-smelling gums.

4. Berbora and Adel are the chief states on the coast, of which the principal towns are Berbora and Zeyla; Hurrur, in the interior, is the residence of the Sultan of the Somaulies. The inland country is scarcely known, but appears to be occupied by the savage Galla, and by the kingdom of Gingiro, whose inhabitants are equally barbarous.

5. AJAN, or AZANIA, stretching southward from Cape Gardufui, is sandy, hilly, and, except in the northern parts, barren. The want of harbours, and the fierce character of the inhabitants, have prevented it from being much frequented by traders.

6. ZANGUEBAR extends from Cape Bassas to Cape Delgado. It contains several states, of which Magadoxa, Mombas, and Quiloa, appear to be the chief: the latter is under the control of the Arabs of Muscat. The city of Melinda, once a handsome and important place, is now in ruins, having been, with the whole of its territory, desolated by the savage Galla.

7. The commerce of this region is carried on principally by the Arabs of Muscat, who navigate vessels called dows, the planks of which, instead of being fastened in the usual manner, are sewed together. The ports of Mombas, Lamoo, and Brava, are sometimes visited by American vessels.

8. The PORTUGUESE POSSESSIONS commence at Cape Delgado; the authority of this nation was once very extensive and firmly fixed, but it is now little more than nominal. Mozambique, the residence of the Governor General, Quilimane at the mouth of the Zambeze river, and Sofala and Inhambane, are the chief stations on the coast; those in the interior are Sena, Tete, and Manica. The trade, now greatly reduced, is chiefly in slaves, gold, and ivory.

9. MONOMOTAPA, or MOTAPA, a once powerful empire, is now destroyed: its territory is mostly occupied by the Maravis, a warlike, plundering

---

What is said of its states? 3. Somaulies? 4. Berbora and Adel? 5. Ajan? 6. Zanguebar? 7. Commerce? 8. What is said of the Portuguese possessions? 9. Monomotapa? 10. The Bororas, &c. Cazembe?

tribe, whose chief, called the Changamera, resides at Zimbao, the ancient capital. Farther inland is the country of the Movizas, an industrious and peaceable race.

10. The Boroas and Makooas are populous tribes in the interior: the latter are reported to be cannibals.

Cazembe, a kingdom situated in the centre of the continent, is fertile and populous, and subject to the will of a despot; it yields in abundance iron and copper, and possesses a considerable trade in slaves and ivory.

Map No. 16. — What gulf separates Berbora from Arabia? An. — What capes on the coast of Ajan? Gi., Oi., Bs. — How far is it from Ajan to Ceylon? What country of Zanguebar lies north of the Equator? Ma. — Which lie south? Ma., Ms., Qa. — How far from Zanguebar to Sumatra? What rivers are in Zanguebar? We., Oe. — In Mozambique? Ze., Mc. — What mountains? La. — Capes? Do., Cs. — What channel separates Mozambique from Madagascar? Me.

— 207 —

CENTRAL AFRICA.

1. Central Africa comprises all the interior of the continent lying south of the Great Desert. Its northern division, Soudan, or Nigritia, has been partially explored by Europeans; but the southern, called Ethiopia, has never been visited by white men, and is, consequently, unknown.

2. The principal river of this region, the Niger, (called by the natives

Central Africa. Q. — 1. Describe Central Africa. Northern division

Joliba, or Quorra) was long a subject of intense interest to the civilized world, in consequence of the various opinions entertained concerning it Mr. Park, in 1795, determined the upper part of its course; and th lower part, and termination in the Gulf of Guinea, were ascertained b the brothers Landers, in 1830. It was ascended, a few years since, b two steam-boats, for a distance of 400 miles.

3. Soudan is, in most parts, fertile and populous; and the inhabitants generally excel those of the coast in industry and intelligence. It contains a great number of states, various in extent and character.

4. KAARTA, the most western state in Soudan, is a considerable kingdom, of moderate fertility; the capital of which is Kemmoo. BOURE and WASSELA on the Niger, and KONG extending along the mountains of the same name, are all imperfectly known. The first abounds in gold. BEEROO and MASSINA on the western, and BAEDOO on the east side of the Niger, are countries with which the civilized world is acquainted only by name. Walet, the capital of Beeroo, is reported to carry on a great trade in salt.

5. BAMBARRA was, until lately, the most important state in this quarter; but it is now divided into two distinct kingdoms. Lower Bambarra, the last formed of the two, is the most powerful state; and is governed by a Foulah, or Fellata chief. Jenne, the capital, is one of the most commercial towns in this part of Africa. Sego, the capital of Upper or Old Bambarra, stands on both sides of the river Niger, and is enclosed by a wall. The houses are built of clay, and whitewashed.

6. TIMBUCTOO is about 8 miles north of the left bank of the Niger. It has for a long time excited great attention, from its supposed riches; and is the point at which most European travellers have aimed to arrive. M. Caillie, who visited it in 1828, has dispelled, in a measure, the reputation it enjoyed for wealth and importance.

7. The FELLATAS are the most powerful nation in the interior of Africa. They are similar to the Foulahs; but are more warlike. They have conquered Houssa, the most civilized country in this quarter; also several small states on the Niger. Soccatoo is their capital. Kanojand Cashna are important cities in Houssa. Zegzeg is a fine fertile district, the capital of which is Zaria.

8. BOUSSA and YOURI are considerable towns on the Niger. The former is the capital of Borgoo, a confederacy of states on the same river; and Youri is the place at which Mr. Park lost his life. NYFFE and YARRIBA are fertile and populous countries; the people of which are the most improved and industrious of all the Negro nations. Eyeo, the capital of Yarriba, is said to be 15 miles in circuit.

9. BORNOU is one of the most important states of Soudan. A con-

---

Southern. 2. What is said of the principal river? 3. Soudan? 4. Kaarta, &c.? 5. Bambarra? 6. Timbuctoo? 7. The Fellatas? 8. Boussa, &c.? 9. Bornou? 10. Begharmi? Darkulla? Mandara?

siderable trade is carried on across the Great Desert with Tripoli, in slaves, ivory, and ostrich feathers. KANEM, lying north of Lake Tchad, is a district dependent on Bornou; and furnishes to that country its bravest and most effective soldiers. Kouka is the capital, and Angornou is the largest town.

10. BEGHARMI, lying south-east of Lake Tchad, is almost always at war with Bornou. The cavalry of both these nations cover themselves, and even their horses, with iron armour, and fight with long spears. DARKULLA is inhabited by a fierce Pagan race, called El Fellati, who fight with poisoned arrows. MANDARA occupies a fine fertile valley containing several populous towns, of which Mora is the chief.

Map, No. 16.—How is Soudan bounded? What are its rivers? Nr., Yu., Sy., Ta., Be. How long is the first? What lakes are in Soudan? Td., Fe., De. How long is the first? What mountains? Kg., Mn. What is the population of Sego? Jenne? Timbuctoo? Soccatoo? Kano? Zaria? Boussa? Bornou? Angornou?

208

AFRICAN ISLANDS.

1. ON both sides of the African continent are to be found a number of single islands and groups of islands, belonging principally to different European powers; most of them are populous, fertile, and productive in a variety of valuable commodities.

2. The AZORES, or WESTERN ISLES, have a fine climate and fertile soil, which produces abundantly grain, wine, and fruits of various kinds. The chief towns are Porto Delgado, in St. Michael's, and Angra, in Terceira: the latter is the capital of the whole group.

3. MADEIRA is a beautiful, healthful, and fertile island, long celebrated for its excellent wines, the trade in which is less important than formerly. Funchal is the capital.

The CANARY ISLANDS are noted for their wines, fruits, and Canary birds. These islands contain numerous mountains, of which the most celebrated is the Peak of Teneriffe. Santa Cruz, in the island of Teneriffe, is the capital. Orotava is the largest town.

4. The CAPE VERDE ISLANDS. The climate of these islands is hot and unhealthful, and the soil is mostly dry and arid. Many of the inhabitants died of famine in 1831, from the effects of a long-continued drought. Fogo, one of the islands, contains an active volcano. Salt, goat-skins, and some cotton, are the chief articles of trade. The capital is Porto Praya.

African Islands. Q.—1. What is said of the African continent? 2. Describe the Azores. 3. Madeira islands. Canary islands. 4. Cape

5. Ascension Island, now garrisoned by a small military force, was long uninhabited and famous for its turtle. St. Helena is a small rocky island: it has but one harbour and town (Jamestown), and is noted for having been the residence of Napoleon Bonaparte for six years: he died there in May, 1821. In 1840, his remains were conveyed to France.

6. The Ethiopian Archipelago, situated on the eastern side of Africa, comprises Madagascar, the Mascarenha, Seychelle, Almirante, Comoro, and some other smaller islands.

7. Madagascar is the largest of the African islands. It has a healthful climate, a fertile soil, and is said to be rich in minerals. The inhabitants consist of Arabs, Malays, and Negroes. Some of these cultivate the ground, and are not destitute of arts: others are pirates, and commit depredations on the neighbouring islands.

8. Imerina, or the kingdom of the Ovahs, the most important state in this island, was founded by Radama. This prince received Christian missionaries, and endeavoured to civilize his subjects by introducing among them European arts and sciences. He was poisoned by his wife in 1828. Since his death, the kingdom has been the scene of anarchy and confusion. Tananarivou is the capital. Bombetok Bay, and the other bays and ports, are sometimes visited by American vessels.

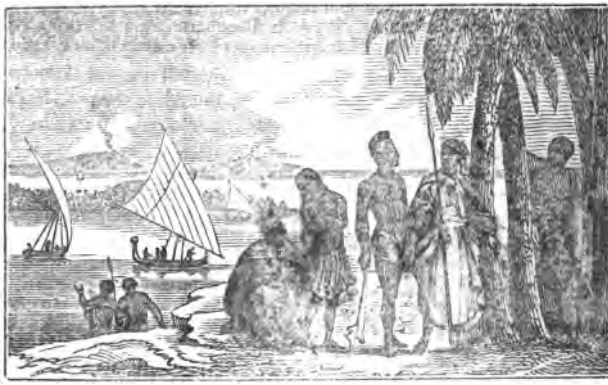
9. Eastward from Madagascar are the Mascarenha Islands. These are Bourbon, and Mauritius or the Isle of France: they are both well-settled, fertile islands, and produce coffee and sugar to a great extent. Bourbon contains a volcano constantly burning, which serves at night as a light-house to mariners. Port Louis and St. Denis are the chief towns.

10. The Seychelle and Almirante Islands are a dependency of Mauritius: they produce cotton and cocoa-nuts. The Comoro Isles are mountainous but fertile. The inhabitants have been nearly all extirpated by the ravages of the Madagascar pirates; Monfia, Zanzibar, and Pemba, are fertile, well-settled islands, and belong to Muscat. The town of Zanzibar, on the island of the same name, contains about 10,000 inhabitants. Socotra is subject to Keshin in Arabia, and is chiefly noted for the superior quality of its aloes.

Map, No. 16. — Tell the population of the following islands, and the nation to which they belong: Azores, Madeira, Canary, Cape Verde, Ascension, St. Helena, Mauritius, Bourbon, Almirante, and Seychelle. What is the population of Madagascar? How long is this island? What is its northern cape? Ao. Southern? S.-My. How far is it from Madagascar to New Holland? What islands lie between Madagascar and Mozambique? Co. What islands belong to Muscat? Pa., Zr., Ma. What island belongs to Keshin?

Verde Islands. 5. Ascension and St. Helena. 6. What does the Ethiopian Archipelago comprise? 7. What is said of Madagascar? 8. Imerina? 9. Describe the Mascarenha Islands. 10. The Seychelle, &c. Comoro. Monfia, &c. Socotra.

—— 209 ——



Inhabitants of Oceanica.

OCEANICA.

1. OCEANICA comprises the islands lying immediately south of Asia, together with the greater part of those in the Pacific Ocean, situated between Asia and America. They form three great divisions: Malaysia, Australasia, and Polynesia.

2. This region extends from north to south about 6200 miles, and from east to west 11,000 miles. It comprises almost a third part of the superficies of the globe, and its land area is about one-eleventh part of the land surface of the earth.

3. The discovery of this quarter of the world commenced soon after America was known to Europeans. Magellan, the first navigator who sailed round the globe, passed through the strait which bears his name, more than 300 years ago, and crossed the Pacific Ocean in a direction from south-east to north-west.

4. After Magellan, the Spaniards, Dutch, and English, continued the progress of discovery. Of the latter, Captain James Cook contributed more to our knowledge of the islands in this quarter, than any other

---

Oceanica. Q.—1. Describe Oceanica. 2. Its extent. 3. What is said of its discovery, &c.? 4. What took place after Magellan? What

individual. Since his time, numerous navigators and whalers, principally English, French, and Americans, have traversed the Pacific Ocean in every direction, and have probably left but little to be explored.

5. The islands of Oceanica are situated principally within the tropics, and are exposed to a considerable degree of heat. The temperature, however, is various. Some of them enjoy a delightful climate, and are among the most favoured and fertile countries on the globe.

6. Nearly all the large islands are elevated. Some contain mountain of great altitude. Volcanoes are numerous, and occasionally cause dreadful ravages. The smaller islands are low, many of them scarcely rising above the surface of the water, and are often destitute of vegetation and inhabitants: some again are covered with groves of cocoa-nut and other trees, and are well peopled.

7. Most of the animals found in these islands are similar to those of the south of Asia; but there are several varieties peculiar to this quarter. The orang-outang abounds in Borneo, and the Malay tapir in Java and other islands. The kangaroo, emeu, duckbill, and black swan, exist only in Australia. In Polynesia, a species of dog is fattened and eaten, being considered a great delicacy.

8. The natives of Oceanica are various in manners, customs, and condition. They consist, for the most part, of two distinct races, the Malays, or brown variety of the human family, and the Papuan, Oriental, or Melanesian Negroes.

9. The Malays are found in different stages of civilization, and comprise two distinct classes, nobles and slaves. Some of them are comparatively improved; others are extremely barbarous, and in many instances they are cannibals. The people of Polynesia are principally pagans; those of Malaysia are partly Mahomedans and partly pagans.

10. The Papuans constitute a variety of the black race. They are, for the most part, smaller in person, and not so dark in complexion, as the African negroes. They are generally destitute of clothing or dwellings, often live on the most disgusting food, and are supposed to have no definite ideas of a Supreme Being.

210

MALAYSIA.

1. Malaysia derives its name from the Malays, the most numerous people in this region. It is also called the East India Archipelago; and contains the islands of Sumatra, Java, and Borneo, usually called the Sunda Isles, together

---

is said of Captain Cook? Since his time? 5. The islands, &c.? 6. Large islands? 7. Animals? 8. Natives of Oceanica? 9. The Malays? 10. Papuans?

Malaysia. Q. — 1. What is said of Malaysia? What does it contain?

with Celebes, the Moluccas, or Spice Islands, the Philippine, and some smaller groups.

2 The climate of Malaysia is that of the torrid zone. The soil is highly prolific, and yields in abundance the most exquisite spices and fruits. The clove, nutmeg, mace, cinnamon, and pepper, abound; also sugar, coffee, cotton, rice, tobacco, and indigo.

3. The commerce is extensive, and is carried on mostly by Europeans and Chinese. The latter, in their uncouth vessels, called junks, trade in great numbers to the different islands. Tripang, sea-slug, and edible birds'-nests, luxuries not in use among Europeans, form important articles of the traffic with China, where they bear a high price.

Malays capturing a European Vessel.

4. The Malays, the prevalent race in this region, are, generally, of a deep-yellow complexion. They are chiefly Mahomedans. Many of them are pirates; and the most daring attempts are often made by them to capture vessels of superior force. A number of Chinese emigrants have settled in some of the islands of this region, and are noted for their industrious and quiet habits.

5. SUMATRA, the most western of the Sunda Islands, is nearly equal in extent to our Middle and Eastern States united. It is divided into several petty native kingdoms; and is partly under the dominion of Holland. Some of the interior tribes are cannibals. Among the Battas, the punishment of several crimes, by their laws, is to be eaten alive. They also eat the prisoners they take in war.

6. JAVA is a fine fertile island, principally under the control of the Dutch. The natives are well acquainted with many arts. They carry on a lucrative trade with the Chinese, and profess the Hindoo religion.

---

2. What is said of the climate? 3. Commerce? 4. What is said of the

7. Batavia, the capital of Java, and of the Dutch possessions in this quarter, is less important than formerly; but still carries on an extensive commerce. Cheribon, Samarang, and Sourabaya, are the other most important towns. Eastward from Java are the Islands of Bally, Sumbawa, Floris, and Timor. The last is held jointly by the Dutch and Portuguese.

8. Borneo is one of the largest islands in the world. Its area is rather less than that of the Southern States, including Florida. The interior is occupied by a number of rude, ferocious tribes, between whom and the people of the coast there is constant war. Among the Dyaks, one of the inland tribes, an individual cannot obtain a wife, or aspire to the distinction of manhood, until he can show the head of, at least, one enemy, as a proof of his prowess. Gold and diamonds are found in considerable quantities. The principal trade is at Benjarmassin

9. Immediately eastward of Borneo are the Sooloo Islands. The inhabitants, all pirates, are the Algerines of the eastern seas. Celebes is a large fertile island. The inhabitants, called Macassars, and Bugis, are madly devoted to games of chance. The women mingle freely in all the affairs of life; and are even sometimes elevated to high political stations.

10. The Spice Islands, or Moluccas, produce the precious spices, cloves, nutmegs, and mace. Gilolo, Ceram, Bouro, Banda, and Amboyna, are the principal islands. Nassau, a small town on the island of Neira, is the residence of the Dutch governor.

11. The Philippine Islands form an extensive group of two large and a number of small islands. They are very rich in natural resources, and furnish many valuable articles of commerce. They belong to Spain; but the inhabitants are chiefly of the native races, Tagalas, Bisayas, &c. Among some of these are several small independent states. Manilla, the capital of all the Spanish colonies in the east, is a large and flourishing city. It is the centre of an extensive commerce, and its harbour is thronged with European, American, and Chinese vessels. This city is on the west side of the island of Luzon.

Map No. 18. — What great circle passes through the middle of Malaysia? Er. — In what zone is Malaysia? Td. — How long is Sumatra? Java? Celebes? Luzon? Mindanao? How long and wide is Borneo? What is the population of Sumatra? Java? Borneo? Celebes? Philippine Islands? Manilla? Batavia? Samarang? Acheen? Palambang? What strait separates Sumatra from Malacca? Ma. — Sumatra from Java? Sa. — Borneo from Celebes? Mr. — How wide are the straits of Sunda?

Malays? 5. Sumatra? 6. Java? 7. Batavia? 8. Borneo? 9. Sooloo Is.? 10. Spice Is.? 11. Philippine Is.? Manilla?

Convicts landing at Botany Bay.

AUSTRALASIA.

1. AUSTRALASIA comprises a number of islands lying south-eastward from Malaysia: of these, Australia or New Holland, New Guinea, and New Zealand, are the most extensive. The inhabitants belong chiefly to the black race called Papuan Negroes, and are among the most degraded of the human family.

2. AUSTRALIA, formerly called New Holland, is the largest island in the world. It is claimed by the British government, who have laid it off into three great divisions: viz. New South Wales, South Australia, and West Australia. The Blue Mountains are the highest range, and the Murray the largest river, yet discovered in this island.

3. The aborigines of Australia are very rude and degraded: those in the interior exist on roots, grubs, worms, and what little they kill in the chase. Those on the coast live mostly on fishing, yet their canoes are of the rudest description.

Native on his Log.

Australasia. Q. — 1. What is said of Australasia? 2. Australia? Its three great divisions, &c.? 3. Describe the aborigines. 4

some are merely a large piece of bark folded and tied up at each end, and some only a log on which they sit and guide with their hands.

4. In the south-east part of Australia is the BOTANY BAY COLONY founded in 1787: to this place many thousands of criminals have been banished from Great Britain. The bulk of the population is, however, formed of free settlers: to these, the convicts, as they arrive, are apportioned as labourers during the period for which they were sentenced.

5. The Colony extends along the coast about three hundred miles: it is divided into a number of counties, and contains several towns: Sydney, the capital, has a good harbour, with considerable commerce.

The country is in general better adapted for grazing than tillage; sheep are abundant, and their wool forms a large part of the exports: wheat, Indian-corn, and potatoes, are the principal products.

6 In West Australia is the SWAN RIVER COLONY: several towns have been laid out, but no great improvement has yet taken place. The Colony of South Australia has been lately established, and several thousand emigrants from England are settled there. Adelaide is the chief town. Melbourne, Australind, and Victoria, are small settlements recently established.

7. VAN DIEMEN'S LAND, or TASMANIA, settled in 1804, is nearly equal in size to South Carolina. The climate is colder, but the productions are nearly the same as in the other colonies. About one-third of the population are convicts. Hobart Town is the capital.

8. NEW ZEALAND comprises two large and one small island. The area of the whole somewhat exceeds that of the State of Virginia. The soil is fertile, and produces Indian-corn, yams, potatoes, and a species of strong and serviceable flax. The natives are a finely formed race of savages, but very warlike and ferocious.

9. Tattooing is practised to a great extent amongst them, and the faces of the chiefs are often entirely covered over with various regular figures. In the northern island, owing to exertions of the missionaries, many of the tribes have become improved, and wars are much less frequent than formerly. This part of New Zealand has been lately annexed to the British Empire. The towns of Auckland, Wellington, and New Plymouth, have been founded by English settlers. The first is the capital.

New Zealand Chief.

10. PAPUA, or NEW GUINEA, is believed to be one of the most fertile countries in the world, but the interior parts have never been explored. LOUISIADE, NEW BRITAIN, NEW IRELAND, SOLOMON'S ARCHIPELAGO, the NEW HEBRIDES, and NEW CALEDONIA, occupy the north-east part of Australia, and are but little known. The inhabi-

---

Botany Bay Colony. 5. What is said of it? Country, &c.? 6. Swan River Colony? South Australia? 7. Van Diemen's Land? 8. New Zealand? 9. What is said of tattooing? 10. Of Papua, &c.? Louisiade, &c.?

tants of these islands, like all savages, are divided into petty tribes, and are at constant war with each other.

Map No. 16. — What great circle forms the north boundary of Australasia? Er. — What tropic crosses Australia? Cn. — In what zones is Australasia? Td., S.-Te. — How long and wide are Australia and Van Diemen's Land? How long are New Guinea and the two largest islands of New Zealand? What strait separates Australia and New Guinea? Ts. — Australia and Van Diemen's Land? Bs. — How wide are they? What island is inhabited by convicts from New South Wales? Nk. — What is the population of the Botany Bay Colony? Van Diemen's Land? South Australia? New Hebrides? New Caledonia? Swan River Colony? Sydney? Hobart Town? How far is it from Hobart Town to London? To New York? Name the New Zealand Isles.*

212

Sandwich Islanders burning an Idol.

POLYNESIA.

1. POLYNESIA comprises the numerous groups of islands situated in the Pacific Ocean between Malaysia, Australasia, and South America. The climate of this region is similar to that of the West Indies, but is more mild and regular.

2. The most useful products of Polynesia are the bread-fruit, yams, taro root, sweet potatoes, plantains, bananas, and cocoa-nuts, besides various fruits, comprising oranges, limes, citrons, pine-apples, guavas, figs, &c.

Polynesia. Q. — 1. Describe Polynesia. 2. Products. 3. The peo-

* See the account on Map 18, near New Zealand.

3. The people of Polynesia are in general mild and gentle, yet fierce and warlike when stimulated by some particular object; and their contests have been carried on with such ferocity, that some islands have been entirely depopulated; they were much addicted to various cruel and barbarous customs, to which their native religion gave full sanction, of which the sacrificing of human beings, the eating of human flesh, and the murder of infants, were common. These practices, though not so general as formerly, have not entirely ceased.

4. The LADRONE ISLANDS were the first known to Europeans of any in this region, having been discovered by Magellan in 1512. The original inhabitants have been nearly all exterminated by the Spaniards.

The CAROLINE ISLANDS are but little known, being situated in a tempestuous ocean and exposed to furious hurricanes. These islands, with the Ladrones, both belong to Spain.

5. The SANDWICH ISLANDS are the most important and interesting of this region. Hawaii or Owhyhee is the largest of the group: its area is nearly equal to that of the State of Connecticut.

The people in 1819 destroyed their idols and embraced Christianity.

6. A number of missionaries from the United States are residing here, and a large proportion of the inhabitants have been taught reading, writing, and arithmetic. Churches have been erected: the press has been for some time in operation, at which school-books, the Scriptures newspapers, &c. are printed in the language of the country.

7. Honolulu, in the island of Oahu, is the capital of the Sandwich Islands; it contains about 7000 inhabitants, of whom 300 are Americans and English. Many American and European ships are always in port, and a considerable number of small vessels belong to the natives. Laheina, on the island of Maui, is also a considerable town.

8. The MENDANA ARCHIPELAGO comprises the Marquesas and Washington islands: they are very fertile, and furnish food to the inhabitants almost without labour; the people are among the most finely formed of any known race, and are but little darker than Southern Europeans.

9. The SOCIETY and GEORGIAN ISLANDS are remarkable for being the first in Polynesia, of which the inhabitants embraced Christianity. Otaheite, or Tahiti, the largest of the Georgian islands, is one of the finest in this quarter of the world. Dancing, once the chief amusement of the people, was performed on all occasions of pleasure, worship, state, or ceremony, but is now less practised than formerly.

The PEARL or PAUMOTU ISLANDS are a numerous range of small islands; they are but little known, and many of them are uninhabited. The AUSTRAL, HERVEY, and PALLISER ISLANDS are situated at various distances from Otaheite; the people speak a language similar to that of the Otaheiteans, and have all been converted to Christianity by the missionaries.

---

ple, &c. 4. Ladrone. Caroline. 5. Sandwich islands. 6. What is said of the missionaries? 7. Honolulu? 8. Mendana Archipelago? 9. Society and Georgian Is.? Pearl? Austral, &c.? 10. Friendly

Otaheitean Dance.

10. The FRIENDLY ISLANDS comprise the Navigator's, Tonga, Habaai, and Feejee islands; the inhabitants of the latter are the most ferocious and savage of any in Polynesia; they are large and muscular, and of very dark complexions. In the Tonga and Habaai islands, upwards of 2,000 children are instructed in the schools, and the church numbers upwards of 1,100 native members.

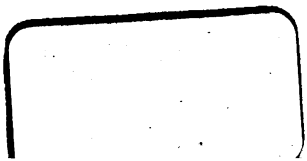
11. PITCAIRN'S ISLAND is settled by the descendants of the mutineers of the ship Bounty: the inhabitants are an amiable, religious, and moral people, and speak the English language. The CENTRAL ARCHIPELAGO, and the Archipelagoes of MAGELLAN and ANSON, are composed of a number of small islands: they are but little known, and are seldom visited.

The BONIN ISLANDS are settled by a colony comprising a few American and English sailors, who took wives with them from the Sandwich islands.

Map No. 18. — What great circles pass through Polynesia? T.-Cr., Er., T.-Cn. — What zones is Polynesia in? N.-Te., Td., S.-Te. — What is the population of the Sandwich islands? Washington Is.? Marquesas Is.? Society and Georgian Is.? Paumotu Is.? Cook's Is.? Austral Is.? Navigator's Is.? Vavou? Habaai Is.? Tonga Is.? Feejee Is.? Gambier Is.? Pitcairn's I.? Easter I.? How far is it from the Sandwich Islands to London? To New York? To the coast of Mexico? To the Columbia River? To China? From the Marquesas to the coast of Peru? What islands have been converted to the Christian religion? Which have been partially converted? How many miles does the Pacific ocean extend from east to west? From north to south?

---

islands? Tonga, &c.? 11. Pitcairn's island? Central Archipelago, &c.? Bonin islands?

THE END.

MAR 27 196